

# **Installation Guide**

## **Open Enterprise Server 11 SP1**

**May 3, 2013**

**Novell.**

## Legal Notices

Novell, Inc. makes no representations or warranties with respect to the contents or use of this documentation, and specifically disclaims any express or implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for any particular purpose. Further, Novell, Inc. reserves the right to revise this publication and to make changes to its content, at any time, without obligation to notify any person or entity of such revisions or changes.

Further, Novell, Inc. makes no representations or warranties with respect to any software, and specifically disclaims any express or implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for any particular purpose. Further, Novell, Inc. reserves the right to make changes to any and all parts of Novell software, at any time, without any obligation to notify any person or entity of such changes.

Any products or technical information provided under this Agreement may be subject to U.S. export controls and the trade laws of other countries. You agree to comply with all export control regulations and to obtain any required licenses or classification to export, re-export or import deliverables. You agree not to export or re-export to entities on the current U.S. export exclusion lists or to any embargoed or terrorist countries as specified in the U.S. export laws. You agree to not use deliverables for prohibited nuclear, missile, or chemical biological weaponry end uses. See the [Novell International Trade Services Web page \(http://www.novell.com/info/exports/\)](http://www.novell.com/info/exports/) for more information on exporting Novell software. Novell assumes no responsibility for your failure to obtain any necessary export approvals.

Copyright © 2005–2012 Novell, Inc. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, photocopied, stored on a retrieval system, or transmitted without the express written consent of the publisher.

Novell, Inc.  
1800 South Novell Place  
Provo, UT 84606  
U.S.A.  
[www.novell.com](http://www.novell.com)

*Online Documentation:* To access the online documentation for this and other Novell products, and to get updates, see the [Novell Documentation Web page \(http://www.novell.com/documentation\)](http://www.novell.com/documentation).

## Novell Trademarks

For Novell trademarks, see [the Novell Trademark and Service Mark list \(http://www.novell.com/company/legal/trademarks/tmlist.html\)](http://www.novell.com/company/legal/trademarks/tmlist.html).

## Third-Party Materials

All third-party trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

---

# Contents

<b>About This Guide</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>1 What's New or Changed in the OES Install</b>	<b>11</b>
1.1 What's New (OES 11 April 2013 Patches)	11
1.2 What's New (OES 11 SP1 January 2013 Patches)	11
1.2.1 Reconfiguring iManager	12
1.3 What's New (OES 11 January 2013 Patches)	12
1.4 What's New or Changed in OES 11 SP1 Install	13
1.5 What's New or Changed in OES 11 Install	13
<b>2 Preparing to Install OES 11 SP1</b>	<b>15</b>
2.1 Before You Install	15
2.2 Meeting All Server Software and Hardware Requirements	15
2.2.1 Server Software	15
2.2.2 Server Hardware	16
2.3 eDirectory Rights Needed for Installing OES	17
2.3.1 Rights to Install the First OES Server in a Tree	17
2.3.2 Rights to Install the First Three Servers in an eDirectory Tree	17
2.3.3 Rights to Install the First Three Servers in any eDirectory Partition	17
2.4 Installing and Configuring OES as a Subcontainer Administrator	18
2.4.1 Rights Required for Subcontainer Administrators	18
2.4.2 Providing Required Rights to the Subcontainer Administrator for Installing and Managing Samba	20
2.4.3 Starting a New Installation as a Subcontainer Administrator	22
2.4.4 Adding/Configuring OES Services as a Different Administrator	22
2.5 Preparing eDirectory for OES 11 SP1	22
2.5.1 If Your Directory Tree Is Earlier than eDirectory 8.6	23
2.5.2 If Your LDAP Server Is Running NetWare 6.5 SP2 or Earlier	23
2.5.3 If Your Tree Has Ever Contained an OES 1 Linux Server with LUM and NSS Installed	23
2.5.4 Extending the Schema	26
2.6 Deciding What Patterns to Install	28
2.7 Obtaining OES 11 SP1 Software	37
2.8 Preparing Physical Media for a New Server Installation or an Upgrade	37
2.9 Setting Up a Network Installation Source	38
2.9.1 SUSE Linux as a Network Installation Source Server	38
2.9.2 NetWare as a Network Installation Source Server	41
2.9.3 Windows as a Network Installation Source Server	42
2.10 Always Install OES as an Add-On Product	43
2.11 Install Only One Server at a Time	43
2.12 What's Next	43
<b>3 Installing OES 11 SP1 as a New Installation</b>	<b>45</b>
3.1 Linux Software RAIDs Are Not Cluster Aware	45
3.2 Linux Software RAIDs	46
3.3 Starting the OES 11 SP1 Installation	46
3.3.1 Installing from Physical Media	46

3.3.2	Installing from a Network Source with DHCP	47
3.3.3	Installing from a Network Source without DHCP	48
3.4	Specifying the Installation Mode	49
3.5	Specifying the Add-On Product Installation Information	50
3.6	Setting Up the Clock and Time Zone	50
3.7	Specifying the Installation Settings for the SLES Base and OES Installation	50
3.7.1	Setting Up Disk Partitions	51
3.7.2	Customizing the Software Selections	54
3.7.3	Accepting the Installation Settings	56
3.8	Specifying Configuration Information	57
3.8.1	Specifying the Password for the System Administrator "root"	57
3.8.2	Specifying the Hostname and Domain Name	57
3.8.3	Specifying Network Configuration Settings	57
3.8.4	Testing the Connection to the Internet	60
3.8.5	Specifying Novell Customer Center Configuration Settings	61
3.8.6	Updating the Server Software	63
3.8.7	Specifying Service Configuration Settings	65
3.8.8	Specifying LDAP Configuration Settings	67
3.8.9	Specifying eDirectory Configuration Settings	69
3.8.10	Configuring OES Services	77
3.8.11	Configuration Guidelines for OES Services	78
3.9	Finishing the Installation	106
3.10	Verifying That the Installation Was Successful	106
3.11	What's Next	107

## **4 Installing or Configuring OES 11 SP1 on an Existing Server 109**

4.1	Before You Install OES Services on an Existing Server	109
4.1.1	Always Use YaST to Install and Initially Configure OES Services	109
4.1.2	Don't Install OES While Running the Xen Kernel	110
4.1.3	If You Want OES to Use a Local eDirectory Database on the Server	110
4.2	Adding/Configuring OES Services on an Existing Server	110
4.3	Adding/Configuring OES Services on a Server That Another Administrator Installed	113
4.4	What's Next	114

## **5 Upgrading to OES 11 SP1 115**

5.1	Supported Upgrade Paths	115
5.2	Planning for the Upgrade to OES 11 SP1	116
5.2.1	Be Sure to Check the Readme	116
5.2.2	Always Upgrade SLES and OES at the Same Time	116
5.2.3	Understanding the Implications for Other Products Currently Installed on the Server	116
5.3	Meeting the Upgrade Requirements	117
5.3.1	Securing Current Data	117
5.3.2	Ensuring That There Is Adequate Storage Space on the Root Partition	117
5.3.3	Preparing the Server You Are Upgrading	118
5.3.4	Checking the Server's IP Address	119
5.3.5	Checking the Server's DNS Name	119
5.3.6	Ensuring That the Server Has a Server Certificate	119
5.3.7	Changing the Mount Options Before an Upgrade	119
5.3.8	Preparing an Installation Source	121
5.4	Upgrading to OES 11 SP1	121
5.4.1	For Servers with EVMS and LVM on the System Device	122
5.4.2	To Upgrade Using a Network Installation Source with DHCP (Offline)	122
5.4.3	Upgrading Using a Network Installation Source without DHCP (Offline)	123
5.4.4	Using Physical Media to Upgrade (Offline)	125
5.4.5	Selecting the Installation Mode Options	125
5.4.6	Specifying the Partition to Update	126

5.4.7	Specifying the Add-On Product Installation Information	128
5.4.8	Verifying and Customizing the Update Options in Installation Settings	128
5.4.9	Accepting the Installation Settings	132
5.4.10	Specifying Configuration Information	133
5.5	Finishing the Upgrade	143
5.6	Using AutoYaST for an OES 11 SP1 Upgrade	143
5.6.1	Prerequisites	143
5.6.2	Remastering the Integrated ISO without the add_on_products.xml	144
5.6.3	Creating an Answer File to Provide the eDirectory and DSfW Passwords	144
5.6.4	Upgrading an OES 2 (64-bit) Server to OES 11 SP1	145
5.6.5	Upgrading an OES 2 (64-bit) XEN Guest Server to OES 11 SP1	146
5.6.6	Troubleshooting an AutoYaST Upgrade	147
5.7	Channel Upgrade from OES 11 to OES 11 SP1	148
5.7.1	Channel Upgrade from OES 11 to OES 11 SP1 Via Wagon	148
5.7.2	Channel Upgrade from OES 11 to OES 11 SP1 Using Zypper	151
5.7.3	Upgrading OES 11 to OES 11 SP1 Using SMT	152
5.7.4	Rolling Back the Server in the Middle of a Wagon-based Channel Upgrade	153
5.8	Upgrading eDirectory After an OES Upgrade	154
5.9	Using SUSE Manager to Upgrade from OES 11 to OES 11 SP1	156
5.10	Verifying That the Upgrade Was Successful	156
5.11	Moving to Common Proxy Users After an Upgrade	157
5.12	What's Next	158

## **6 Completing OES Installation or Upgrade Tasks 159**

6.1	Determining Which Services Need Additional Configuration	159
6.2	Rebooting the Server after Installing NSS	161
6.3	Restarting Tomcat	161
6.4	Launching and Configuring Firefox for Linux	161

## **7 Updating (Patching) an OES 11 SP1 Server 163**

7.1	Overview of Updating (Patching)	163
7.1.1	The Patch Process Briefly Explained	163
7.1.2	Update Options	164
7.2	Preparing the Server for Updating	164
7.3	Registering the Server in the Novell Customer Center	165
7.3.1	Prerequisites	165
7.3.2	Registering the Server in the Novell Customer Center Using the Command Line	166
7.3.3	Registering the Server in the Novell Customer Center Using the GUI	167
7.4	Updating the Server	169
7.4.1	Updating the Server Using the Command Line	169
7.5	Verifying That Your Repository Subscriptions Are Up-to-Date	170
7.6	Frequently Asked Questions about Updating	171
7.6.1	Do I apply all the patches in the catalogs? How do I know which patches to apply?	171
7.7	Patching From Behind a Proxy Server	171
7.8	GUI Based Patching	171
7.9	Using SUSE Manager to Patch an OES Server	171
7.9.1	Setting Up SUSE Manager	172
7.9.2	Patching an OES 11 or Later Server by Using SUSE Manager	176
7.10	Quick Path Updating	176
7.10.1	Do Not Use zypper up without the -t Option	176
7.10.2	Command Line Quick Path for Updating OES 11 SP1	177
7.11	Installing the Latest iManager NPMs After Applying OES Patches	178

<b>8</b>	<b>Using AutoYaST to Install and Configure Multiple OES Servers</b>	<b>181</b>
8.1	Prerequisites	181
8.2	Setting Up a Control File with OES Components	182
8.2.1	Fixing an Automatically Created Control File	182
8.2.2	Using the AutoInstallation Module to Create the Control File	183
8.3	Setting Up an Installation Source	188
<b>9</b>	<b>Installing OES as a VM Host Server</b>	<b>189</b>
9.1	Installing the KVM Hypervisor and Tools	189
9.2	Installing the Xen Hypervisor and Tools	190
9.3	Upgrading an OES 2 Xen VM Host Server to OES 11	192
9.4	Setting Up Bridging After the Upgrade	192
<b>10</b>	<b>Installing, Upgrading, or Updating OES on a VM</b>	<b>193</b>
10.1	System Requirements	193
10.1.1	OES 11 SP1 VM Host Considerations	194
10.1.2	Novell Storage Services Considerations	194
10.1.3	Setup Instructions	194
10.2	Prerequisites	195
10.3	Preparing the Installation Software	195
10.3.1	Downloading the Installation Software	195
10.3.2	Preparing the Installation Source Files	195
10.4	Installing an OES 11 SP1 VM Guest	195
10.4.1	Specifying Options for Creating an OES 11 SP1 VM Guest	196
10.4.2	Specifying the Installation Mode	198
10.4.3	Specifying the Add-On Product Installation Information	199
10.4.4	Completing the OES 11 SP1 VM Guest Installation	199
10.5	Upgrading an OES 2 VM Guest to OES 11 SP1	199
10.5.1	Before You Start the Upgrade Process	200
10.5.2	Starting the Upgrade	200
10.6	Managing a Virtual Machine Running OES 11 SP1	200
10.7	Setting Up an OES 11 SP1 VM Guest to Use Novell Storage Services (NSS)	200
<b>11</b>	<b>Installing and Managing NetWare on a Xen-based VM</b>	<b>203</b>
11.1	Introduction	203
11.2	Support Information	204
11.2.1	OES Registration Is Required for Support	204
11.2.2	Supported Configurations and Features	204
11.2.3	Unsupported Configurations and Features	204
11.3	Preparing to Install a NetWare VM Guest Server	205
11.3.1	Planning for VM Host Servers	205
11.3.2	Planning for NetWare VM Guest Servers	206
11.3.3	You Must Use Timesync for Time Synchronization	207
11.3.4	Disabling the Alt+Esc Shortcut on the Host	207
11.4	Installing Virtualized NetWare	208
11.4.1	Preparing the Installation Media	208
11.4.2	Creating a Xen Virtual Machine and Installing a NetWare VM Guest Server	208
11.5	Managing NetWare on a Virtual Machine	213
11.5.1	Using the Virtual Machine Manager	214
11.5.2	Using the Command Line	214
11.6	If VM Manager Doesn't Launch on a Xen VM Host Server	215

<b>12 Disabling OES 11 Services</b>	<b>217</b>
<b>13 Reconfiguring eDirectory and OES Services</b>	<b>219</b>
13.1 Cleaning Up the eDirectory Server	219
13.1.1 Before You Clean Up	219
13.1.2 Reconfiguring the Replica Server	220
13.1.3 Reconfiguring the CA Server	220
13.1.4 Cleaning Up eDirectory	220
13.2 Reconfiguring the eDirectory Server through YaST	221
13.3 Reconfiguring OES Services	221
13.3.1 Re-creating eDirectory Objects	222
13.3.2 Services Requiring Reconfiguration	223
13.3.3 Manually Starting Services	224
13.4 Re-configuring iManager	225
<b>14 Security Considerations</b>	<b>227</b>
14.1 Access to the Server During an Installation or Upgrade	227
14.2 Remote Installations Through VNC	227
14.3 Improperly Configured LDAP Servers	227
<b>15 Troubleshooting</b>	<b>229</b>
15.1 Deleting the Existing eDirectory Objects when Reinstalling the OES Server or Reconfiguring the eDirectory	229
15.2 eDirectory User Password Screen Does Not Show Up During an Upgrade	230
15.3 eDirectory Restart Results in an Error Message on a Non-DSfW Server	230
15.4 Problem In Assigning IP Address For autoinst.xml-based Installations	230
15.5 iManager not Configured or Installed Properly	231
15.6 eDirectory Upgrade Failure During OES Upgrade	231
15.7 eDirectory Restart Results in an Error Message on a Non-DSfW Server	231
15.8 The DEFAULT SLP Scope Gets added to the slp.conf File During an Upgrade to OES 11 SP1	232
<b>A OES 11 File and Data Locations</b>	<b>233</b>
A.1 General Rules	233
A.2 Exceptions	234
<b>B Documentation Updates</b>	<b>235</b>





---

# About This Guide

This guide describes how to install, upgrade, and update Novell Open Enterprise Server (OES) 11 SP1. Except where specifically stated, the content of this guide applies to installing OES on a computer's physical hardware rather than on a Xen virtual machine host server.

- ♦ [Chapter 1, "What's New or Changed in the OES Install," on page 11](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 2, "Preparing to Install OES 11 SP1," on page 15](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 3, "Installing OES 11 SP1 as a New Installation," on page 45](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 4, "Installing or Configuring OES 11 SP1 on an Existing Server," on page 109](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 5, "Upgrading to OES 11 SP1," on page 115](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 6, "Completing OES Installation or Upgrade Tasks," on page 159](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 7, "Updating \(Patching\) an OES 11 SP1 Server," on page 163](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 8, "Using AutoYaST to Install and Configure Multiple OES Servers," on page 181](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 9, "Installing OES as a VM Host Server," on page 189](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 10, "Installing, Upgrading, or Updating OES on a VM," on page 193](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 11, "Installing and Managing NetWare on a Xen-based VM," on page 203](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 12, "Disabling OES 11 Services," on page 217](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 13, "Reconfiguring eDirectory and OES Services," on page 219](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 14, "Security Considerations," on page 227](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 15, "Troubleshooting," on page 229](#)
- ♦ [Appendix A, "OES 11 File and Data Locations," on page 233](#)
- ♦ [Appendix B, "Documentation Updates," on page 235](#)

## Audience

This guide is intended for system administrators.

## Feedback

We want to hear your comments and suggestions about this guide and the other documentation included with Novell OES. Please use the User Comment feature at the bottom of each page of the OES online documentation.

## Documentation Updates

The latest version of the *OES 11 SP1: Installation Guide* is available at the [Open Enterprise Server 11 documentation Web site](#).

## Additional Documentation

For more information about	See
Planning and implementing OES 11 SP1	<a href="#">OES 11 SP1: Planning and Implementation Guide</a>
Migration from and coexistence with other products	“Different Migration Tools” in the <a href="#">OES 11 SP1: Migration Tool Administration Guide</a>
Installing OES 11 SP1 on a Xen Virtual Host Server	Chapter 10, “Installing, Upgrading, or Updating OES on a VM,” on page 193
SLES 11 SP2 Installation and Administration details	<a href="http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_sle_admin/?page=/documentation/sles11/book_sle_admin/data/book_sle_admin_pre.html">SUSE LINUX Enterprise Server 11 SP2 Installation and Administration Guide</a> ( <a href="http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_sle_admin/?page=/documentation/sles11/book_sle_admin/data/book_sle_admin_pre.html">http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_sle_admin/?page=/documentation/sles11/book_sle_admin/data/book_sle_admin_pre.html</a> )

---

# 1 What's New or Changed in the OES Install

This section describes enhancements to Install for Novell Open Enterprise Server (OES) 11:

- [Section 1.1, “What’s New \(OES 11 April 2013 Patches\),” on page 11](#)
- [Section 1.2, “What’s New \(OES 11 SP1 January 2013 Patches\),” on page 11](#)
- [Section 1.3, “What’s New \(OES 11 January 2013 Patches\),” on page 12](#)
- [Section 1.4, “What’s New or Changed in OES 11 SP1 Install,” on page 13](#)
- [Section 1.5, “What’s New or Changed in OES 11 Install,” on page 13](#)

## 1.1 What's New (OES 11 April 2013 Patches)

### Upgrade to eDirectory 8.8.7

An upgrade to Novell eDirectory 8.8 SP7 is available in the April 2013 Scheduled Maintenance for OES 11. For information about the eDirectory upgrade, see [TID 7011599 \(http://www.novell.com/support/kb/doc.php?id=7011599\)](http://www.novell.com/support/kb/doc.php?id=7011599) in the Novell Knowledgebase.

There will be no further eDirectory 8.8 SP6 patches for the OES platform. Previous patches for Novell eDirectory 8.8 SP6 are available on [Novell Patch Finder \(http://download.novell.com/patch/finder/#familyId=112&productId=29503\)](http://download.novell.com/patch/finder/#familyId=112&productId=29503).

In an OES environment, apply the April 2013 patches in the eDirectory tree first, extend the schema with supervisor rights at the root of the eDirectory tree, and then apply the April 2013 patches on all the other OES servers. For extending the schema, execute steps 1 through 6 under “[Using the YaST Plug-In to Extend the Schema](#)”. If you do not extend the schema, you will have to run the `ndsconfig upgrade` command on all the OES servers after applying the April 2013 patches. For more information on `ndsconfig` upgrade, see [Novell eDirectory 8.8 SP7 Installation Guide \(https://www.netiq.com/documentation/edir88/#installation\)](https://www.netiq.com/documentation/edir88/#installation).

Although eDirectory 8.8 SP7 comes up and works fine without schema extension, it is highly recommended to extend the schema. It allows the capabilities of eDirectory 8.8 SP7 to be fully utilized and enables IDM 4 interoperability.

## 1.2 What's New (OES 11 SP1 January 2013 Patches)

In addition to bug fixes, the following enhancement and behavior changes is provided in the January 2013 Scheduled Maintenance for OES 11 SP1:

## Upgrade to Novell iManager 2.7.6

The January 2013 Scheduled Maintenance for OES 11 SP1 includes a channel upgrade from Novell iManager 2.7.5 to Novell iManager 2.7.6.

Novell iManager 2.7.6 provides the following enhancements:

- Microsoft Internet Explorer 10 certification in the desktop user interface view on Windows 8 (excluding Windows 8 RT) and Windows Server 2012.
- Apple Safari 6.0 certification on Mac OSX Mountain Lion (version 10.8).
- iManager Workstation certification on Windows 8 Enterprise Edition (32-bit and 64-bit).
- Manager 2.7.6 support for Tomcat 7.0.32. and Java 1.7.0\_04 versions.

iManager documentation links in this guide have been updated to reflect this change.

iManager 2.7.6 documentation is available on the [Web \(https://www.netiq.com/documentation/imanager/\)](https://www.netiq.com/documentation/imanager/). For earlier iManager versions, see [Previous Releases \(https://www.netiq.com/documentation/imanager27/#prev\)](https://www.netiq.com/documentation/imanager27/#prev).

## Novell Client Support for Windows 8 and Server 2012

The January 2013 Scheduled Maintenance for OES 11 SP1 announces the availability of Novell Client2 SP3 for Windows with support for:

- Windows 8 (32-bit and 64-bit) excluding Windows 8 RT
- Windows Server 2012 (64-bit)

Novell Client 2 documentation links in this guide have been updated to reflect the release of SP3.

Novell Client 2 SP3 for Windows documentation is available on the [Web \(http://www.novell.com/documentation/windows\\_client/\)](http://www.novell.com/documentation/windows_client/). Documentation for earlier versions is available under [Previous Releases \(http://www.novell.com/documentation/windows\\_client/#previous\)](http://www.novell.com/documentation/windows_client/#previous).

### 1.2.1 Reconfiguring iManager

If iManager is not configured or installed properly, you can use the reconfiguration scripts to reinstall iManager. For more information, see “[Re-configuring iManager](#)” in the *OES 11 SP1: Installation Guide*.

## 1.3 What's New (OES 11 January 2013 Patches)

### Upgrade to Novell iManager 2.7.6

The January 2013 Scheduled Maintenance for OES 11 includes a channel upgrade from Novell iManager 2.7.5 to Novell iManager 2.7.6.

Novell iManager 2.7.6 provides the following enhancements:

- Microsoft Internet Explorer 10 certification in the desktop user interface view on Windows 8 (excluding Windows 8 RT) and Windows Server 2012.
- Apple Safari 6.0 certification on Mac OSX Mountain Lion (version 10.8).
- iManager Workstation certification on Windows 8 Enterprise Edition (32-bit and 64-bit).
- Manager 2.7.6 support for Tomcat 7.0.32. and Java 1.7.0\_04 versions.

iManager documentation links in this guide have been updated to reflect this change.

iManager 2.7.6 documentation is available on the [Web \(https://www.netiq.com/documentation/imanager/\)](https://www.netiq.com/documentation/imanager/). For earlier iManager versions, see [Previous Releases \(https://www.netiq.com/documentation/imanager27/#prev\)](https://www.netiq.com/documentation/imanager27/#prev).

## Novell Client Support for Windows 8 and Server 2012

The January 2013 Scheduled Maintenance for OES 11 announces the availability of Novell Client 2 SP3 for Windows with support for:

- ♦ Windows 8 (32-bit and 64-bit) excluding Windows 8 RT
- ♦ Windows Server 2012 (64-bit)

Novell Client 2 documentation links in this guide have been updated to reflect the release of SP3.

Novell Client 2 SP3 for Windows documentation is available on the [Web \(http://www.novell.com/documentation/windows\\_client/\)](http://www.novell.com/documentation/windows_client/). Documentation for earlier versions is available under [Previous Releases \(http://www.novell.com/documentation/windows\\_client/#previous\)](http://www.novell.com/documentation/windows_client/#previous).

## 1.4 What's New or Changed in OES 11 SP1 Install

- ♦ Unattended upgrade from OES 2 or OES 11 to OES 11 SP1 has been enhanced and has undergone some changes. For more information, see “[Using AutoYaST for an OES 11 SP1 Upgrade](#)” in the *OES 11 SP1: Installation Guide*.
- ♦ A single integrated ISO to install or upgrade OES 11 SP1 is now available. This ISO contains both SLES 11 SP2 and OES 11 SP1.
- ♦ Channel upgrade support is added in OES 11 SP1. It supports upgrade from OES 11 to OES 11 SP1.

## 1.5 What's New or Changed in OES 11 Install

- ♦ Novell Linux Volume Manager (NLVM) replaces the Enterprise Volume Management System (EVMS).
- ♦ Rug and Zen-updater are now replaced with zypper and PackageKit.
- ♦ OpenWBEM has now been replaced with Small Footprint CIM Broker (SFCB) as the Web-Based Enterprise Management system.



---

# 2 Preparing to Install OES 11 SP1

You should perform the tasks and understand the information outlined in the following sections:

- ♦ [Section 2.1, “Before You Install,” on page 15](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.2, “Meeting All Server Software and Hardware Requirements,” on page 15](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.3, “eDirectory Rights Needed for Installing OES,” on page 17](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.4, “Installing and Configuring OES as a Subcontainer Administrator,” on page 18](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.5, “Preparing eDirectory for OES 11 SP1,” on page 22](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.6, “Deciding What Patterns to Install,” on page 28](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.7, “Obtaining OES 11 SP1 Software,” on page 37](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.8, “Preparing Physical Media for a New Server Installation or an Upgrade,” on page 37](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.9, “Setting Up a Network Installation Source,” on page 38](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.10, “Always Install OES as an Add-On Product,” on page 43](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.11, “Install Only One Server at a Time,” on page 43](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.12, “What’s Next,” on page 43](#)

## 2.1 Before You Install

Before you install Novell Open Enterprise Server 11 (OES 11 SP1), you should review the information in the following sections:

- ❑ [“Planning Your OES 11 SP1 Implementation” in the \*OES 11 SP1: Planning and Implementation Guide\*](#)
- ❑ [“Before You Install” in the \*OES 11 SP1: Readme\*](#)

## 2.2 Meeting All Server Software and Hardware Requirements

Before installing OES 11 SP1, ensure that your system meets the following requirements.

- ♦ [Section 2.2.1, “Server Software,” on page 15](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.2.2, “Server Hardware,” on page 16](#)

### 2.2.1 Server Software

As part of the OES 11 SP1 installation, you install SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 SP2.

---

**IMPORTANT:** OES 11 SP1 services were developed and tested on a default and fully-patched SLES 11 SP2 server base.

As you install OES 11 SP1, do not change any of the SLES 11 SP2 Base Technologies package selections, such as Java support. Doing so can cause various problems, such as the installation failing or one or more OES 11 SP1 services not working properly.

If you are installing on an existing SLES 11 SP2 server, be sure to verify that all of the default SLES 11 SP2 components are installed before attempting to install OES 11 SP1 services.

## 2.2.2 Server Hardware

**Table 2-1** Server Hardware Requirements

System Component	Minimum Requirements	Recommended Requirements
Computer	Any server-class computer that runs with AMD64 or Intel® EM64T processors.	<b>IMPORTANT:</b> OES 11 SP1 is an add-on product to SLES 11 SP2, it only runs on x86_64. Other processors that are supported by SLES 11 SP2, such as Itanium (IA64) and Intel x86(IA32), are not supported for running OES services.  <b>NOTE:</b> Services like iManager, SMS and NRM run in 32-bit mode on a 64-bit platform.
Memory	1 GB of RAM	2 GB of RAM for the base system. Additional RAM might be required depending on which OES components are selected and how they are used.
Free Disk Space	7 GB of available, unpartitioned disk space	10 GB of available, unpartitioned disk space. Additional disk space might be required, depending on which OES components are selected and how they are used.
DVD Drive	DVD drive if installing from physical media	DVD drive if installing from physical media
Hard Drive	20 GB	
Network Board	Ethernet 100 Mbps	
IP address	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>♦ One static IP address</li><li>♦ Subnet mask</li><li>♦ Default gateway</li></ul>	
Mouse	N/A	USB or PS/2
Server computer BIOS	Using a DVD installation source, prepare the BIOS on your server computer so that it boots from the DVD drive first.	



System Component	Minimum Requirements	Recommended Requirements
Video Card and Monitor	1024 X 768 resolution or higher with a minimum color depth of 8 bits (256 colors)	Although it is technically possible to run the ncurses installation at a lower resolution, some informational messages aren't displayed because text strings don't wrap to the constraints of the window.

**NOTE:** The RAM and disk space amounts shown here are for system components only. The OES service components you install might require additional RAM and disk space.

Be sure to complete the planning instructions found in the [OES 11 SP1: Planning and Implementation Guide](#) for each component you install.

## 2.3 eDirectory Rights Needed for Installing OES

The following eDirectory rights are discussed in this section:

- [Section 2.3.1, “Rights to Install the First OES Server in a Tree,” on page 17](#)
- [Section 2.3.2, “Rights to Install the First Three Servers in an eDirectory Tree,” on page 17](#)
- [Section 2.3.3, “Rights to Install the First Three Servers in any eDirectory Partition,” on page 17](#)

### 2.3.1 Rights to Install the First OES Server in a Tree

To install an OES server in a tree, you must have rights to extend the schema, meaning that you need Supervisor rights to the root of the tree.

You can extend the schema by using the Novell Schema Tool in YaST or by having a user with Supervisor rights to the root of the eDirectory tree install the first OES server and the first instance of each OES service that will be used into the tree. For more information, see [Section 2.5.4, “Extending the Schema,” on page 26](#).

### 2.3.2 Rights to Install the First Three Servers in an eDirectory Tree

If you are installing the server into a new tree, the Admin user that is created during the OES installation has full rights to the root of the tree. Using the account for user Admin allows the installer to extend the eDirectory schema for OES as necessary. To install the first OES server in an eDirectory tree, you must have the Supervisor right at the root of the eDirectory tree.

### 2.3.3 Rights to Install the First Three Servers in any eDirectory Partition

By default, the first three servers installed in an eDirectory partition automatically receive a replica of that partition. To install a server into a partition that does not already contain three replica servers, the user must have either the Supervisor right at the root of the tree or the Supervisor right to the container in which the server holding the partition resides.

## 2.4 Installing and Configuring OES as a Subcontainer Administrator

**IMPORTANT:** The information explained in [Section 2.3, “eDirectory Rights Needed for Installing OES,” on page 17](#) is prerequisite to the information contained in this section.

This section outlines the required eDirectory rights and explains how a subcontainer administrator approaches various installation tasks.

- [Section 2.4.1, “Rights Required for Subcontainer Administrators,” on page 18](#)
- [Section 2.4.2, “Providing Required Rights to the Subcontainer Administrator for Installing and Managing Samba,” on page 20](#)
- [Section 2.4.3, “Starting a New Installation as a Subcontainer Administrator,” on page 22](#)
- [Section 2.4.4, “Adding/Configuring OES Services as a Different Administrator,” on page 22](#)

### 2.4.1 Rights Required for Subcontainer Administrators

For security reasons, you might want to create one or more subcontainer administrators (administrators that are in a container that is subordinate to the container that user Admin is in) with sufficient rights to install additional OES servers, without granting them full rights to the entire tree.

A subcontainer administrator needs the rights listed in [Table 2-2](#) to install an OES server into the tree. These rights are typically granted by placing all administrative users in a Group or Role in eDirectory, and then assigning the rights to the Group or Role. Sample steps for assigning the rights to a single subcontainer administrator are provided as a general guide.

**Table 2-2** Subcontainer Administrator Rights Needed to Install

Rights Needed	Sample Steps to Follow
Supervisor right to itself	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. In iManager &gt; <i>View Objects</i> &gt; the <i>Browse</i> tab, browse to and select the subcontainer administrator.</li><li>2. Click the administrator object, then select <i>Modify Trustees</i>.</li><li>3. Click the <i>Assigned Rights</i> link for the administrator object.</li><li>4. For the [All Attributes Rights] property, select <i>Supervisor</i>, then click <i>Done &gt; OK</i>.</li></ol>
Supervisor right to the container where the server will be installed	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Browse to the container where the subcontainer administrator will install the server.</li><li>2. Click the container object and select <i>Modify Trustees</i>.</li><li>3. Click <i>Add Trustee</i>, browse to and select the subcontainer administrator, then click <i>OK</i>.</li><li>4. Click the <i>Assigned Rights</i> link for the administrator object.</li><li>5. For the [All Attributes Rights] and [Entry rights] properties, select <i>Supervisor</i>, then click <i>Done &gt; OK &gt; OK</i>.</li></ol>

<b>Rights Needed</b>	<b>Sample Steps to Follow</b>
Supervisor right to the W0 object located inside the KAP object in the Security container	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Browse to <i>Security &gt; KAP</i>.</li> <li>2. In KAP, click <i>W0</i> and select <i>Modify Trustees</i>.</li> <li>3. Click <i>Add Trustee</i>, browse to and select the subcontainer administrator, then click <i>OK</i>.</li> <li>4. Click the <i>Assigned Rights</i> link for the administrator object.</li> <li>5. For the [All Attributes Rights] and [Entry rights] properties, select <i>Supervisor</i>, then click <i>Done &gt; OK &gt; OK</i>.</li> </ol>
Supervisor right to the Security container when installing the NMAS login methods	<p>If the subcontainer administrator will install the NMAS login methods:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Browse to and select <i>Security</i></li> <li>2. Select <i>Modify Trustees</i>.</li> <li>3. Click <i>Add Trustee</i>, browse to and select the subcontainer administrator, then click <i>OK</i>.</li> <li>4. Click the <i>Assigned Rights</i> link for the administrator object.</li> <li>5. For the [All Attributes Rights] and [Entry rights] properties, select <i>Supervisor</i>, then click <i>Done &gt; OK &gt; OK</i>.</li> </ol>
Create right to its own container (context)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Browse to and select the container where you created the subcontainer administrator.</li> <li>2. Select <i>Modify Trustees</i>.</li> <li>3. Click <i>Add Trustee</i>, browse to and select the subcontainer administrator, then click <i>OK</i>.</li> <li>4. Click the <i>Assigned Rights</i> link for the administrator object.</li> <li>5. For the [Entry Rights] property, select <i>Create</i>, then click <i>Done &gt; OK &gt; OK</i>.</li> </ol>
Create right to the container where the UNIX Config object is located.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Browse to and select the container where the UNIX Config object is located. By default, this is the Organization object.</li> <li>2. Select <i>Modify Trustees</i>.</li> <li>3. Click <i>Add Trustee</i>, browse to and select the subcontainer administrator, then click <i>OK</i>.</li> <li>4. Click the <i>Assigned Rights</i> link for the administrator object.</li> <li>5. For the [Entry Rights] property, select <i>Create</i>, then click <i>Done &gt; OK &gt; OK</i>.</li> </ol>
Read right to the Security container object for the eDirectory tree	<p>This is not needed if the Supervisor right was assigned because of NMAS.</p> <p>If the subcontainer administrator won't install the NMAS login methods, do the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Browse to and select <i>Security</i></li> <li>2. Select <i>Modify Trustees</i>.</li> <li>3. Click <i>Add Trustee</i>, browse to and select the subcontainer administrator, then click <i>OK</i>.</li> <li>4. Click the <i>Assigned Rights</i> link for the administrator object.</li> <li>5. For the [All Attributes Rights] property, select <i>Read</i>, then click <i>Done &gt; OK &gt; OK</i>.</li> </ol>

<b>Rights Needed</b>	<b>Sample Steps to Follow</b>
Read right to the NDSPKI:Private Key attribute on the Organizational CA object (located in the Security container)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Browse to <i>Security</i> and select the Organizational CA object.</li> <li>2. Select <i>Modify Trustees</i>.</li> <li>3. Click <i>Add Trustee</i>, browse to and select the subcontainer administrator, then click <i>OK</i>.</li> <li>4. Click the <i>Assigned Rights</i> link for the administrator object.</li> <li>5. Click the <i>Add Property</i> button.</li> <li>6. Select <i>NDSPKI:Private Key</i> and click <i>OK</i>. The Read right should be automatically assigned.</li> <li>7. Click <i>Done &gt; OK &gt; OK</i>.</li> </ol>
Read and Write rights to the UNIX Config object.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Browse to and select the UNIX Config object.</li> <li>2. Select <i>Modify Trustees</i>.</li> <li>3. Click <i>Add Trustee</i>, browse to and select the subcontainer administrator, then click <i>OK</i>.</li> <li>4. Click the <i>Assigned Rights</i> link for the administrator object.</li> <li>5. For the [All Attributes Rights] property, select <i>Write</i> (<i>Read</i> is already selected), then click <i>Done &gt; OK &gt; OK</i>.</li> </ol>
Write right to the [All Attribute Rights] property for the admingroup object.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Browse to and select the admingroup object.</li> <li>2. Select <i>Modify Trustees</i>.</li> <li>3. Click <i>Add Trustee</i>, browse to and select the subcontainer administrator, then click <i>OK</i>.</li> <li>4. Click the <i>Assigned Rights</i> link for the administrator object.</li> <li>5. For the [All Attributes Rights] property, select <i>Write</i> (<i>Compare and Read</i> are already selected), then click <i>Done &gt; OK &gt; OK</i>.</li> </ol>

When you install DNS/DHCP into an existing tree with DNS/DHCP, see the following additional guidelines:

- ♦ For DNS, see “[eDirectory Permissions](#)” in the *OES 11 SP1: Novell DNS/DHCP Services for Linux Administration Guide*.
- ♦ For DHCP, see “[eDirectory Permissions](#)” in the *OES 11 SP1: Novell DNS/DHCP Services for Linux Administration Guide*.

## 2.4.2 Providing Required Rights to the Subcontainer Administrator for Installing and Managing Samba

Prior to installing any new OES Samba server in a tree, make sure that you provide supervisor rights to the subcontainer administrator for the location mentioned in [Table 2-3](#).

**Table 2-3** Subcontainer Administrator Rights Needed to Manage Samba

Rights Needed	Sample Steps to Follow
Supervisor rights to the container Where the Linux workstation object will be Located	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. In iManager, click <i>View Objects</i>, then browse and select the container where the OES Samba server will be installed.</li> <li>2. Click <i>Actions &gt; Modify Trustees</i>.</li> <li>3. On the Modify Trustees page, click <i>Assigned Rights</i> next to the trustee name for which you want to modify rights.</li> <li>4. Click the desired container admin object to add it to the <i>Selected Objects</i> section.</li> <li>5. Click <i>OK</i>.</li> <li>6. Select Property Name rights (<i>All Attribute Rights</i> and <i>Entry Rights</i>) and assign <i>Supervisor</i> rights, then click <i>Done</i>.</li> </ol>
Supervisor rights to the container Where the Unix config object will be located	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. On the Novell iManager, click <i>View Objects</i>, then in the Tree, browse and select the container where Unix Config object is located.</li> <li>2. Select the Unix Config object, then click <i>Actions &gt; Modify trustees</i>.</li> <li>3. On the Modify Trustees page, click <i>Assigned Rights</i> next to the trustee name for which you want to modify rights.</li> <li>4. Click the desired container admin object to add it to the <i>Selected Objects</i> section.</li> <li>5. Click <i>OK</i>.</li> <li>6. Select Property Name rights (<i>All Attribute Rights</i> and <i>Entry Rights</i>) and assign <i>Supervisor</i> rights, then click <i>Done</i>.</li> </ol>
Supervisor rights to the container where the Samba/LDAP base context will be located	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. On the Novell iManager, click <i>View Objects</i>, then in the Tree, browse and select the container where the Samba/LDAP base context will reside.</li> <li>2. Select the Current Level tree object, then click <i>Actions &gt; Modify trustees</i>.</li> <li>3. On the Modify Trustees page, click <i>Assigned Rights</i> next to the trustee name for which you want to modify rights.</li> <li>4. Click the desired container admin object to add it to the <i>Selected Objects</i> section.</li> <li>5. Click <i>OK</i>.</li> <li>6. Select Property Name rights (<i>All Attribute Rights</i> and <i>Entry Rights</i>) and assign <i>Supervisor</i> rights, then click <i>Done</i>.</li> </ol>

Rights Needed	Sample Steps to Follow
Supervisor rights to the container where the Samba proxy user will be installed	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. On the Novell iManager, click View Objects, then in the Tree, browse and select the container where the Samba proxy user context will be installed.</li> <li>2. Select the Samba proxy object, then click <i>Actions &gt; Modify trustees</i>.</li> <li>3. On the Modify Trustees page, click <i>Assigned Rights</i> next to the trustee name for which you want to modify rights.</li> <li>4. Click the desired container admin object to add it to the <i>Selected Objects</i> section.</li> <li>5. Click <i>OK</i>.</li> <li>6. Select Property Name rights (<i>All Attribute Rights and Entry Rights</i>) and assign <i>Supervisor</i> rights, then click <i>Done</i>.</li> </ol>

### 2.4.3 Starting a New Installation as a Subcontainer Administrator

You can install a new OES server into an existing tree as a subcontainer administrator if you have:

- ♦ The rights described in [“Rights Required for Subcontainer Administrators”](#) on page 18
- ♦ The rights described in [“Providing Required Rights to the Subcontainer Administrator for Installing and Managing Samba”](#) on page 20
- ♦ (If applicable) The rights described for the server installations in [“eDirectory Rights Needed for Installing OES”](#) on page 17.

When you reach the eDirectory Configuration - Existing Tree page, enter your fully distinguished name (FDN) and password. After verifying your credentials, the installation proceeds normally.

### 2.4.4 Adding/Configuring OES Services as a Different Administrator

To add or configure OES services on an OES server that another administrator installed, see [“Adding/Configuring OES Services on a Server That Another Administrator Installed”](#) on page 113.

## 2.5 Preparing eDirectory for OES 11 SP1

- ♦ [Section 2.5.1, “If Your Directory Tree Is Earlier than eDirectory 8.6,”](#) on page 23
- ♦ [Section 2.5.2, “If Your LDAP Server Is Running NetWare 6.5 SP2 or Earlier,”](#) on page 23
- ♦ [Section 2.5.3, “If Your Tree Has Ever Contained an OES 1 Linux Server with LUM and NSS Installed,”](#) on page 23
- ♦ [Section 2.5.4, “Extending the Schema,”](#) on page 26

## 2.5.1 If Your Directory Tree Is Earlier than eDirectory 8.6

If you are installing an OES 11 SP1 server into an eDirectory tree that is earlier than eDirectory 8.6, do the following before installing your first OES server in an existing NetWare tree:

- 1 Extend the schema by using Deployment Manager. See [“Schema Update”](#) in the *NW65 SP8: Installation Guide*.
- 2 Ensure that the schema is synchronized throughout the tree from root:
  - 2a Enter the following commands at the System Console prompt of the NetWare server with the Master of root:

```
set DSTRACE=on
set DSTRACE=nodebug
set DSTRACE+=Schema
set DSTRACE=*SSD
set DSTRACE=*SSA
```
  - 2b Toggle to the Directory Services screen and look for the message `All Processed = YES`.
  - 2c On each server that holds a Master of a partition, enter the following commands at the System Console prompt:

```
set DSTRACE=off
set DSTRACE=nodebug
set DSTRACE+=Schema
set DSTRACE=*SS
```
  - 2d Toggle to the Directory Services screen and look for the message `All Processed = YES`.

## 2.5.2 If Your LDAP Server Is Running NetWare 6.5 SP2 or Earlier

If you are installing into an eDirectory tree that is using a NetWare server to supply LDAP, you should upgrade the LDAP server that the OES installation will communicate with to NetWare 6.5 SP3 or later. A server running NetWare 6.5 SP2 or earlier will probably abend.

## 2.5.3 If Your Tree Has Ever Contained an OES 1 Linux Server with LUM and NSS Installed

Having NSS volumes on OES servers requires certain system-level modifications, most of which are automatic. For more information, see [“System User and Group Management in OES 11 SP1”](#) in the *OES 11 SP1: Planning and Implementation Guide*

- ♦ [“NetStorage, X-Tier, and Their System Users”](#) on page 24
- ♦ [“An NSS Complication”](#) on page 24
- ♦ [“eDirectory Solves the Basic Problem”](#) on page 24
- ♦ [“The OES 2 Solution: Standardizing the UIDs on all OES servers”](#) on page 24

## NetStorage, X-Tier, and Their System Users

By default, certain OES services, such as NetStorage, rely on a background Novell service named X-Tier.

To run on an OES server, X-Tier requires two system-created users (named `novlxsrvd` and `novlxregd`) and one system-created group that the users belong to (named `novlxtier`).

## An NSS Complication

The two X-Tier users mentioned above, and their group, are created on the local system when X-Tier is installed. For example, they are created when you install NetStorage, and their respective UIDs and GID are used to establish ownership of the service's directories and files.

For NetStorage to run, these X-Tier users and group must be able to read data on all volume types that exist on the OES server.

As long as the server has only Linux traditional file systems, such as Ext3 and Reiser, NetStorage runs well.

However, if the server has NSS volumes, an additional requirement is introduced. NSS data can only be accessed by eDirectory users. Consequently, the local X-Tier users can't access NSS data, and NetStorage can't run properly.

## eDirectory Solves the Basic Problem

When NSS volumes are created on the server, the two X-Tier system users and their group are moved to eDirectory and enabled for Linux User Management (LUM). (See [“Linux User Management: Access to Linux for eDirectory Users”](#) in the *OES 11 SP1: Planning and Implementation Guide*.)

After the move to eDirectory, they can function as both eDirectory and POSIX users, and they no longer exist on the local system.

## The OES 2 Solution: Standardizing the UIDs on all OES servers

If your eDirectory tree has ever contained an OES 1 Linux server with NSS and LUM installed, do the following on each server (including OES 2) that has NSS and LUM installed:

- 1 Log in as root and open a terminal prompt. Then enter the following commands:

```
id novlxregd
```

```
id novlxsrvd
```

The standardized X-Tier IDs are UID 81 for `novlxregd`, UID 82 for `novlxsrvd`, and GID 81 for `novlxtier`.

- 2 If you see the following ID information, the X-Tier IDs are standardized and you can move to the next server:



```
uid=81(novlxsregd) gid=81(novlxtier) groups=81(novlxtier)
uid=82(novlxsrvd) gid=81(novlxtier) groups=81(novlxtier),8(www)
```

If you see different IDs than those listed above, such as 101, 102, 103, etc., record the numbers for both X-Tier users and the novlxtier group. You need these IDs to standardize the IDs on the server.

**3** Download the following script file:

- ♦ [fix\\_xtier\\_ids.sh](http://www.novell.com/documentation/oes2/scripts/fix_xtier_ids.sh) ([http://www.novell.com/documentation/oes2/scripts/fix\\_xtier\\_ids.sh](http://www.novell.com/documentation/oes2/scripts/fix_xtier_ids.sh))

**4** Customize the template file by replacing the variables in angle brackets (<>) as follows:

- ♦ **<server\_name>**: The name of the server object in eDirectory.

Replace this variable with the server name.

For example, if the server name is myserver, replace <server\_name> with myserver so that the line in the settings section of the script reads

```
server=myserver
```

- ♦ **<context>**: The context of the X-Tier user and group objects.

Replace this variable with the fully distinguished name of the context where the objects reside.

For example, if the objects are an Organizational Unit object named servers, replace `ou=servers,o=company`.

- ♦ **<admin\_fdn>**: The full context of an eDirectory admin user, such as the Tree Admin, who has rights to modify the X-Tier user and group objects.

Replace this variable with the admin name and context, specified with comma-delimited syntax.

For example, if the tree admin is in an Organization container named company, the full context is `cn=admin,o=company` and the line in settings section of the script reads

```
admin_fdn="cn=admin,o=company"
```

- ♦ **<novlxsregd\_uid>**: The UID that the system assigned to the local novlxsregd user. It might or might not be the same on each server, depending on whether the `nssid.sh` script ran successfully.

Replace this variable with the UID reported for the novlxsregd user on this server as listed when you ran the commands in [Step 1 on page 24](#).

In the example script, the original UID is 101. It is changed to 81 in the third line of the script. The sixth line changes the UID on all of the files and directories on the server that are owned by the novlxsregd user from 101 to 81.

- ♦ **<novlxsrvd\_uid>**: The UID that the system assigned to the local novlxsrvd user. It might not be the same on each server, depending on whether the `nssid.sh` script ran successfully.

Replace this variable with the UID reported for the novlxsrvd user on this server as listed when you ran the commands in [Step 1 on page 24](#).

In the example script, the original UID is 103. It is changed to 82 in the fourth line of the script. The seventh line changes the UID on all of the files and directories on the server that are owned by the novlxsrvd user from 103 to 82.

- ♦ **<novlxtier\_gid>**: The GID that the system assigned to the local novlxtier group. It might not be the same on each server, depending on whether the `nssid.sh` script ran successfully.

Replace this variable with the GID reported for the novlxtier group on this server as listed when you ran the commands in [Step 1 on page 24](#).

In the example script, the original GID is 101. It is changed to 81 in the second line of the script. The six and seventh lines change the GID from 101 to 81 for all of the files and directories on the server that are owned by the novlxtier group.

- 5 Make the script executable and run it on the server.

---

**IMPORTANT:** Changes to the X-Tier files are not reported on the terminal.

Error messages are reported, but you can safely ignore them. The script scans the entire file system, and some files are locked because the system is running.

---

- 6 Repeat from [Step 1](#) for each of the other servers in the same context.

## 2.5.4 Extending the Schema

An eDirectory tree must have its schema extended to accommodate OES 11 servers and services as explained in the following sections.

- ♦ [“Who Can Extend the Schema?” on page 26](#)
- ♦ [“Which OES 11 SP1 Services Require a Schema Extension?” on page 26](#)
- ♦ [“Extending the Schema While Installing OES 11 SP1” on page 27](#)
- ♦ [“Using the YaST Plug-In to Extend the Schema” on page 27](#)
- ♦ [“Extending the Schema for Novell Cluster Services” on page 28](#)

### Who Can Extend the Schema?

Only an administrator with the Supervisor right at the root of an eDirectory tree can extend the tree’s schema.

### Which OES 11 SP1 Services Require a Schema Extension?

The following service schema extensions are included with OES 11 SP1.

A single asterisk (\*) indicates a service that is either required for OES 11 SP1 servers or for the default services that are installed on every OES 11 SP1 server.

Unmarked extensions are implemented the first time their respective services are installed, unless the schema was previously extended using another method, such as the YaST plug-in (see [“Using the YaST Plug-In to Extend the Schema” on page 27](#)).

- ♦ Novell Directory Services\*
- ♦ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)\*
- ♦ Novell iPrint Services
- ♦ Novell DHCP Services
- ♦ Novell DNS Services
- ♦ Novell NCP Server
- ♦ Novell Netstorage
- ♦ Novell Storage Services (NSS)
- ♦ Novell SMS\*

- ♦ Novell iFolder
- ♦ Novell Domain Services for Windows
- ♦ Novell NMAST
- ♦ Novell CIFS
- ♦ Novell Clustering

Novell Cluster Services requires you to extend the schema manually. Follow the instructions in [“Extending the eDirectory Schema to Add Cluster Objects”](#) in the *OES 11 SP1: Novell Cluster Services 2.1 for Linux Administration Guide*.

- ♦ Novell Remote Manager
- ♦ Novell Samba

## Extending the Schema While Installing OES 11 SP1

The simplest way to extend the schema for OES 11 SP1 servers is to have a tree admin install the first OES 11 SP1 server and the first instance of each OES 11 SP1 service that you plan to run on your network.

After this initial installation, you can assign subcontainer admins with the required rights to install additional servers and services. For more information on the required rights for the various OES services, see [“Rights Required for Subcontainer Administrators”](#) on page 18.

## Using the YaST Plug-In to Extend the Schema

If you want a subcontainer admin to install the first OES 11 SP1 server or the first instance of an OES 11 SP1 service in an existing tree, and you don't want to grant that admin the Supervisor right to the root of the tree, someone with the Supervisor right to root can extend the schema by using YaST from any of the following locations:

- ♦ An OES 11 SP1 server running in another tree
- ♦ Install a fully patched SLES 11 SP2 server, then install OES 11 SP1 without installing any of the services followed by the `yast2 novell-schema` tool installation.

To run the Novell Schema Tool:

- 1 On the server's desktop, click *Computer* and open the *YaST Control Center*.
  - 2 Click *Open Enterprise Server > Novell Schema Tool*.
  - 3 Depending on the installation method you used, you might be required to insert your OES 11 SP1 installation media.
  - 4 On the Novell eDirectory Extension Utility page, specify the information for an eDirectory server with a Read/Write replica of the Root partition.
- Be sure to provide the correct information to authenticate as an admin user with the Supervisor right at the root of the target tree. Otherwise, the schema extension fails.
- 5 Select all of the other services you plan to run on any of the OES 11 SP1 servers in the tree.
  - 6 Click *Next*.

The schema is extended.

The YaST2 `novell-schematool` utility writes the schema event messages to the `/var/opt/novell/eDirectory/log/oes_schema.log` file on the server where the utility is running.

## Extending the Schema for Novell Cluster Services

If you want a subcontainer administrator to install the first instance of Novell Cluster Services in a tree, you can extend the schema by following the instructions in “[Extending the eDirectory Schema to Add Cluster Objects](#)” in the *OES 11 SP1: Novell Cluster Services 2.1 for Linux Administration Guide*.

## 2.6 Deciding What Patterns to Install

A default SLES 11 SP2 installation has the following base technology, graphical environment, and primary function patterns selected for installation. With the exception explained in the two Important notes below, you can accept or deselect these patterns and install additional patterns as desired.

**Table 2-4** Standard SLES 11 SP2 Installation Patterns

Pattern	Description
Server Base System	<p>Consists of all packages that are common to all Novell SUSE Linux Enterprise products. Also provides a Linux Standard Base 3.0 compliant runtime environment.</p> <p>This pattern is selected for installation by default.</p> <p><b>IMPORTANT:</b> You must either install this pattern or the Common Code Base pattern.</p>
Common Code Base	<p>The largest system. It includes all packages available with SUSE Linux, except those that would result in dependency conflicts.</p> <p><b>IMPORTANT:</b> You must either install this pattern or the Server Base System pattern.</p>
Novell AppArmor	<p>Novell AppArmor is an open source Linux application security framework that provides mandatory access control for programs, protecting against the exploitation of software flaws and compromised systems. AppArmor includes everything you need to provide effective containment for programs (including those that run as <code>root</code>) to thwart attempted exploits and even zero-day attacks. AppArmor offers an advanced tool set that largely automates the development of per-program application security so that no new expertise is required.</p> <p>This pattern is selected for installation by default.</p>
GNOME Desktop Environment	<p>The GNOME desktop environment is an intuitive and attractive desktop for users. The GNOME development platform is an extensive framework for building applications that integrate into the rest of the desktop.</p> <p>This pattern is selected for installation by default.</p>
X Window System	<p>In continuous use for over 20 years, the X Window System provides the only standard platform-independent networked graphical window system bridging the heterogeneous platforms in today's enterprise: from network servers to desktops, thin clients, laptops, and handhelds, independent of operating system and hardware.</p> <p>This pattern is selected for installation by default.</p>

Pattern	Description
Print Server	<p>Sets up a print server to host print queues so that they can be accessed by other computers on the same network, including machines running Microsoft Windows operating systems. The print server can accept print jobs from client computers and direct them to locally attached printers or to network printers. LPD, CUPS, and SMB print servers and queues are supported.</p> <p>This pattern is selected for installation by default.</p>

The OES add-on installation includes the following OES Services patterns:

**Table 2-5** OES Services Pattern Descriptions

Pattern	Description
Novell AFP	<p>A Novell AFP server allows Macintosh clients to access data stored on NSS volumes in the same way they access data on a Mac OS X server.</p> <p>This pattern selects and installs these services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Novell Backup / Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>◆ Novell eDirectory</li> <li>◆ Novell Storage Services (NSS)</li> <li>◆ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>◆ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> <li>◆ Novell NCP Server</li> </ul> <p>This pattern cannot be installed on the same server as these services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Novell Domain Services for Windows</li> </ul>
Novell Archive and Version Services	<p>Novell Archive and Version Services systematically captures and stores versions of your network files in an archive database, on a schedule that you determine. Users can search for a previous version of a file and quickly restore it.</p> <p>This pattern selects and installs these services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Novell Backup/Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>◆ Novell eDirectory</li> <li>◆ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>◆ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> <li>◆ Novell Storage Services (NSS)</li> <li>◆ Novell NCP Server</li> </ul> <p>This pattern cannot be installed on the same server as these services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Novell Domain Services for Windows</li> </ul>

Pattern	Description
Novell Backup/Storage Management Services (SMS)	<p>The Novell backup infrastructure (called Storage Management Services or SMS) provides backup applications with the framework to develop a complete backup and restore solution.</p> <p>SMS helps back up file systems (such as NSS) or application data (such as data from GroupWise) on NetWare and SUSE Linux Enterprise Server (SLES) to removable tape media or other media for off-site storage. It provides a single consistent interface for all file systems and applications across NetWare and SLES.</p> <p>This pattern selects and installs these services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>◆ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> </ul>
Novell CIFS	<p>CIFS (Common Internet File System) is a network sharing protocol. Novell CIFS enables Windows, Linux, and UNIX client workstations to copy, delete, move, save, and open files on an OES 11 SP1 server. CIFS allows read and write access from multiple client systems simultaneously.</p> <p>This pattern selects and installs these services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Novell Backup / Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>◆ Novell eDirectory</li> <li>◆ Novell Storage Services (NSS)</li> <li>◆ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>◆ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> <li>◆ Novell NCP Server</li> </ul> <p>This pattern cannot be installed on the same server as these services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Novell Domain Services for Windows</li> <li>◆ Novell Samba</li> </ul>

Pattern	Description
Novell Cluster Services (NCS)	<p>Novell Cluster Services is a server clustering system that ensures high availability and manageability of critical network resources including data, applications, and services. It is a multinode clustering product for Linux that is enabled for Novell eDirectory and supports failover, failback, and migration (load balancing) of individually managed cluster resources.</p> <p>Novell Cluster Services lets you add Linux nodes to an existing NetWare 6.5 cluster without bringing down the cluster, or it lets you create an all-Linux cluster. With a mixed cluster, you can migrate services between OS kernels, and if services are alike on both platforms (such as NSS), you can set the services to fail over across platforms.</p> <p>Using Novell Cluster Services with iSCSI technologies included in OES, you can build inexpensive clustered SANs on commodity gigabit Ethernet hardware. You can leverage existing hardware into a high availability solution supporting Linux and NetWare clusters.</p> <p>This pattern selects and installs these services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Novell Backup/Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>◆ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>◆ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> </ul> <p>This pattern cannot be installed on the same server with these services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ High Availability</li> </ul>
Novell DHCP	<p>Novell DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) uses eDirectory to provide configuration parameters to client computers and integrate them into a network.</p> <p>The eDirectory integration lets you have centralized administration and management of DHCP servers across the enterprise and lets you set up DHCP subnet replication via Novell eDirectory.</p> <p>This pattern selects and installs these services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Novell Backup/Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>◆ Novell eDirectory</li> <li>◆ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>◆ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> </ul>
Novell DNS	<p>Novell DNS uses Novell eDirectory to deliver information associated with domain names, in particular the IP address.</p> <p>This eDirectory integration lets you have centralized administration and management of DNS servers across the enterprise and lets you set up a DNS zone via Novell eDirectory.</p> <p>This pattern selects and installs these services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Novell Backup/Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>◆ Novell eDirectory</li> <li>◆ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>◆ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> </ul>

Pattern	Description
Novell Domain Services for Windows	<p>Novell Domain Services for Windows provides seamless cross-authentication capabilities between Windows/Active Directory and Novell OES 11 SP1 servers. It is a suite of integrated technologies that removes the need for the Novell Client when logging on and accessing data from Windows workstations in eDirectory trees. This technology simplifies the management of users and workstations in mixed Novell-Microsoft environments.</p> <p>This pattern selects and installs these services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Backup / Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>♦ Novell eDirectory</li> <li>♦ Novell DNS</li> <li>♦ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>♦ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> <li>♦ Novell Storage Services (NSS)</li> <li>♦ Novell NCP Server</li> </ul> <p>This pattern cannot be installed on the same server as these services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Samba</li> <li>♦ Novell CIFS</li> <li>♦ Novell AFP</li> <li>♦ Novell Archive and Version Services</li> <li>♦ Novell FTP</li> <li>♦ Novell iFolder</li> <li>♦ Novell NetStorage</li> <li>♦ Novell Pre-Migration Server</li> <li>♦ Novell QuickFinder</li> </ul>
Novell eDirectory	<p>Novell eDirectory services are the foundation for the world's largest identity management, high-end directory service that allows businesses to manage identities and security access for employees, customers, and partners. More than just an LDAP data store, eDirectory is the identity foundation for managing the relationships that link your users and their access rights with corporate resources, devices, and security policies.</p> <p>This pattern selects and installs these services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Backup/Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>♦ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>♦ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> </ul> <p>This pattern cannot be installed on the same server as these services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ OpenLDAP</li> </ul>



Pattern	Description
Novell FTP	<p>Novell FTP (File Transfer Protocol) is integrated with Novell eDirectory so that users can securely transfer files to and from OES volumes.</p> <p>This pattern selects and installs these services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Backup/Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>♦ Novell eDirectory</li> <li>♦ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>♦ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> </ul> <p>This pattern cannot be installed on the same server as these services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Domain Services for Windows</li> </ul>
Novell iFolder	<p>Novell iFolder 3.9 is a simple and secure storage solution that increases user productivity by enabling users to back up, access, and manage their personal files from anywhere, at any time.</p> <p>This pattern selects and installs these services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Backup/Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>♦ Novell eDirectory</li> <li>♦ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>♦ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> </ul> <p>This pattern cannot be installed on the same server as these services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Domain Services for Windows</li> </ul>
Novell iManager	<p>Novell iManager is a Web-based administration console that provides secure, customized access to network administration utilities and content from virtually anywhere you have access to the Internet and a Web browser.</p> <p>iManager provides the following benefits:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Single point of administration for Novell eDirectory objects, schema, partitions, and replicas</li> <li>♦ Single point of administration for many other network resources</li> <li>♦ Management of many Novell products by using iManager plug-ins</li> <li>♦ Role-Based Services (RBS) for delegated administration</li> </ul> <p>This pattern selects and installs these services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Backup/Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>♦ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>♦ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> </ul>

Pattern	Description
Novell iPrint	<p>Novell iPrint lets employees, partners, and customers access printers from a variety of locations across the network and the Internet. From a Web browser, users can easily install any printer on the network from any location.</p> <p>This pattern selects and installs these services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Novell Backup/Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>◆ Novell eDirectory</li> <li>◆ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>◆ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> </ul> <p>This pattern cannot be installed on the same server as these services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ CUPS</li> </ul>
Novell Linux User Management (LUM)	<p>Linux User Management (LUM) enables eDirectory users to function as local POSIX users on Linux servers. This functionality lets administrators use eDirectory to centrally manage remote users for access to one or more OES servers.</p> <p>This pattern selects and installs these services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Novell Backup/Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>◆ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> </ul>
Novell NCP Server / Dynamic Storage Technology	<p>Novell NCP Server for Linux enables support for login scripts, mapping drives to OES servers, and other services commonly associated with Novell Client access. This means that Windows users with the Novell Client installed can be seamlessly transitioned to file services on OES.</p> <p>NCP Server includes Novell Dynamic Storage Technology, which allows seldom-accessed files on NSS volumes to be automatically moved, according to policies set by the administrator, from faster-access storage to lower-cost storage media where the files can be more easily managed and backed up.</p> <p>Services included with NCP (NetWare Core Protocol) are file access, file locking, security, tracking of resource allocation, event notification, synchronization with other servers, connection and communication, print services and queue management, and network management.</p> <p>This pattern selects and installs these services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Novell Backup/Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>◆ Novell eDirectory</li> <li>◆ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>◆ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> </ul>

Pattern	Description
Novell NetStorage	<p>Novell NetStorage provides the solution for simple, Internet-based access to file storage. NetStorage is a bridge between a company's protected Novell storage network and the Internet. It lets users access files securely from any Internet location, with nothing to download or install on the user's workstation.</p> <p>With Novell NetStorage, a user can securely access files from any Internet-enabled machine. Users can copy, move, rename, delete, read, write, recover, and set trustee assignments (based on their privilege level) on files between a local workstation and a Novell storage network. Access is available from any Internet-attached workstation, anywhere in the world. There is no need to e-mail or copy data from one machine to another.</p> <p>This pattern selects and installs these services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Backup/Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>♦ Novell iManager</li> <li>♦ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>♦ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> </ul> <p>This pattern cannot be installed on the same server as these services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Domain Services for Windows</li> </ul>
Novell Pre-Migration Server	<p>A Novell Pre-Migration Server is not actually a service. Rather, it is a special-purpose server—the target of a Server ID Transfer Migration.</p> <p>Selecting this option causes this server to be installed without an eDirectory replica, thus preparing it to assume the identity of another server that you plan to decommission. For more information, see the <a href="#">OES 11 SP1: Migration Tool Administration Guide</a>.</p> <p>You should also select and install all the services that you plan to migrate from the other server. Services that are not installed on this server prior to the migration cannot be migrated.</p> <p>This pattern selects and installs these services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Backup / Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>♦ Novell eDirectory (without a replica)</li> <li>♦ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>♦ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> </ul> <p>This pattern cannot be installed on the same server as these services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Domain Services for Windows</li> </ul>

Pattern	Description
Novell QuickFinder	<p>QuickFinder lets your users find the information they're looking for on any of your public and private Web sites, your partners' sites, and any number of additional Web sites across the Internet or internal file servers, all from a single search form on your Web page.</p> <p>You can easily modify the look and feel of any of the sample search results pages to match your corporate design.</p> <p>You can create full-text indexes of HTML, XML, PDF, Word, OpenOffice.org, and many other document formats in almost any language with the QuickFinder Unicode indexing engine.</p> <p>You can configure and maintain your indexes remotely from anywhere on the network with the QuickFinder Web-based administration module.</p> <p>This pattern selects and installs these services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Backup/Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>♦ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>♦ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> </ul> <p>This pattern cannot be installed on the same server as these services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Domain Services for Windows</li> </ul>
Novell Remote Manager (NRM)	<p>Novell Remote Manager lets you securely access and manage one or more servers from any location through a standard Web browser. You can use Novell Remote Manager to monitor your server's health, change the configuration of your server, or perform diagnostic and debugging tasks.</p> <p>This pattern selects and installs these services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Backup/Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>♦ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> </ul>
Novell Samba	<p>Novell Samba provides Windows (CIFS and HTTP-WebDAV) access to files stored on an OES server's file system using an eDirectory username and password.</p> <p>This pattern selects and installs these services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Backup/Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>♦ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>♦ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> </ul> <p>This pattern cannot be installed on the same server as these services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell CIFS</li> <li>♦ Novell Domain Services for Windows</li> </ul>

Pattern	Description
Novell Storage Services (NSS)	<p>The Novell Storage Services (NSS) file system provides many unique and powerful file system capabilities. It is especially suited for managing file services for thousands of users in an organization. It also includes Novell Distributed File Services for NSS volumes.</p> <p>Unique features include visibility, trustee access control model, multiple simultaneous namespace support, native Unicode, user and directory quotas, rich file attributes, multiple data stream support, event file lists, and a file salvage subsystem.</p> <p>NSS volumes are cross-compatible between kernels. You can mount a non-encrypted NSS data volume on either the Linux or NetWare kernel and move it between them. In a clustered SAN, volumes can fail over between kernels, allowing for full data and file system feature preservation when migrating data to Linux.</p> <p>This pattern selects and installs these services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Backup/Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>♦ Novell eDirectory</li> <li>♦ Novell NCP Server</li> <li>♦ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>♦ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> </ul> <p>This pattern cannot be installed on the same server as these services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Xen Virtual Machine Host Server</li> </ul>

If you want to install these services, you can select them to install with most other patterns during the initial server installation by customizing the installation or you can install them after installing your initial Open Enterprise Server. For more information, see [“Customizing the Software Selections” on page 54](#) and [“Installing or Configuring OES 11 SP1 on an Existing Server” on page 109](#).

## 2.7 Obtaining OES 11 SP1 Software

For information on obtaining OES software, see [“Getting and Preparing OES 11 SP1 Software”](#) in the *OES 11 SP1: Planning and Implementation Guide*.

## 2.8 Preparing Physical Media for a New Server Installation or an Upgrade

To prepare physical media for an installation or upgrade, you must first download ISO image files and then burn the DVDs that you need for your server. Detailed download instructions are available in [“Getting and Preparing OES 11 SP1 Software”](#) in the *OES 11 SP1: Planning and Implementation Guide*.

[Table 2-6](#) lists the image files you need.

**Table 2-6** Files to Download

Platform	Files needed
64-bit server with CD/DVD drive	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>♦ SLES 11 SP2 DVD ISO (SLES-11-SP2-DVD-x86_64-GM-DVD.iso)</li><li>♦ OES 11 SP1 CD ISO (OES11-SP1-addon-x86_64-CD1.iso)</li><li>♦ Integrated ISO that has SLES 11 SP2 and OES 11 SP1 (OES11-SP1-addon_with_SLES11-SP2-x86_64-DVD.iso)</li></ul> <p>These ISO files can be downloaded from the <a href="http://download.novell.com/Download?buildid=hPn9_LMecxQ~">OES 11 SP1 download page (http://download.novell.com/Download?buildid=hPn9_LMecxQ~)</a>.</p>

- 1 Download the ISO files you need for your hardware capabilities.
- 2 Ensure that the checksum of the files you have downloaded are same as specified in the download page. To know the checksum, use the `md5sum <file name>` command.
- 3 Insert a blank, writable CD or DVD into your CD or DVD burner.
- 4 Select the option to create a CD or DVD from an image file.
- 5 Select *ISO* as the file type.
- 6 Select the first image file (see [Table 2-6](#)) from the location you downloaded it to.
- 7 Complete the CD or DVD creation process.
- 8 Label the disk.
- 9 Repeat this process for each of the ISO image files you downloaded.

## 2.9 Setting Up a Network Installation Source

The YaST install lets you use installation sources files that are hosted on the network to install a new server or upgrade an existing server. The following sections describe how to set up a network installation source server on the following platforms:

- ♦ [Section 2.9.1, “SUSE Linux as a Network Installation Source Server,” on page 38](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.9.2, “NetWare as a Network Installation Source Server,” on page 41](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.9.3, “Windows as a Network Installation Source Server,” on page 42](#)

### 2.9.1 SUSE Linux as a Network Installation Source Server

To prepare a network installation source on a SUSE Linux server, see:

- ♦ [“Setting Up the Server Holding the Installation Sources” \(http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book\\_sle\\_deployment/data/sec\\_deployment\\_remoteinst\\_instserver.html\)](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_sle_deployment/data/sec_deployment_remoteinst_instserver.html) in the SLES 11 SP2 Administration Guide
- ♦ The instructions in the following sections:
  - ♦ [“Requirements” on page 39](#)
  - ♦ [“Procedure” on page 39](#)
  - ♦ [“NFS Protocol Configuration” on page 39](#)

- ♦ [“FTP Protocol Configuration” on page 40](#)
- ♦ [“HTTP Protocol Configuration” on page 40](#)

## Requirements

To set up a network installation source, you need the following:

- ☐ A YaST Network Installation source server

This source server can be SLES 9 or later, OES 2 or later, Windows, or NetWare 6.5.

- ☐ An active network connection between the installation source server and the OES server you are installing or upgrading.

## Procedure

- 1 Download or copy the ISO image files to a directory of your choice. See [“Getting and Preparing OES 11 SP1 Software”](#) in the *OES 11 SP1: Planning and Implementation Guide*.
- 2 Configure your Linux server to be a YaST installation server and select the location for the root of the network installation.

The three protocol options to choose from for configuring the YaST installation server are NFS, FTP, and HTTP. For the protocol configuration procedures, see the following:

- ♦ [“NFS Protocol Configuration” on page 39](#)
- ♦ [“FTP Protocol Configuration” on page 40](#)
- ♦ [“HTTP Protocol Configuration” on page 40](#)

FTP and HTTP do not allow you to serve the files without possible modifications to .conf files. NFS is the simplest protocol to configure and is recommended.

- 3 Create a boot DVD using the .iso image file for *SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 SP2 DVD* and label it with that name.

For information on creating this CD, see [“Preparing Physical Media for a New Server Installation or an Upgrade” on page 37](#).

This DVD will be the network installation boot DVD.

With these steps completed, you are ready to perform a new installation or upgrade using a network installation source. See [“Starting the OES 11 SP1 Installation” on page 46](#) or [“Upgrading to OES 11 SP1” on page 115](#).

## NFS Protocol Configuration

An NFS share can be shared easily from almost any location on your file system. Use the following procedure if you choose to use this protocol:

- 1 At your network installation server, launch YaST.
- 2 Select *Network Services*, then click *NFS Server*.  
You might be prompted to install the NFS server.
- 3 On the NFS Server configuration screen, select *Start* in the NFS Server section, select *Open Port in Firewall* in the Firewall section, then click *Next*.
- 4 In the Directories section, click *Add Directory* and specify or browse to the directory where you have created the install root (source directory), then click *OK*.

- 5 Accept the defaults in the pop-up window for adding a Host.  
If you are experienced with NFS configurations, you can customize the configuration.
- 6 Click *Finish*.

## FTP Protocol Configuration

These instructions use Pure-FTPd and can be implemented through YaST. Depending on the FTP server you use, the configuration might be different.

If you have created your install root (source directory) within your FTP root, you can forego the following procedure and simply start Pure-FTPd.

The default configuration of Pure-FTPd runs in chroot jail, so symlinks cannot be followed. In order to allow FTP access to the install root created outside of the FTP root, you must mount the install root directory inside of the FTP root.

If you have not created your install root within your FTP root and you choose to use this protocol:

- 1 Create a directory inside of your FTP root.
- 2 Run the following command:  

```
mount --bind /path_to_install_root /path_to_directory_in_ftp_root
```

For example,

```
mount --bind /tmp/OES /srv/ftp/OES
```
- 3 (Optional) If you want to make this install root permanent, add this command to the `/etc/fstab` file.
- 4 Start Pure-FTPd.

## HTTP Protocol Configuration

These instructions use Apache2 as provided by SLES 11 SP2.

If you choose to use this protocol:

- 1 Modify the `default-server.conf` file of your HTTP server to allow it to follow symlinks and create directory indexes.  

The `default-server.conf` file is located in the `/etc/apache2` directory. In the `Directory` tag of the `default-server.conf` file, remove `None` if it is there, add `FollowSymLinks` and `Indexes` to the `Options` directive, then save the changes.
- 2 (Conditional) If the install root is outside of the HTTP root, create a symbolic link to the install root with the following command:  

```
ln -s /path_to_install_root /path_to_link
```

For example,

```
ln -s /tmp/OES /srv/www/htdocs/OES
```
- 3 Restart Apache.



## 2.9.2 NetWare as a Network Installation Source Server

Complete the instructions in this section to set up an Novell Open Enterprise Server (OES) 11 SP1 installation source on an existing NetWare 6.5 SP8 server.

- ♦ “Prerequisites” on page 41
- ♦ “Copy the Files and Mount Them as NSS Volumes” on page 41
- ♦ “Create the Boot CDs” on page 42

### Prerequisites

You need the following:

- ☐ A NetWare 6.5 SP8 server accessible on the network where you plan to install the OES 11 SP1 servers with the following:
  - ♦ 6 GB free disk space on the server
  - ♦ The Apache Web Server for NetWare installed and running
- ☐ The following ISO image files from Novell:

Image File	Purpose
SLES-11-SP2-DVD-x86_64-GM-DVD1.iso	Boot DVD for x86_64 (64-bit) SLES 11 SP2 installations
OES11-SP1-addon-x86_64-CD1.iso	Install source for x86_64 (64-bit) OES 11 SP1 services
OES11-SP1-addon_with_SLES11-SP2-x86_64-DVD.iso	Integrated ISO has the install source for x86_64 (64-bit) SLES 11 SP2 and OES 11 SP1. It is also acts as boot DVD using SLES 11 SP2.

For information on downloading these image files, see the [Novell Open Enterprise Server 11 Download Instructions \(http://www.novell.com/documentation/oes11/esd/di\\_oes11.html\)](http://www.novell.com/documentation/oes11/esd/di_oes11.html).

### Copy the Files and Mount Them as NSS Volumes

The following instructions create unrestricted access to OES 11 SP1 installation files on a NetWare server on your network. Restricting access to the installation files requires additional configuration through Apache Manager or requires manual editing of the Apache configuration files.

For more information on restricting access, see information about the Options, Order, Deny, Allow, and other directives on the [Apache.org Web Site \(http://httpd.apache.org/docs-2.0/mod/directives.html\)](http://httpd.apache.org/docs-2.0/mod/directives.html).

To provide unrestricted access to the OES 11 SP1 image files:

- 1 Create a directory at the root of a server volume with at least 6 GB of free disk space.  
For example, you might create a directory named OES11\_INSTALL in a volume named TOOLS.
- 2 Restrict access to the directory to only those administrators who copy image files to the directory.  
This is important because if someone attempts to access these files after they are mounted as NSS volumes, the volumes are immediately dismounted and are no longer available.
- 3 Copy the DVD image files listed in “Prerequisites” on page 41 to the directory you just created.

- 4 At the server console, mount each image file as an NSS volume:

- 4a Enter the following command:

```
nss /MountImageVolume=volume:directory/filename.iso
```

Replace *volume* with the NSS volume name, *directory* with the directory you created in [Step 1](#), and *filename* with the name of the ISO file.

For example:

```
nss /MountImageVolume=TOOLS:OES11_INSTALL/SLES-11-SP2-DVD-x86_64-GM-DVD1.iso
```

- 4b Note the assigned volume name.

For the first SLES DVD you mount, the name is `SLES11SP_2`, which is the actual volume name in the image file. For the second image you mount, the assigned name is `CD_` followed by a four-digit number, starting with 0000.

The same principle applies to the OES 11 image files. The first file mounted is the actual OES 11 volume name, but the second image is assigned a `CD_xxxx` name.

Knowing which volume is for which platform is critical as you create an access URL to the volume in Apache Manager.

- 5 In a supported browser, start Apache Manager by entering the following URL:

`https://server_ip_address:2200/apacheadmin/login.jsp`

Replace *server\_ip\_address* with the IP address of the NetWare server.

- 6 Log in as the Admin user or a user with administrative rights to the Apache server.

- 7 Click the *Content Manager* icon .

- 8 Click *Additional Document Directories*.

- 9 In the *URL Prefix* field, specify an alias name you want people to use to access one of the mounted volumes.

- 10 Click the *Search* icon next to the *File Path* field.

- 11 Click the volume name that matches the alias name you specified in [Step 9](#), then click *Finish*.

- 12 Click *Save > Save and Apply > OK*.

The path to the volume is added as an additional document.

- 13 Repeat from [Step 9](#) for the other three volumes.

All of the ISO files are now available for access through the Apache Web Server running on the NetWare server.

## Create the Boot CDs

See [Section 2.8, “Preparing Physical Media for a New Server Installation or an Upgrade,”](#) on page 37.

### 2.9.3 Windows as a Network Installation Source Server

To prepare a network installation source on a Windows server, see “[Managing an SMB Installation Source](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_sle_admin/data/book_sle_admin_pre.html)” ([http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book\\_sle\\_admin/data/book\\_sle\\_admin\\_pre.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_sle_admin/data/book_sle_admin_pre.html)) in the SLES 11 SP 2 Administration Guide.

## 2.10 Always Install OES as an Add-On Product

You must always install OES by adding it as an add-on product while running the YaST install. This is not the same as adding the OES installation media as an installation source.

Failure to do this will prevent the server from registering as an OES 11 SP1 server with the Novell Customer Center.

## 2.11 Install Only One Server at a Time

You should install one server at a time into a tree, then wait for the installation program to complete before installing an additional server into the same tree.

## 2.12 What's Next

Proceed to one of the following sections, depending on the task that you want to perform:

- ♦ [“Installing OES 11 SP1 as a New Installation” on page 45](#)
- ♦ [“Upgrading to OES 11 SP1” on page 115](#)
- ♦ [“Using AutoYaST to Install and Configure Multiple OES Servers” on page 181](#)
- ♦ [“Installing, Upgrading, or Updating OES on a VM” on page 193](#)
- ♦ [“Installing or Configuring OES 11 SP1 on an Existing Server” on page 109](#)



---

# 3 Installing OES 11 SP1 as a New Installation

Novell Open Enterprise Server (OES) 11 SP1 is an add-on product to SUSE Linux Enterprise Server (SLES) 11 SP2. When you install and configure OES, you can also install and configure SLES 11 SP2. Therefore, it is helpful to understand how to perform a SLES 11 SP2 installation. This section provides information on the integrated installation of SLES 11 SP2 and OES 11 SP1.

For detailed information on performing a SLES installation, see the *SLES 11 SP2 Deployment Guide* ([https://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book\\_sle\\_deployment/?page=/documentation/sles11/book\\_sle\\_deployment/data/book\\_sle\\_deployment.html](https://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_sle_deployment/?page=/documentation/sles11/book_sle_deployment/data/book_sle_deployment.html)).

---

**TIP:** You can also use the integrated iso (OES11-SP1-addon\_with\_SLES11-SP2-x86\_64-DVD.iso) for OES 11 SP1 installation. This ISO has both OES 11 SP1 and SLES 11 SP2. When you use this ISO, you do not require to select OES as an add on product in the Installation Mode screen.

---

This section does not provide step-by-step installation instructions because the installation interface is mostly self-explanatory. It does, however, provide information about important steps in the process that you might need help with.

- [Section 3.1, “Linux Software RAIDs Are Not Cluster Aware,” on page 45](#)
- [Section 3.2, “Linux Software RAIDs,” on page 46](#)
- [Section 3.3, “Starting the OES 11 SP1 Installation,” on page 46](#)
- [Section 3.4, “Specifying the Installation Mode,” on page 49](#)
- [Section 3.5, “Specifying the Add-On Product Installation Information,” on page 50](#)
- [Section 3.6, “Setting Up the Clock and Time Zone,” on page 50](#)
- [Section 3.7, “Specifying the Installation Settings for the SLES Base and OES Installation,” on page 50](#)
- [Section 3.8, “Specifying Configuration Information,” on page 57](#)
- [Section 3.9, “Finishing the Installation,” on page 106](#)
- [Section 3.10, “Verifying That the Installation Was Successful,” on page 106](#)
- [Section 3.11, “What's Next,” on page 107](#)

## 3.1 Linux Software RAIDs Are Not Cluster Aware

Do not use Linux Software RAIDs for devices that you plan to use for shared storage objects. Linux Software RAID devices do not support concurrent activation on multiple nodes; that is, they are not cluster aware. They cannot be used for shared-disk storage objects, such as the OCFS2 file system, cLVM volume groups, and Novell Cluster Services SBD (split-brain-detector) partitions.

For shared disks, you can use hardware RAID devices on your storage subsystem to achieve fault tolerance.

## 3.2 Linux Software RAIDs

We recommend that you do not use Linux software RAIDs (such as MD RAIDs and Device Mapper RAIDs) for devices that you plan to use for storage objects that are managed by NSS management tools. The Novell Linux Volume Manager (NLVM) utility and the NSS Management Utility (NSSMU) list Linux software RAID devices that you have created by using Linux tools. Beginning with Linux Kernel 3.0 in OES 11 SP1, NLVM and NSSMU can see these devices, initialize them, and allow you to create storage objects on them. However, this capability has not yet been fully tested.

---

**IMPORTANT:** In OES 11, a server hang or crash can occur if you attempt to use a Linux software RAID when you create storage objects that are managed by NSS management tools.

---

For NSS pools, you can use hardware RAID devices or NSS Software RAID devices to achieve disk fault tolerance.

For Linux POSIX volumes, LVM volume groups, and cLVM volume groups, you can use hardware RAID devices on your storage subsystem to achieve disk fault tolerance.

## 3.3 Starting the OES 11 SP1 Installation

- 1 Insert the *SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 SP2* installation media that you created into the CD-ROM or DVD drive of the computer that you want to be your OES server
- 2 Boot the machine.
- 3 Continue with one of the following procedures:
  - ♦ [Section 3.3.1, “Installing from Physical Media,” on page 46](#)
  - ♦ [Section 3.3.2, “Installing from a Network Source with DHCP,” on page 47](#)
  - ♦ [Section 3.3.3, “Installing from a Network Source without DHCP,” on page 48](#)

### 3.3.1 Installing from Physical Media

- 1 From the DVD boot menu, select the second option (*Installation*), then press Enter.
- 2 Select the language that you want to use, then click *Next*.
- 3 Read and accept the license agreement, then click *Next*.
- 4 (Conditional) If you haven't already verified that the media you burned is valid, you can check it by using the *Media Check* option; otherwise, click *Next* to continue with the installation.
- 5 Follow the prompts, using the information contained in the following sections:
  - 5a [“Specifying the Installation Mode” on page 49.](#)
  - 5b [“Specifying the Add-On Product Installation Information” on page 50.](#)
  - 5c [“Setting Up the Clock and Time Zone” on page 50.](#)
  - 5d [“Specifying the Installation Settings for the SLES Base and OES Installation” on page 50.](#)
  - 5e [“Specifying Configuration Information” on page 57.](#)
  - 5f [“Finishing the Installation” on page 106.](#)
- 6 Complete the server setup by following the procedures in [“Completing OES Installation or Upgrade Tasks” on page 159.](#)

### 3.3.2 Installing from a Network Source with DHCP

- 1 From the DVD boot menu, select one of the following Installation options that matches your environment, but do not press Enter.
  - ♦ **Installation:** The normal installation mode. All modern hardware functions are enabled.
  - ♦ **Installation—ACPI Disabled:** If the normal installation fails, it might be because the system hardware does not support ACPI (advanced configuration and power interface). If this seems to be the case, use this option to install without ACPI support.
  - ♦ **Installation—Local APIC Disabled:** If the normal installation fails, it might be because the system hardware does not support local APIC (advanced programmable interrupt controllers). If this seems to be the case, use this option to install without local APIC support.

If you are not sure, try *Installation—ACPI Disabled* or *Installation—Safe Settings* first.

  - ♦ **Installation—Safe Settings:** Boots the system with the DMA mode (for CD-ROM drives) and power management functions disabled. Experts can also use the command line to enter or change kernel parameters.

At this point you can either

- ♦ Skip to with [Step 4](#) and input everything as the install prompts you.
  - or
  - ♦ Pre-specify the IP address information and/or the boot options parameters on the *Boot Options* line (see “[Using Custom Boot Options](#)” in the *SUSE Linux Enterprise Server Installation and Administration Guide* ([http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book\\_sle\\_deployment/data/sec\\_deployment\\_remoteinst\\_bootinst.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_sle_deployment/data/sec_deployment_remoteinst_bootinst.html))).
- 2 (Optional) If you want to specify the IP address information, do it now.

Otherwise, continue with [Step 3](#).
  - 3 (Optional) If you want to specify boot options parameters, do it now. Then press Enter and continue with [Step 7](#).

Otherwise, continue with [Step 4](#).
  - 4 Press F4, and then select the network installation type (SLP, FTP, HTTP, NFS, SMB/CIFS) that you set up on your network installation server.

See [Step 2 on page 39](#) of the [SUSE Linux as a Network Installation Source Server](#) procedure.
  - 5 Specify the required information (server name and installation path), then select OK.
  - 6 Press Enter to begin the installation.
  - 7 Follow the screen prompts, referring to the information in the following sections as needed (remember that not all required selections are documented):
    - 7a “[Specifying the Installation Mode](#)” on page 49.
    - 7b “[Specifying the Add-On Product Installation Information](#)” on page 50.
    - 7c “[Setting Up the Clock and Time Zone](#)” on page 50.
    - 7d “[Specifying the Installation Settings for the SLES Base and OES Installation](#)” on page 50.
    - 7e “[Specifying Configuration Information](#)” on page 57.
    - 7f “[Finishing the Installation](#)” on page 106.
  - 8 Complete the server setup by following the procedures in “[Completing OES Installation or Upgrade Tasks](#)” on page 159.

### 3.3.3 Installing from a Network Source without DHCP

- 1 From the DVD boot menu, select one of the following Installation options that matches your environment.

- ♦ **Installation:** The normal installation mode. All modern hardware functions are enabled.
- ♦ **Installation—ACPI Disabled:** If the normal installation fails, this might be because of the system hardware not supporting ACPI (advanced configuration and power interface). If this seems to be the case, use this option to install without ACPI support.
- ♦ **Installation—Local APIC Disabled:** If the normal installation fails, this might be because of the system hardware not supporting local APIC (advanced programmable interrupt controllers). If this seems to be the case, use this option to install without local APIC support.

If you are not sure, try *Installation—ACPI Disabled* or *Installation—Safe Settings* first.

- ♦ **Installation—Safe Settings:** Boots the system with the DMA mode (for CD-ROM drives) and power management functions disabled. Experts can also use the command line to enter or change kernel parameters.

- 2 At this point you can pre-specify the IP address information, etc. on the *Boot Options* line (see “*Booting the Target System for Installation*” in the *SUSE Linux Enterprise Server Deployment Guide* ([http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book\\_sle\\_deployment/data/sec\\_deployment\\_remoteinst\\_bootinst.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_sle_deployment/data/sec_deployment_remoteinst_bootinst.html)))

If you want to specify the IP address information, etc., do it now. Then press Enter and continue with [Step 19 on page 49](#).

Otherwise, press Enter, continue with [Step 3](#), and input everything as the install prompts you.

- 3 When you receive the following error, select OK and press Enter:

```
Could not find the SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 SP2 Installation source.  
Activating manual set up program.
```

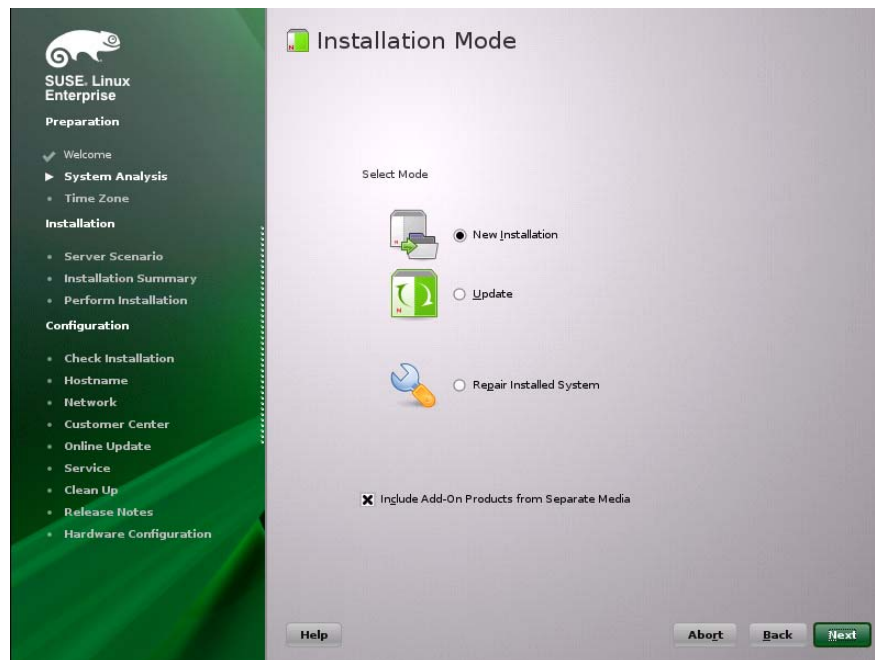
- 4 Select the language, then select OK and press Enter.
- 5 Select a keyboard map, then select OK and press Enter.
- 6 Select *Start Installation or System*, then select OK and press Enter.
- 7 Select *Start Installation or Update*, then select OK and press Enter.
- 8 Select *Network*, press Enter, then select OK and press Enter.
- 9 Select the network protocol that matches the configured protocol on your network installation server, then press Enter.
- 10 (Conditional) If you have more than one network interface card, select one of the cards, then press Enter.  
We recommend eth0.
- 11 When prompted whether you want to use DHCP, select *No*, then press Enter.
- 12 Specify the IP address for the server, then press Enter.
- 13 Specify the subnet mask, then press Enter.
- 14 Specify the gateway, then press Enter.
- 15 Specify the IP address of a name server, then press Enter.
- 16 Specify the IP address of the network installation server, then press Enter.
- 17 (Conditional) Depending on the protocol you specified, you might see additional screens for FTP or HTTP. Select the options that are appropriate for your network, then continue with [Step 18](#).



- 18 Specify the path to your installation source on the network installation server, then press Enter.
- 19 Follow the prompts, using the information contained in the following sections:
  - 19a [“Specifying the Installation Mode” on page 49.](#)
  - 19b [“Specifying the Add-On Product Installation Information” on page 50.](#)
  - 19c [“Setting Up the Clock and Time Zone” on page 50.](#)
  - 19d [“Specifying the Installation Settings for the SLES Base and OES Installation” on page 50.](#)
  - 19e [“Specifying Configuration Information” on page 57.](#)
  - 19f [“Finishing the Installation” on page 106.](#)
- 20 Complete the server setup by following the procedures in [“Completing OES Installation or Upgrade Tasks” on page 159.](#)

## 3.4 Specifying the Installation Mode

- 1 When the Installation Mode page displays, select the following two menu options, then click *Next*:
  - ♦ *New Installation*
  - ♦ *Include Add-On Products from Separate Media*



---

**NOTE:** If you have used the integrated iso (OES11-SP1-addon\_with\_SLES11-SP2-x86\_64-DVD.iso) for the OES 11 SP1 installation, do not select *Include Add-On Products from Separate Media*.

---

- 2 Continue with [Section 3.5, “Specifying the Add-On Product Installation Information,” on page 50.](#)

## 3.5 Specifying the Add-On Product Installation Information

- 1 When the Add-On Product Installation page displays, click *Add*.
- 2 If you are installing OES 11 SP1 from a CD, do the following:
  - 2a On the Add-On Product Media page, click *CD*, then click *Next*.
  - 2b On the Insert the Add-On Product CD page, select the appropriate drive where you want to insert the OES 11 SP1 CD.
  - 2c Click *Eject*.
  - 2d Insert the CD labeled *Novell Open Enterprise Server 11 CD 1*, then click *Continue*.
- 3 If you are using an alternate installation source, such as a network installation source, click the appropriate option for your situation, then click *Next* and supply the required information.
- 4 Read and accept the Novell Open Enterprise Server 11 SP1 license agreement, then click *Next*.
- 5 Confirm that the Add-On Product Installation page shows the correct path to the OES media, then click *Next*.
- 6 Continue with [Section 3.6, “Setting Up the Clock and Time Zone,” on page 50](#).

## 3.6 Setting Up the Clock and Time Zone

- 1 Make sure the *Clock*, *Region*, *Timezone*, and *Time and Date* settings are what you want, then click *Next*.

You can configure this information after the installation is complete, but it is easier to do it during the installation.
- 2 Continue with [Section 3.7, “Specifying the Installation Settings for the SLES Base and OES Installation,” on page 50](#).

## 3.7 Specifying the Installation Settings for the SLES Base and OES Installation

The Installation Settings page lets you specify which software and services are installed on your server.

- ♦ **Overview tab:** This lets you specify everything that is normally required for an OES installation.
- ♦ **Expert tab:** This lets you fully customize your SLES installation settings. For detailed information, see Deployment in the *SLES 11 SP2 Installation and Administration Guide* ([http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book\\_sle\\_deployment/data/book\\_sle\\_deployment.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_sle_deployment/data/book_sle_deployment.html)). Keep in mind, however, that the SLES guide does not contain instructions for OES-specific components or configurations.

---

**IMPORTANT:** If you accept the defaults at this point in the installation process, only the base OES components are installed.

You can add OES services later, but you should at least read the guidelines and follow the applicable procedures in the following sections:

- ♦ [“Setting Up Disk Partitions” on page 51](#)
  - ♦ [“Customizing the Software Selections” on page 54](#)
  - ♦ [“Accepting the Installation Settings” on page 56](#)
-

## 3.7.1 Setting Up Disk Partitions

In most cases, YaST proposes a reasonable partitioning scheme that can be accepted without change. You can also use YaST to customize the partitioning.

- ♦ “Guidelines” on page 51
- ♦ “NSS on the System Disk” on page 52
- ♦ “Security Flag Recommendations” on page 52
- ♦ “Partitioning X86 Machines” on page 53
- ♦ “Disk Partition Statistics” on page 53
- ♦ “Combining Hard Disk Partitions” on page 54

### Guidelines

Table 3-1 presents guidelines for setting up disk partitions on your OES server. For more information, see Installation Settings in the *SLES 11 SP2 Installation and Administration Guide* ([http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book\\_sle\\_admin/data/book\\_sle\\_admin\\_pre.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_sle_admin/data/book_sle_admin_pre.html))

**Table 3-1** Partition Guidelines

Partition to Create	Other Considerations
/boot	<p>Depending on the hardware, it might be useful to create a boot partition (/boot) to hold the boot mechanism and the Linux kernel.</p> <p>You should create this partition at the start of the disk and make it at least 8 MB or 1 cylinder. As a rule of thumb, always create such a partition if it was included in the YaST original proposal. If you are unsure about this, create a boot partition to be on the safe side.</p> <p><b>IMPORTANT:</b> In a Xen VM installation, format the /boot partition using <i>Ext2</i> as the file system. For a technical explanation of why this is necessary, see Paravirtual Mode and Journaling File System in the <i>Virtualization with Xen</i> (<a href="http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_xen/data/book_xen.html">http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_xen/data/book_xen.html</a>) guide.</p>
swap	<p>This should normally be twice the size of the RAM installed on your server. If you create a /boot partition, create the swap partition second. Otherwise, create the swap partition first.</p>
/	<p>Define this partition as 3 GB or more. In all cases, create this partition after you create the swap partition. Keep in mind that this root (/) partition contains all of the partitions listed below that you don't specifically create.</p>
/var	<p>This contains system logs and should therefore be a separate partition to avoid impacting system and service stability because of a disk-full condition.</p> <p>Define this partition as 4 GB or more.</p>
/opt	<p>Some (mostly commercial) programs install their data in /opt.</p> <p>Define this partition as 4 GB or more.</p>
/usr	<p>Creating this as a separate partition makes updating the server easier if you need to reinstall the system from the beginning because you can keep the partition intact.</p> <p>Define this partition as 4 GB or more.</p>

Partition to Create	Other Considerations
/srv	<p>This contains the Web and FTP servers.</p> <p>Consider making this a separate partition to avoid having someone flood the disk by accident or on purpose, which impacts system and service stability.</p>
/home	<p>User Home directories go here.</p> <p>Consider making this a separate partition to avoid having someone flood the disk by accident or on purpose, which impacts system and service stability.</p> <p>You can allocate the rest of the disk space to this partition.</p>
/tmp	<p>Creating this as a separate partition is optional. However, because it is writable by everyone, best practices suggest creating a separate partition to avoid having someone flood the disk by accident or on purpose, which impacts system and service stability.</p> <p>Place application-specific files on a separate partition.</p> <p>If you are building a mail server, note where the mail spools reside because they can grow quite large, and you need to anticipate this when you are defining partition sizes.</p>

## NSS on the System Disk

For OES, Novell Storage Services (NSS) volumes can be used only as data volumes, not as system volumes.

Additionally, they cannot be created as part of the install process.

However, you must consider whether you will be creating them in the future *on the storage device where you are installing Linux*. (Creating NSS volumes on storage devices that don't contain Linux system partitions requires no special handling.)

The default volume manager for Linux POSIX volumes on SUSE Linux is LVM (Linux Volume Manager).

## Security Flag Recommendations

The following table indicates the recommended security flags for each partition. A question mark indicates that some software might not work if this flag is set.

Mount Point	Mount Options
/	
/var	nosuid
/tmp	nosuid
/home	nosuid, nodev, noexec?
/srv	nosuid?, nodev?, noexec?, ro? (after installation)
/usr/local	nosuid?, nodev?, ro? (after installation)

**IMPORTANT:** Proprietary software installations might fail if executables in /tmp cannot run as the file owner (suid), and devices might not work in /usr/local, etc. In such cases, remount those partitions temporarily with security deactivated.

## Partitioning X86 Machines

- There can be a maximum of four primary partitions or three primary partitions and one extended partition. An extended partition can hold 15 (SCSI) or 63 (IDE) logical partitions.
- Each partition is assigned a partition type, depending on the file system planned for the partition.
- Each partition holds its own file system.
- Partitions are mounted into the file system tree at mount points. The content of the partition is visible to users with sufficient access privileges below the mount point.
- One of the partitions must hold the root (/) file system. Other partitions can be integrated into the root file system by using the mount command.
- The /etc/fstab file holds partition and mount point information to allow automatic mounting at boot time.
- Device files in the “device” (/dev) partition are used to represent and address partitions; for example:

/dev/hda	Master disk on the first IDE channel
/dev/hda1	First primary partition on the IDE channel disk
/dev/hda5	First logical partition within the extended partition on that disk
/dev/sdb	Second SCSI disk
/dev/sdb3	Third primary partition on the second SCSI disk

## Disk Partition Statistics

Use the following commands to get information about system storage usage:

---

<code>df</code>	Displays information about partitions
<code>df -h</code>	Displays information in megabytes or gigabytes as applicable (human readable format)
<code>du</code>	Displays disk usage
<code>du /dirA</code>	Displays the size of each file and directory in dirA
<code>du -sh</code>	Prints a summary of information in megabytes or gigabytes

---

## Combining Hard Disk Partitions

- ♦ Partitions from two or more hard disks can be combined by using the logical volume manager (LVM).
- ♦ Partitions (physical volumes) can be combined into a volume group, which in turn can be divided into logical volumes that contain their own file systems.

Doing this increases flexibility because physical volumes can be easily added to the volume group if more storage space is needed. Logical volumes can be added while the machine is up and running.

### 3.7.2 Customizing the Software Selections

---

**IMPORTANT:** To install any of the OES patterns, you must customize the software selections. If you don't make any selections, only the base SLES 11 SP2 and the base OES packages are installed. However, you can install any of the patterns after the base SLES 11 SP2 installation is complete. See [“Installing or Configuring OES 11 SP1 on an Existing Server” on page 109](#).

---

To customize which software packages are installed on the server:

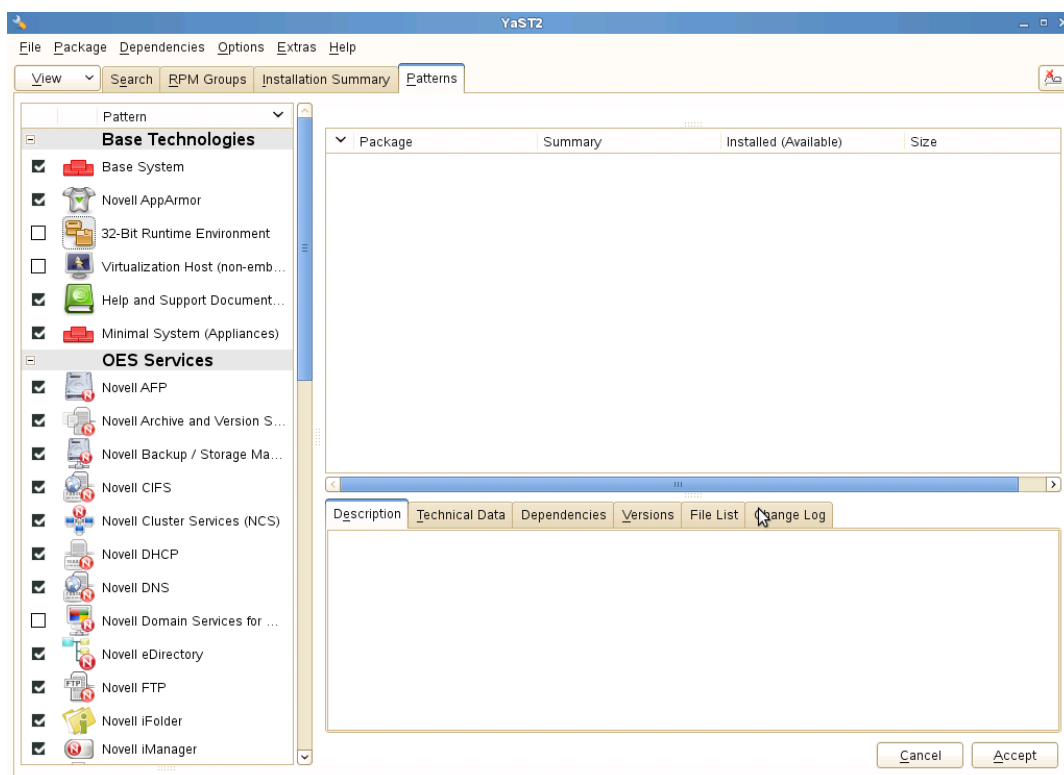
- 1 On the Installation Settings page, click *Software*.

The Open Enterprise Server add-on adds the OES Services category of patterns to the base software selection categories offered by the SLES 11 SP2 installation. OES Services include patterns that contain Novell services or products such as Novell DNS and DHCP services, iPrint, or iManager.

None of the OES Services is selected by default. This lets you fully customize your OES server.

- 2 At this point, you can do the following to customize your software selections:

- ♦ **Select OES Services:** You can select any number of the OES Services patterns as long as you avoid unsupported service combinations (see [“Unsupported Service Combinations”](#) in the *OES 11 SP1: Planning and Implementation Guide*).



A description of each pattern displays to the right of the pattern when it is selected. For a description of OES Services patterns and the components selected with each pattern, see [Table 2-5 on page 29](#).

You can manually change the default SLES selections by changing the install status and selecting the patterns offered in each category.

---

**IMPORTANT:** If you deselect a pattern after selecting it, you are instructing the installation program to not install that pattern and all of its dependent patterns. Rather than deselecting a pattern, click *Cancel* to cancel your software selections, then click the *Software* heading again to choose your selections again.

Selecting only the patterns that you want to install ensures that the patterns and their dependent patterns and packages are installed.

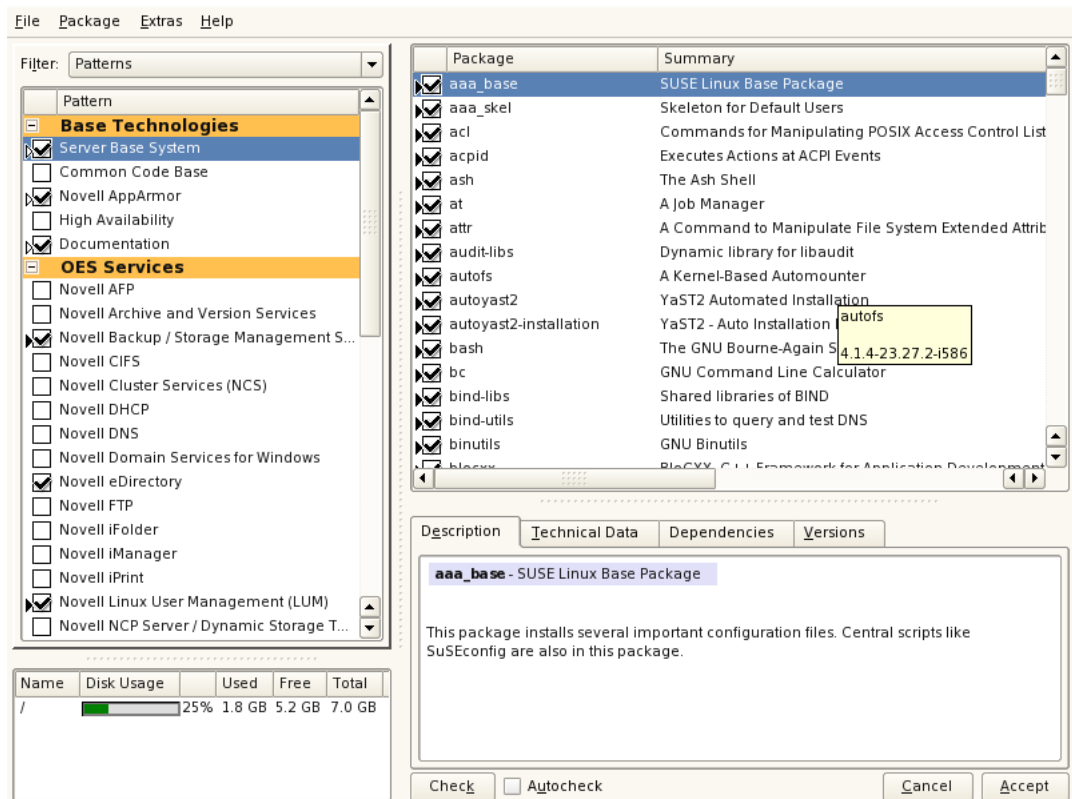
If you click *Accept*, then return to software pattern selection page, the selections that you made become your base selections and must be deselected if you want to remove them from the installation proposal.

---

You must install at least one of the SLES Base Technologies patterns.

Selecting a pattern automatically selects the other patterns that it depends on to complete the installation.

- ♦ **Customize Your Selections:** You can view the details of your selection and add or remove specific packages for the installation by clicking *Details*.



- 3 When you have selected the software components that you want to install, click *Accept*.
- 4 If you are prompted with the license agreement for *Professional TrueType Fonts*, click *Accept*.
- 5 (Conditional) If the prompt for *Automatic Changes* displays, click *Continue*.
- 6 (Conditional) If prompted, resolve any dependency conflicts.

### 3.7.3 Accepting the Installation Settings

- 1 Review the final Installation Summary page to ensure that you have all the Installation settings you desire.
- 2 After you have changed all the Installation Settings as desired, click *Accept*.
- 3 On the Confirm Installation page, click *Install*.  
The base installation settings are applied and the packages are installed.
- 4 For installations using a network installation source, you can remove the network boot CD (*SLES 11 SP2 DVD 1*) from the DVD drive.  
or  
For installations using a CD or DVD installation source, leave the CD or DVD in the CD-ROM or DVD drive.
- 5 After the server reboot, proceed with [“Specifying Configuration Information”](#) on page 57.



## 3.8 Specifying Configuration Information

When the server reboots, you are required to complete the following configuration information:

- ♦ [Section 3.8.1, “Specifying the Password for the System Administrator “root”,” on page 57](#)
- ♦ [Section 3.8.2, “Specifying the Hostname and Domain Name,” on page 57](#)
- ♦ [Section 3.8.3, “Specifying Network Configuration Settings,” on page 57](#)
- ♦ [Section 3.8.4, “Testing the Connection to the Internet,” on page 60](#)
- ♦ [Section 3.8.5, “Specifying Novell Customer Center Configuration Settings,” on page 61](#)
- ♦ [Section 3.8.6, “Updating the Server Software,” on page 63](#)
- ♦ [Section 3.8.7, “Specifying Service Configuration Settings,” on page 65](#)
- ♦ [Section 3.8.8, “Specifying LDAP Configuration Settings,” on page 67](#)
- ♦ [Section 3.8.9, “Specifying eDirectory Configuration Settings,” on page 69](#)
- ♦ [Section 3.8.10, “Configuring OES Services,” on page 77](#)
- ♦ [Section 3.8.11, “Configuration Guidelines for OES Services,” on page 78](#)

### 3.8.1 Specifying the Password for the System Administrator “root”

In the Password for the System Administrator root page:

- 1 Specify the password for the `root` administrator.  
For security reasons, the `root` user’s password should be at least five characters long and should contain a mixture of both uppercase and lowercase letters and numbers. Passwords are case sensitive.  
The default password length limit is 8 characters. The maximum possible length for passwords is 72 characters. If you have a password longer than eight characters, click *Expert Options > Blowfish > OK*.
- 2 Confirm the password.
- 3 Click *Next*.

### 3.8.2 Specifying the Hostname and Domain Name

On the Hostname and Domain Name page:

- 1 Specify the hostname associated with the IP address you have or will assign to the server.
- 2 Specify the domain name for the server.
- 3 Deselect *Change Hostname via DHCP*.
- 4 Click *Next*.

### 3.8.3 Specifying Network Configuration Settings

On the Network Configuration page, you can change the configuration for the following, most of which do not apply in an OES server installation scenario:

- ♦ Network Mode
- ♦ Firewall
- ♦ IPv6

- ♦ Network Interfaces
- ♦ DSL Connections
- ♦ ISDN Adapters
- ♦ Modems
- ♦ VNC Remote Administration
- ♦ Proxy

In this section, we give details only for the components that apply to OES servers.

- ♦ [“Network Interface” on page 58](#)
- ♦ [“Firewall” on page 58](#)

## Network Interface

Configuration success is directly tied to specific networking configuration requirements. Make sure that the settings covered in the steps that follow are configured exactly as specified.

Specify the setting for each network board on the server:

- 1 On the Network Configuration page, click *Network Interfaces*.
- 2 On the Network Card Configuration Overview page, select the network card you want to configure, then click *Edit*.
- 3 Select *Static Address Setup*, then specify the IP address and the subnet mask for the interface. OES requires a static IP address.
- 4 In the *Detailed Settings* list, select *Hostname and Name Server*.
  - 4a In the *Name Servers and Domain Search List* panel, specify from one to three DNS server IP addresses.
  - 4b Click *OK* to return to the *Detailed Settings* list.
- 5 In the *Detailed Settings* list, select *Routing*.
  - 5a Specify the IP address of the default gateway on the subnet where you are installing the OES server.
  - 5b Click *OK* to return to the *Detailed Settings* list.
- 6 Click *Next* to return to the Network Card Configuration Overview page.
- 7 Complete [Step 2](#) through [Step 6](#) for each network board, then click *Next* to return to the main Network Configuration page.

## Firewall

For security reasons, a firewall is started automatically on each configured interface. The configuration proposal for the firewall is updated automatically every time the configuration of the interfaces or services is modified.

Many of the OES services require an open port in the firewall. [Table 3-2](#) shows the ports that are automatically opened when each listed OES service is configured.

**Table 3-2** *Open Enterprise Server Services and Ports*

Service	Default Ports
Domain Services for Windows	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ 1636 (LDAPS)</li> <li>♦ 1389 (LDAP)</li> <li>♦ 88 (Kerberos TCP and UDP)</li> <li>♦ 135 (RPC Endpoint Manager TCP and UDP)</li> <li>♦ 1024 - 65535 (RPC Dynamic Assignments TCP)</li> <li>♦ 3268 (Global Catalog LDAP TCP)</li> <li>♦ 3269 (Global Catalog LDAP over SSL TCP)</li> <li>♦ 123 (Network Time Protocol UDP)</li> <li>♦ 137 (NetBIOS Name Service TCP and UDP)</li> <li>♦ 138 (NetBIOS Datagram Service TCP and UDP)</li> <li>♦ 139 (NetBIOS Session Service TCP and UDP)</li> <li>♦ 8025 (Domain Service Daemon TCP)</li> <li>♦ 445 (Microsoft-DS traffic TCP and UDP)</li> </ul>
eDirectory	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ 389 (LDAP)</li> <li>♦ 636 (secure LDAP)</li> </ul> <p><b>IMPORTANT:</b> The scripts that manage the common proxy user require port 636 for secure LDAP communications.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ 8028 (HTTP for iMonitor)</li> <li>♦ 8030 (secure HTTP for iMonitor)</li> <li>♦ 524 (NCP)</li> </ul>
iManager	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ 80 (HTTP)</li> <li>♦ 443 (secure HTTP)</li> </ul>
iPrint	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ 80 (HTTP)</li> <li>♦ 443 (secure HTTP)</li> <li>♦ 631 (IPP)</li> </ul>
Novell AFP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ 548</li> </ul>
Novell Archive and Version Services	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ 26029</li> </ul>
Novell CIFS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ 636 (secure LDAP)</li> </ul> <p><b>IMPORTANT:</b> The scripts that manage the common proxy user require port 636 for secure LDAP communications.</p>
Novell DHCP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ 67</li> </ul>
Novell DNS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ 953 (secure HTTP)</li> <li>♦ 53 (TCP)</li> <li>♦ 53 (UDP)</li> </ul>
Novell FTP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ 21</li> </ul>

Service	Default Ports
Novell Information Portal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ 80 (HTTP)</li> <li>♦ 443 (secure HTTP)</li> </ul>
Novell NetWare Core Protocol (NCP)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ 524</li> </ul>
Novell Remote Manager	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ 8008 (HTTP)</li> <li>♦ 8009 (secure HTTP)</li> </ul>
SFCB	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ 5988 (HTTP)</li> <li>♦ 5989 (secure HTTP)</li> </ul>
QuickFinder	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ 80 (HTTP)</li> <li>♦ 443 (secure HTTP)</li> </ul>
Samba	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ 139 (Netbios)</li> <li>♦ 445 (Microsoft-ds)</li> </ul>
Secure Shell	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ 22</li> </ul>
Storage Management Services (Backup)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ 40193 (smdr daemon)</li> </ul>

To adapt the automatic settings to your own preferences:

- 1 Click *Change > Firewall*.
- 2 In the left panel, select the settings you want to change, then make the changes in the right panel.
- 3 When you are finished, click *Accept*.

For more information about the firewall, see “[Configuring the Firewall with YaST](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_security/data/sec_fire_suse.html)” in the *SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 Security Guide* ([http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book\\_security/data/sec\\_fire\\_suse.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_security/data/sec_fire_suse.html)).

To disable the firewall:

- 1 On the Network Configuration page, under *Firewall*, click *enabled* on the *Firewall is enabled* status line.  
When the firewall is disabled, the status for Firewall should read *Firewall is disabled*.
- 2 Verify that the settings on the Network Configuration page are set as desired, then click *Next* to save the configuration, then continue with “[Testing the Connection to the Internet](#)” on page 60.

## 3.8.4 Testing the Connection to the Internet

On the Test Internet Connection page:

- 1 Select *Yes, Test Connection to the Internet*, then click *Next*.  
Obtaining the latest SUSE release notes might fail at this point. If it does, view the log to verify that the network configuration is correct, then, click *Next*.  
If the network configuration is not correct, click *Back > Back* and fix your network configuration. See “[Network Interface](#)” on page 58.

---

**IMPORTANT:** Do not skip this test. For a successful install, you must configure the Novell Customer Center and update SLES 11 SP2 from the patch repository before configuring OES services.

---

- 2 Continue with [“Specifying Novell Customer Center Configuration Settings”](#) on page 61.

### 3.8.5 Specifying Novell Customer Center Configuration Settings

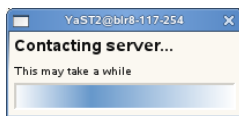
OES 11 SP1 requires that the SLES 11 SP2 base be updated prior to installing and configuring OES 11 SP1 services. If not, some OES services, such as Novell FTP, will not function properly after the installation and will need to be configured again after the SLES patches are applied.

Therefore, when you are entering the Novell Customer Center configuration information, it is critical that you enter either your purchased SLES 11 SP2 code or the 60-day evaluation code available with your SLES 11 SP2 download.

- 1 On the Novell Customer Center Configuration configuration page, select all of the following options, then click *Next*.

Option	What it Does
Configure Now	Proceeds with registering this server and the SLES 11 SP2 and OES 11 SP1 product in the Novell Customer center.
Hardware Profile	Sends the information to the Novell Customer Center about the hardware that you are installing SLES 11 SP2 and OES 11 SP1 on.
Optional Information	Sends optional information to the Novell Customer Center for your registration. For this release, this option doesn't send any additional information.
Registration Code	Makes the registration with activation codes mandatory.
Regularly Synchronize with the Customer Center	Keeps the installation sources for this server valid. It does not remove any installation sources that were manually added.

- 2 After you click *Next*, the following message is displayed.

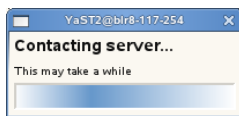


Wait until this message disappears and the Manual Interaction Required page displays.

- 3 On the Manual Interaction Required page, note the information that you will be required to specify, then click *Continue*.
- 4 On the Novell Customer Center Registration page, specify the required information in the following fields, then click *Submit*:

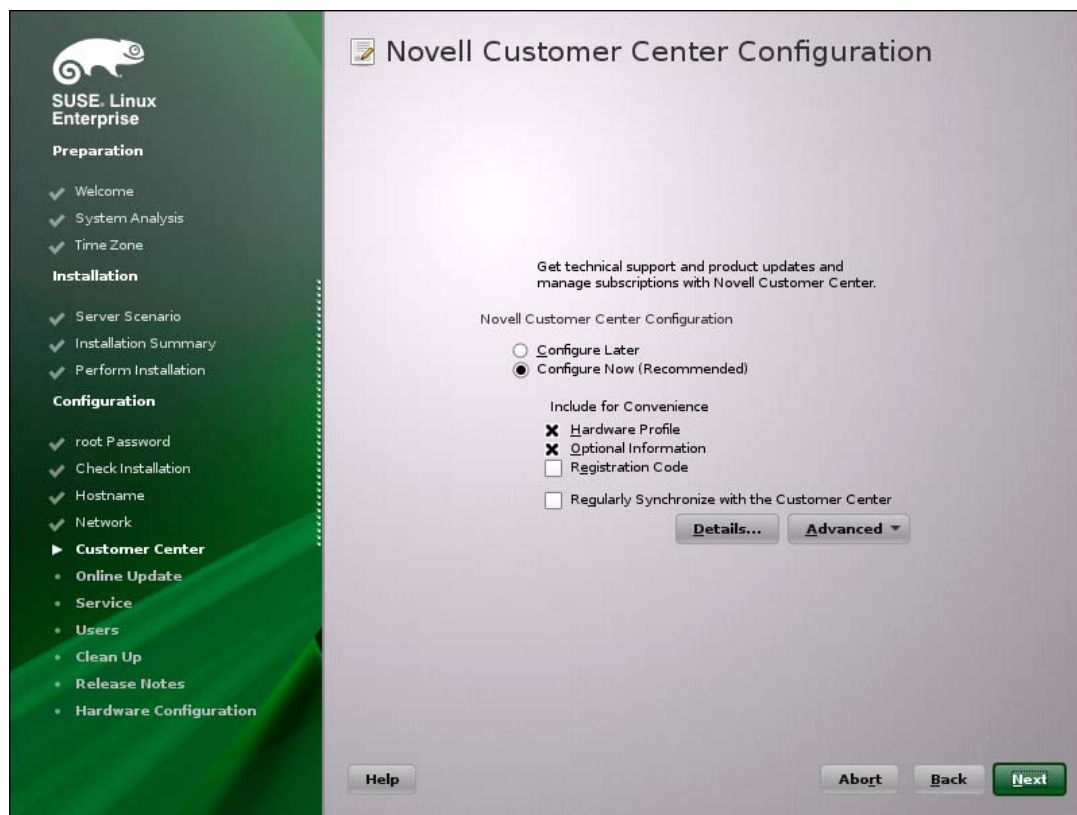
Field	Information to Specify
Email Address	The e-mail address for your Novell Login account.
Confirm Email Address	The same e-mail address for your Novell Login account
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 SP2 (optional)	Specify your purchased or 60-day evaluation registration code for the SLES 11 SP2 product.  If you don't specify a code, the server cannot receive any updates or patches.
Open Enterprise Server 11 SP1 (optional)	Specify your purchased or 60-day evaluation registration code for the OES 11 SP1 product.  If you don't specify a code, the server cannot receive any updates or patches.
System Name or Description (optional):	Specify a description to identify this server.

- 5 When the message to complete the registration displays, click *Continue*.
- 6 After you click *Continue*, the following message is displayed with the Manual Interaction Required screen.



Wait until this message disappears and Novell Customer Center Configuration page displays.

- 7 Select *Configure Now* to download any updates that are available for the server. Click *Next*.

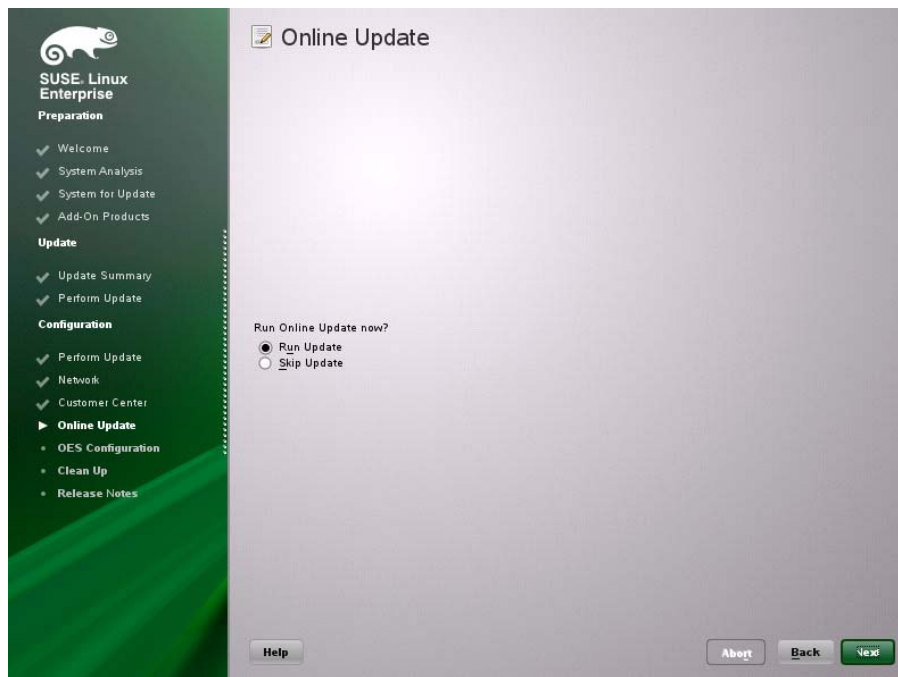


- 8 Continue with “Updating the Server Software” on page 63.

### 3.8.6 Updating the Server Software

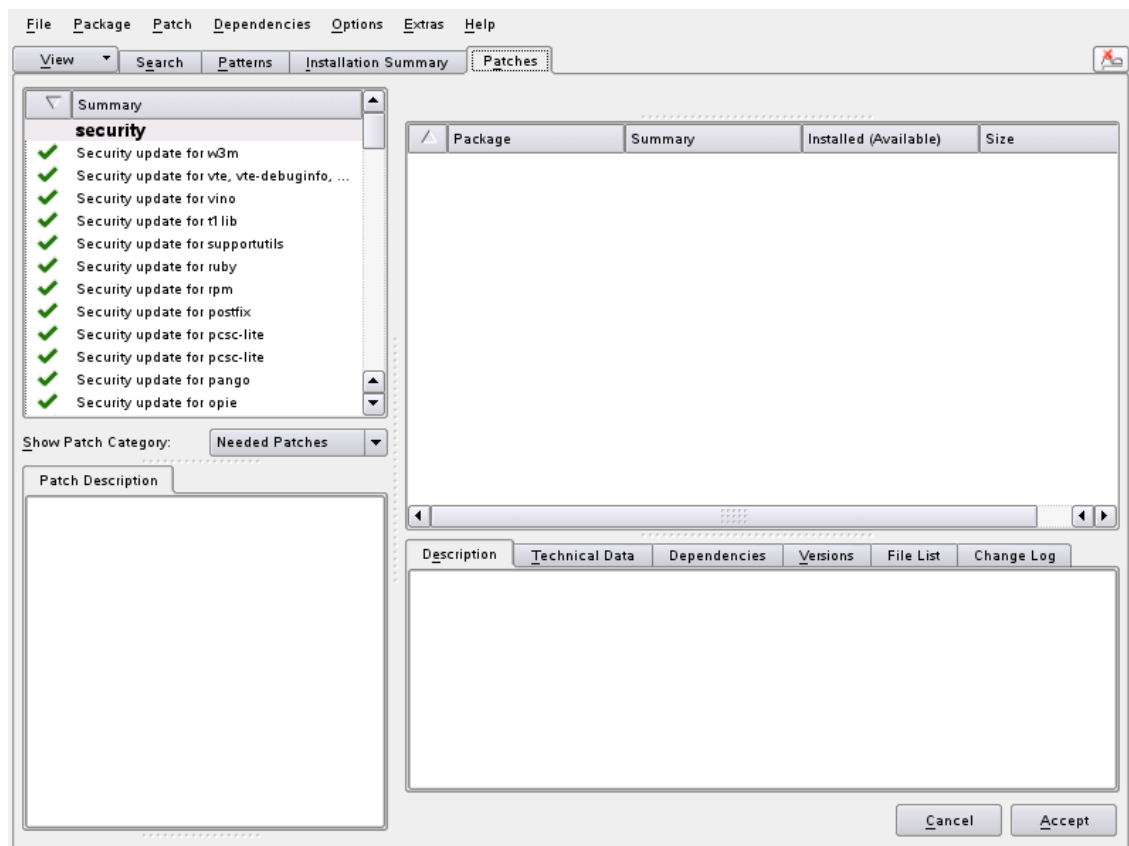
When you have a successful connection to the Internet and have registered the server in the Novell Customer Center, the server displays the Online Update page. You must run the online update now for a successful OES installation.

- 1 On the Online Updates page, click *Run Update > Next*.



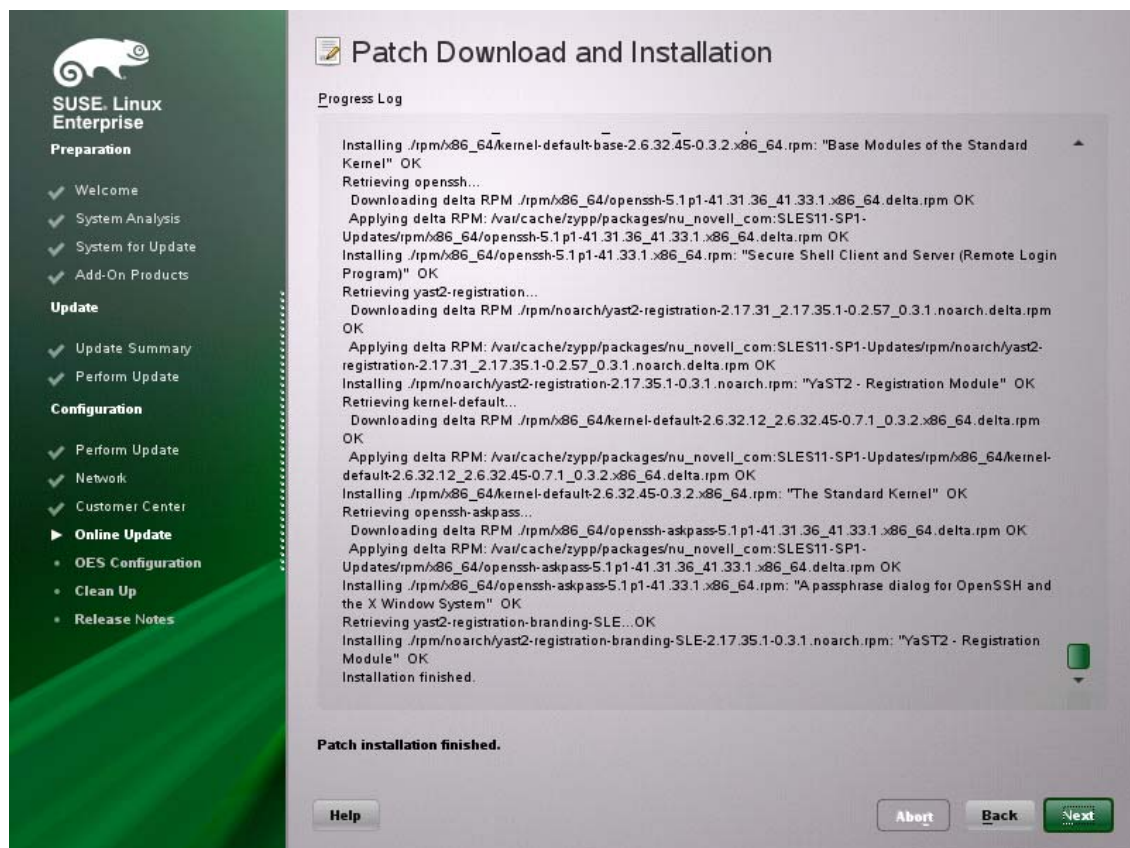
- 2 On the page that shows that updates are available, click *Accept*.

The check marks that are shown on the summary portion of the page are the patches that will be installed on your system after clicking *Accept*.



- 3 When you see the following message, click *Next*.



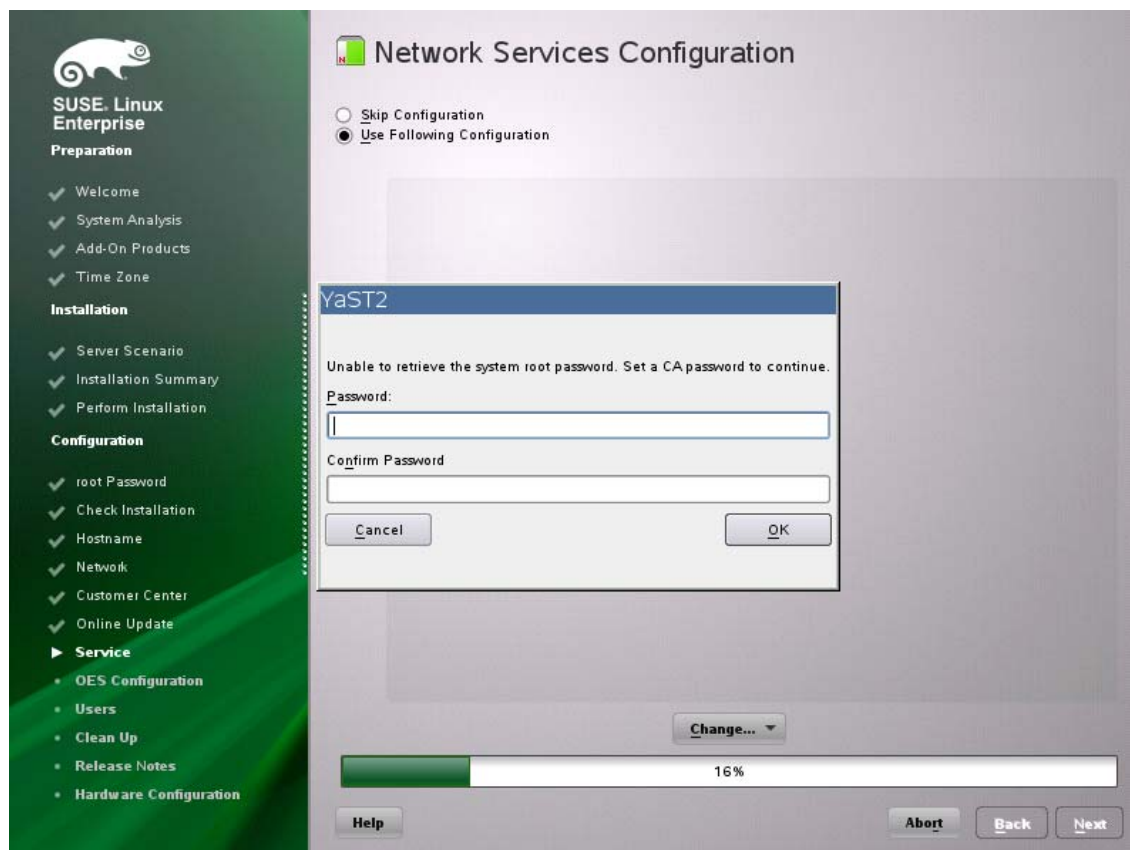


- 4 In the pop-up that informs you about the kernel update, click *OK*.  
The system reboots before continuing the installation.
- 5 Continue with [“Specifying Service Configuration Settings” on page 65](#).

### 3.8.7 Specifying Service Configuration Settings

Because the server was rebooted during the installation, the default settings for CA management lost the root password as indicated by the red text under *CA Management*.

- 1 Reset the password for root.



2 Observe the settings on the Installation Settings page.

- ♦ **CA Management:** This indicates the certificate that is used by the Apache Web server if another certificate is not specified.

By default, OES creates and installs a replacement eDirectory certificate later in the installation process. We recommend that you accept the eDirectory certificate option because it is much more secure than the certificate that is proposed.

Alternatively, you can install a third-party certificate.

In all cases, do not disable the configuration at this point because the services that use Apache will not work if you do.

For more information about OES certificate management, see “[Certificate Management](#)” in the *OES 11 SP1: Planning and Implementation Guide*.

- ♦ **OpenLDAP Server:** Do not enable this option. On OES servers, Novell eDirectory LDAP server replaces the SLES 11 SP2 OpenLDAP server.

3 If you are not installing a third-party certificate, click *Next*.

or

If you are installing a third-party certificate, click *CA Management* and refer to the information about Certificate Authority Management on SLES, see in the “[Managing X.509 Certification](#)” in the *SUSE LINUX Enterprise Server 11 Security Guide* ([http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book\\_security/data/cha\\_security\\_yast\\_ca.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_security/data/cha_security_yast_ca.html)). Then return to these instructions to continue your OES installation.

- 4 If you did not select the Novell eDirectory pattern for this server, continue with [“Specifying LDAP Configuration Settings” on page 67](#).

Otherwise, skip the next section and continue with [“Specifying eDirectory Configuration Settings” on page 69](#).

### 3.8.8 Specifying LDAP Configuration Settings

Many of the OES services require eDirectory. If eDirectory was not selected as a product to install on this server but other OES services that do require LDAP services were installed, the LDAP Configuration service displays, so that you can complete the required information.

To specify the required information on the Configured LDAP Server page:

- 1 In the *eDirectory Tree Name* field, specify the name for the existing eDirectory tree that you are installing this server into.
- 2 In the *Admin Name and Context* field, specify the name and context for user Admin in the existing tree.
- 3 In the *Admin Password Name* field, specify a password for the Admin user in the existing tree.
- 4 Add the LDAP servers that you want the services on this server to use. The servers that you add should hold the master or a read/write replica of eDirectory. Do the following for each server you want to add:
  - 4a Click *Add*.
  - 4b On the next page, specify the following information for the server to add, then click *Add*.
    - ♦ IP address

- ♦ LDAP port and secure LDAP port

### LDAP Server Configuration

Use this dialog to specify eDirectory LDAP server information for the OES services you install on this server.

**eDirectory Tree Name**  
Specify the eDirectory tree that you are installing this server into.

**Admin Name and Context**  
Specify the fully distinguished, typeful name of a user with administrative rights in the tree. Use LDAP format. For example, cn=admin,o=organization.

**Admin Password**  
Specify the password for the eDirectory Admin user.

**Configured LDAP Servers**  
The eDirectory LDAP servers listed in this table are servers that can be used to configure other OES services on this server. Each added server must have either the master or a read/write replica of the eDirectory tree. The first server added to the list becomes the default server for the installed and configured OES services to use.

If you are creating a new tree, the server you are installing has the master replica.

If you are installing into an existing tree, this server might not have a replica copied to it, depending on the tree configuration. For details, see the eDirectory 8.8 documentation. <http://www.novell.com/doc>

**Add**  
Click this option to add an eDirectory LDAP server to the Configured LDAP Servers table.

This opens an additional dialog

### Configured LDAP Servers

eDirectory Tree Name  
9-tree

Admin name and context  
cn=admin.o=novell

Admin password  
\*\*\*\*\*

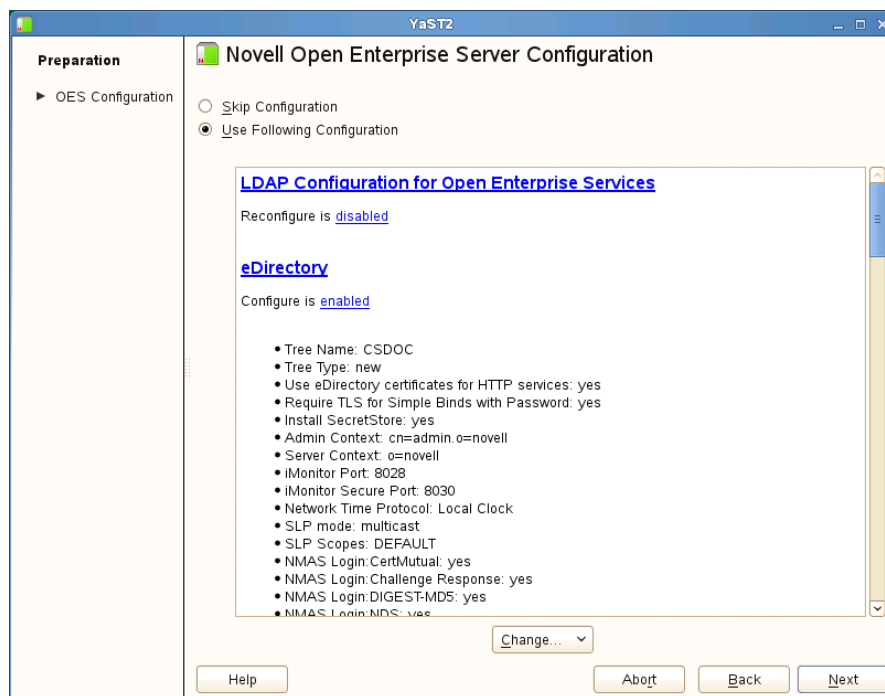
Configured LDAP Servers

IP Address	LDAP Port	Secure LDAP Port	Server
192.65.47.12	389	636	remote

Add Delete

Back
 Abort
 Next

- 5 When all the LDAP servers that you want to specify are listed, click *Next*.
- 6 Verify that the Novell Open Enterprise Server Configuration page displays the settings that you expected, then click *Next*.



7 Continue with [“Configuring OES Services” on page 77](#).

### 3.8.9 Specifying eDirectory Configuration Settings

When you specify the eDirectory configuration settings, you can specify information to create a new tree and install the server in that new tree or you can install the server into an existing tree by specifying the information for it. Use the following instructions as applicable:

- ♦ [“Creating a New eDirectory Tree and Installing the Server in It” on page 69](#)
- ♦ [“Installing the Server into an Existing eDirectory Tree” on page 70](#)
- ♦ [“Specifying Synchronizing Server Time Options” on page 73](#)
- ♦ [“Specifying SLP Configuration Options” on page 74](#)
- ♦ [“Selecting the Novell Modular Authentication Services \(NMAAS\) Login Method” on page 75](#)
- ♦ [“Specifying OES Common Proxy User Information” on page 76](#)

#### Creating a New eDirectory Tree and Installing the Server in It

- 1 On the eDirectory Configuration - New or Existing Tree page, select *New Tree*.
- 2 In the *eDirectory Tree Name* field, specify a name for the eDirectory tree that you want to create.

On OES servers, services that provide HTTPS connectivity are configured to use one of the following certificates:

- ♦ An eDirectory certificate issued by the Novell International Cryptographic Infrastructure (NICI),
- ♦ A third-party server certificate,

- ♦ The YaST self-signed common server certificate created in [Step 2 on page 66](#).  
Self-signed certificates provide minimal security and limited trust. Unless you have invested in a third-party certificate, we recommend that you use the eDirectory certificates instead.

By default, the *Use eDirectory Certificates for HTTPS Services* check box is selected. This means that the existing server certificate and key files (YaST or third-party) will be replaced with eDirectory server certificate and key files.

The default YaST server certificate and key files are:

- ♦ Key file: `/etc/ssl/servercerts/serverkey.pem`
- ♦ Certificate file: `/etc/ssl/servercerts/servercert.pem`

The eDirectory server certificate and key files are:

- ♦ Key file: `/etc/ssl/servercerts/eDirkey.pem`
- ♦ Certificate file: `/etc/ssl/servercerts/eDircert.pem`

For more information on certificate management, see “[Certificate Management](#)” in the [OES 11 SP1: Planning and Implementation Guide](#).

- 3 On the eDirectory Configuration - New Tree Information page, specify the required information:
  - ♦ The fully distinguished name and context for the user Admin on the existing server
  - ♦ The password for user Admin on the existing server.
- 4 Click *Next*.
- 5 On the eDirectory Configuration - Local Server Configuration page, specify the following information:
  - ♦ The context for the server object in the eDirectory tree.
  - ♦ A location for the eDirectory database.  
The default path is `/var/opt/novell/eDirectory/data/dib`, but you can use this option to change the location if you expect to have a large number of objects in your tree and if the current file system does not have sufficient space.
  - ♦ The ports to use for servicing LDAP requests.  
The default ports are 389 (non-secure) and 636 (secure).

---

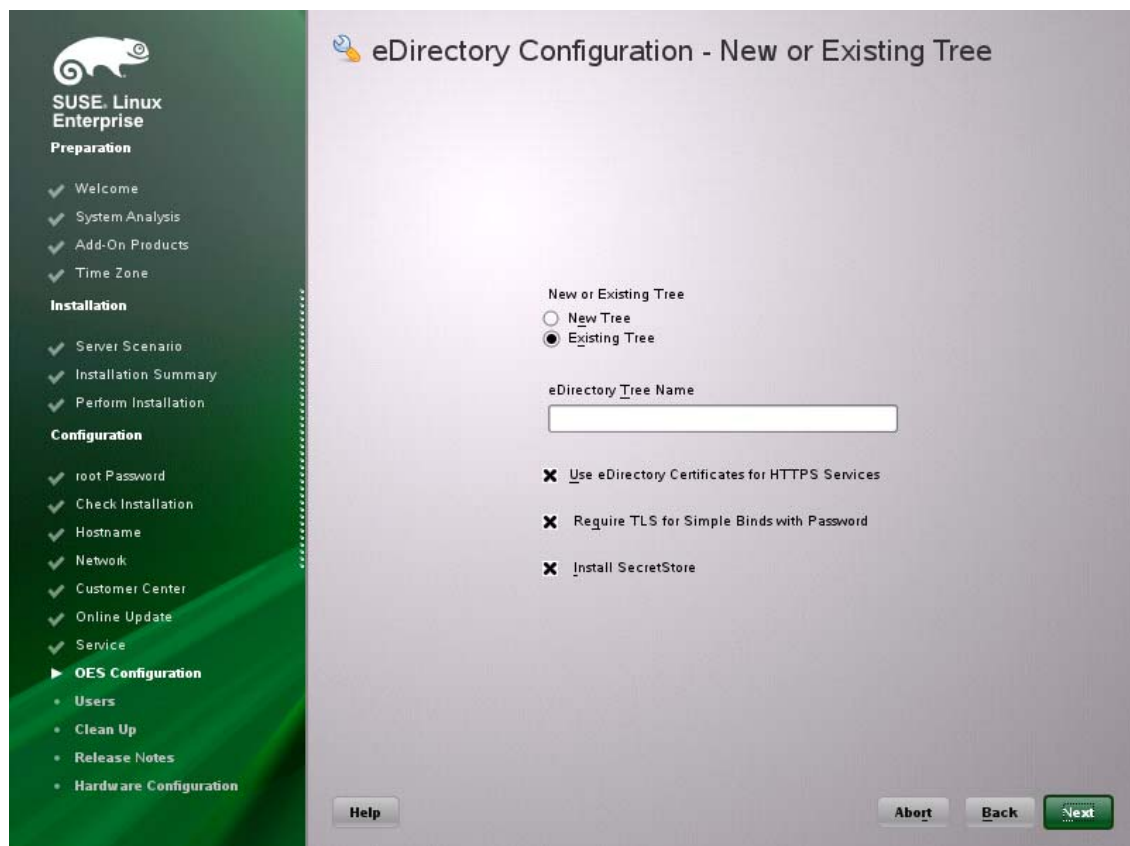
**IMPORTANT:** The scripts that manage the common proxy user introduced in OES 11 SP1 require port 636 for secure LDAP communications.

---

  - ♦ The ports to use for providing access to the iMonitor application.  
The default ports are 8028 (non-secure) and 8030 (secure).
- 6 Click *Next* and continue with “[Specifying Synchronizing Server Time Options](#)” on page 73.

## Installing the Server into an Existing eDirectory Tree

- 1 On the eDirectory Configuration - New or Existing Tree page, select *Existing Tree*.
- 2 In the *eDirectory Tree Name* field, specify a name for the eDirectory tree you want to join.



On OES servers, services that provide HTTPS connectivity are configured to use either of the following:

- ♦ An eDirectory certificate issued by the Novell International Cryptographic Infrastructure (NICI)
- ♦ The YaST self-signed common server certificate created in [Step 2 on page 66](#).

Self-signed certificates provide minimal security and limited trust, we recommend that you use the eDirectory certificates instead.

By default, the *Use eDirectory Certificates for HTTPS Services* check box is selected. This means that the existing YaST server certificate and key files will be replaced with eDirectory server certificate and key files.

The default YaST server certificate and key files are:

- ♦ Key file: `/etc/ssl/servercerts/serverkey.pem`
- ♦ Certificate file: `/etc/ssl/servercerts/servercert.pem`

The eDirectory server certificate and key files are:

- ♦ Key file: `/etc/ssl/servercerts/eDirkey.pem`
- ♦ Certificate file: `/etc/ssl/servercerts/eDircert.pem`

For more information on certificate management, see “[Certificate Management](#)” in the [OES 11 SP1: Planning and Implementation Guide](#).

- 3 On the eDirectory Configuration - Existing Tree Information page, specify the required information:



**SUSE Linux Enterprise**  
Preparation

- ✓ Welcome
- ✓ System Analysis
- ✓ Add-On Products
- ✓ Time Zone

**Installation**

- ✓ Server Scenario
- ✓ Installation Summary
- ✓ Perform Installation

**Configuration**

- ✓ root Password
- ✓ Check Installation
- ✓ Hostname
- ✓ Network
- ✓ Customer Center
- ✓ Online Update
- ✓ Service
- **OES Configuration**
  - Users
  - Clean Up
  - Release Notes
  - Hardware Configuration

## eDirectory Configuration - Existing Tree Information

IP Address of an existing eDirectory server with a replica

Enter NCP Port on the existing server

Enter LDAP Port on the existing server

Enter Secure LDAP Port on the existing server

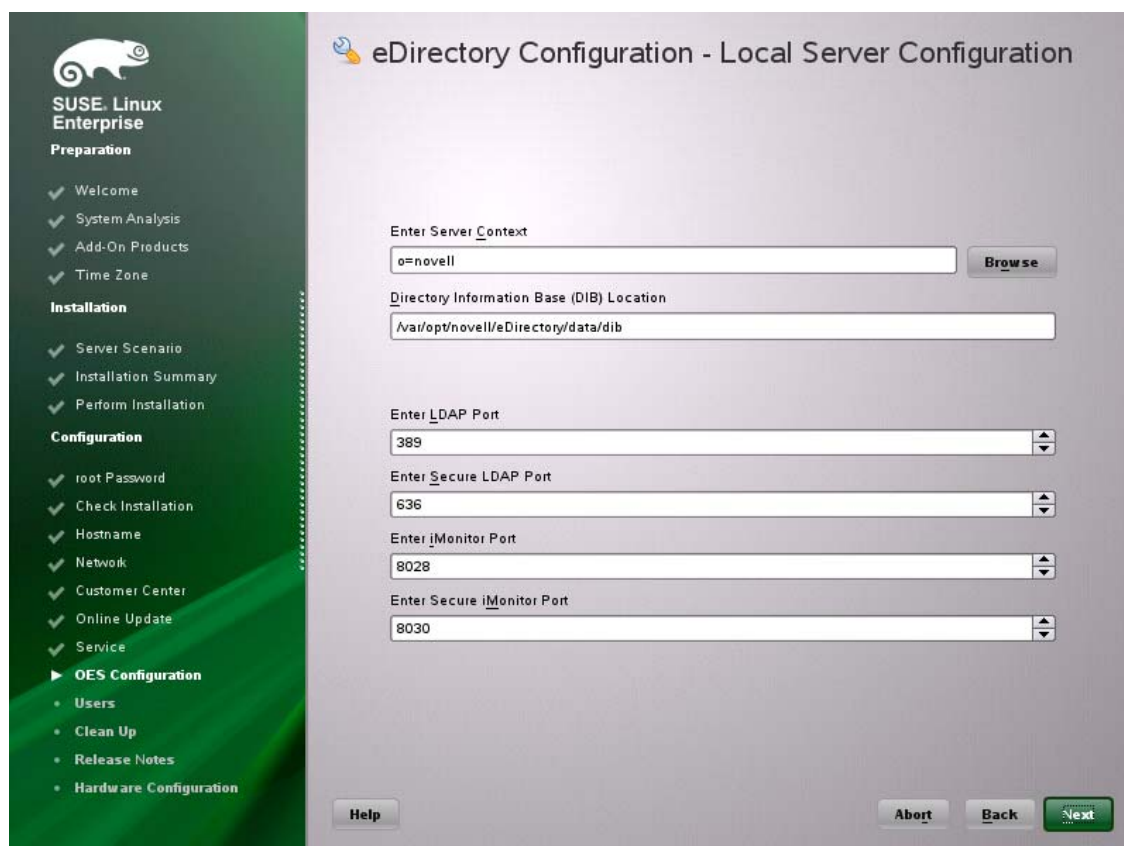
FDN of the tree administrator (e.g. cn=admin,o=novell)

Admin Password

[Help](#) [Abort](#) [Back](#) [Next](#)

- ♦ The IP address of an existing eDirectory server with a replica
  - ♦ The NCP port on the existing server
  - ♦ The LDAP and secure LDAP port on the existing server.
  - ♦ The fully distinguished name and context for the user Admin on the existing server
  - ♦ The password for user Admin on the existing server.
- 4 Click *Next*.
  - 5 On the eDirectory Configuration - Local Server Configuration page, specify the following information:





- ◆ The context for the server object in the eDirectory tree.
- ◆ A location for the eDirectory database.  
The default path is `/var/opt/novell/eDirectory/data/dib`, but you can use this option to change the location if you expect to have a large number of objects in your tree and if the current file system does not have sufficient space.
- ◆ The ports to use for servicing LDAP requests.  
The default ports are 389 (non-secure) and 636 (secure).

---

**IMPORTANT:** The scripts that manage the common proxy user introduced in OES 11 SP1 require port 636 for secure LDAP communications.

---

- ◆ The ports to use for providing access to the iMonitor application.  
The default ports are 8028 (non-secure) and 8030 (secure).

6 Click *Next* and continue with [“Specifying Synchronizing Server Time Options”](#) on page 73.

## Specifying Synchronizing Server Time Options

eDirectory requires that all OES servers are time-synchronized.

- 1 On the eDirectory Configuration - NTP page, click *Add*.
- 2 In the *Time Server* text box, specify the IP address or DNS hostname of an NTP server and then click *Add*.

For the first server in a tree, we recommend specifying a reliable external time source.

When you install multiple servers into the same eDirectory tree, make sure that all servers point to the same time source and not to the server holding the master replica.

For servers joining a tree, specify the same external NTP time source that the tree is using, or specify the IP address of a configured time source in the tree. A time source in the tree should be running time services for 15 minutes or more before connecting to it, or the time synchronization request for the installation fails.

- 3 If you want to use the server's hardware clock, select *Use Local Clock*.

For servers joining a tree, the installation does not let you proceed if you select this option. You must specify the same external NTP time source that the tree is using, or specify the IP address of a configured time source in the tree that has been running time services for 15 minutes or more.

- 4 Continue with [“Specifying SLP Configuration Options” on page 74](#).

For more information on time synchronization, see [Implementing Time Synchronization](#) in the *OES 11 SP1: Planning and Implementation Guide*.

## Specifying SLP Configuration Options

- 1 On the eDirectory Configuration - SLP page, specify the SLP options as desired.

You have the following options for configuring SLP:

- ♦ **Use Multicast to Access SLP:** This option allows the server to request SLP information by using multicast packets. Use this in environments that have not established SLP DAs (Directory Agents).

---

**IMPORTANT:** If you select this option, you must disable the firewall for SLP to work correctly. Multicast creates a significant amount of network traffic and can reduce network throughput.

---

- ♦ **Configure SLP to use an existing Directory Agent:** This option configures SLP to use an existing Directory Agent (DA) in your network. Use this in environments that have established SLP DAs. When you select this option, you configure the servers to use by adding or removing them from the SLP Directory Agent list.
- ♦ **Configure as Directory Agent:** This option configures this server as a Directory Agent (DA). This is useful if you plan to have more than three servers in the tree and want to set up SLP during the installation.
  - ♦ **DASyncReg:** This option causes SLP, when it starts, to query the Directory Agents listed under Configured SLP Directory Agents for their current lists of registered services. It also causes the DA to share service registrations that it receives with the other DAs in the SLP Directory Agent list.
  - ♦ **Backup SLP Registrations:** This option causes SLP to back up the list of services that are registered with this Directory Agent on the local disk.
  - ♦ **Backup Interval in Seconds:** This specifies how often the list of registered services is backed up.
- ♦ **Service Location Protocols and Scope:** This option configures the scopes that a user agent (UA) or service agent (SA) is allowed when making requests or when registering services, or specifies the scopes a directory agent (DA) must support. The default value is DEFAULT. Use commas to separate each scope. For example, `net.slp.useScopes = myScope1,myScope2,myScope3`.

- ♦ **Configured SLP Directory Agents:** This option lets you manage the list of hostname or IP addresses of one or more external servers on which an SLP Directory Agent is running.
- 2 Click *Next* and confirm your selection if necessary, then continue with [Selecting the Novell Modular Authentication Services \(NMAS\) Login Method](#).

## Selecting the Novell Modular Authentication Services (NMAS) Login Method

- 1 On the *Novell Modular Authentication Services* page, select all the login methods you want to install.

---

**IMPORTANT:** The NMAS client software must be installed on each client workstation where you want to use the NMAS login methods. The NMAS client software is included with the Novell Client software.

---

The following methods are available:

- ♦ **CertMutual:** The Certificate Mutual login method implements the Simple Authentication and Security Layer (SASL) EXTERNAL mechanism, which uses SSL certificates to provide client authentication to eDirectory through LDAP.
- ♦ **Challenge Response:** The Challenge-Response login method works with the Identity Manager password self-service process. This method allows either an administrator or a user to define a password challenge question and a response, which are saved in the password policy. Then, when users forget their passwords, they can reset their own passwords by providing the correct response to the challenge question.
- ♦ **DIGEST-MD5:** The Digest MD5 login method implements the Simple Authentication and Security Layer (SASL) DIGEST-MD5 mechanism as a means of authenticating the user to eDirectory through LDAP.
- ♦ **NDS:** The NDS login method provides secure password challenge-response user authentication to eDirectory. This method is installed by default and supports the traditional NDS password when the NMAS client is in use. Reinstallation is necessary only if the NDS login method object has been removed from the directory.
- ♦ **Simple Password:** The Simple Password NMAS login method provides password authentication to eDirectory. The Simple Password is a more flexible but less secure alternative to the NDS password. Simple Passwords are stored in a secret store on the user object.
- ♦ **SASL GSSAPI:** The SASL GSSAPI login method implements the Generic Security Services Application Program Interface (GSSAPI) authentication. It uses the Simple Authentication and Security Layer (SASL), which enables users to authenticate to eDirectory through LDAP by using a Kerberos ticket.

For more information about installing and configuring eDirectory, see “[Installing or Upgrading Novell eDirectory on Linux](#) in *Novell eDirectory 8.8 Installation Guide*.

For more information on these login methods, see the online help and “[Managing Login and Post-Login Methods and Sequences](#)” in the *Novell Modular Authentication Services 3.3.4 Administration Guide*.

- 2 Click *Next*, then continue with “[Specifying OES Common Proxy User Information](#)” on page 76.

## Specifying OES Common Proxy User Information

For an OES service to run successfully, you need to use a separate proxy account to configure and manage each service. However, using multiple proxy user accounts means more overhead for the administrator. To avoid this overhead, the common proxy user has been introduced. Each node in a tree can have a common proxy user for all of its services. This enables administrators to configure and manage multiple services with just one proxy user.

---

**NOTE:** Two nodes in a tree cannot have the same common proxy user.

---

For information about this option, see “[Common Proxy User](#)” in the *OES 11 SP1: Planning and Implementation Guide*.

- 1 On the OES Common Proxy User Information page, specify the configuration settings for this user and click *Next*.

### eDirectory Configuration - OES Common Proxy User Information

☒ Use Common Proxy User as default for OES Products

OES Common Proxy User Name (e.g. cn=OESCommonProxy\_hostname)

cn=OESCommonProxy\_csdcc124

OES Common Proxy User Context (e.g. o=novell)

ou=acap,o=novell

OES Common Proxy User Password

\*\*\*\*\*

Verify OES Common Proxy User Password

\*\*\*\*\*

☒ Assign Common Proxy Password Policy to Proxy User

- ♦ **Use Common Proxy User as Default for OES Products:** Selecting this option configures the common proxy user for the following services: CIFS, DNS, DHCP, iFolder, NetStorage, and NCS. Optionally, you can specify that LUM uses it.
- ♦ **OES Common Proxy User Name:** For a host, common proxy user's name is OESCommonProxy\_hostname. You cannot specify any other name than what is given by the system. This restriction prevents possible use of the same common proxy user name across two or more nodes in a tree. For more information, see “[Can I Change the Common Proxy User Name and Context?](#)” in the *OES 11 SP1: Planning and Implementation Guide*.
- ♦ **OES Common Proxy User Context:** Provide the FDN name of the container where common proxy has to be created. By default, this field gets populated with NCP server context. For example, ou=acap, o=novell. Where ou is the organization unit, acap is the

organization unit name, o is the organization, and novell is the new organization name. In case of an existing tree, click *Browse* and select the container where the Common Proxy User has to be created.

- ♦ **OES Common Proxy User Password:** You can accept the default system-generated password or specify a new password for the common proxy user.

---

**NOTE:** If you choose to provide your own password, it should conform to the policy that is in effect for common proxy user. If the password contains single (') or double (") quotes, OES Configuration will fail. They have to be escaped by prefixing \. For example to add a single quote, escape it as nove\'l. The system generated password will always be in conformance with the policy rules.

---

- ♦ **Verify OES Common Proxy User Password:** If you specified a different password, type the same password in this field. Otherwise, the system-generated is automatically included.
- ♦ **Assign Common Proxy Password Policy to Proxy User:** The initial common proxy password policy is a simple password policy created with default rules. If desired, you can modify this policy after the installation to enforce stricter rules regarding password length, characters supported, expiration intervals, etc.

---

**IMPORTANT:** It is not recommended to deselect the *Assign Common Proxy Password Policy to Proxy User* option. If deselected, the common proxy user inherits the password policies of the container, and this may lead to service failures.

---

- 2 Continue with [“Configuring OES Services” on page 77](#).

## 3.8.10 Configuring OES Services

After you complete the LDAP configuration or the eDirectory configuration, the Novell Open Enterprise Server Configuration summary page is displayed, showing all the OES components you installed and their configuration settings.

- 1 Review the setting for each component and click the component heading to change any settings. For help with specifying the configuration information for OES services, see the information in [“Configuration Guidelines for OES Services” on page 78](#).

- 2 When you are done with the settings for each component, click *Next*.

- 3 When you confirm the OES component configurations, you might receive the following error:

The proposal contains an error that must be resolved before continuing.

If this error is displayed, check the summary list of configured products for any messages immediately below each product heading. These messages indicate products or services that need to be configured. If you are running the YaST graphical interface, the messages are red text. If you are using the YaST text-based interface, they are not red.

For example, if you selected Linux User Management in connection with other OES products or services, you might see a message similar to the following:

Linux User Management needs to be configured before you can continue or disable the configuration.

If you see a message like this, do the following:

- 3a On the summary page, click the heading for the component.
- 3b Supply the missing information in each configuration page.

When you specify the configuration information for OES services, see the information in [“Configuration Guidelines for OES Services” on page 78](#); or, if you are reading online, click a link below:

- ♦ [AFP](#)
- ♦ [Archive and Version Services](#)
- ♦ [Backup/Storage Management Services \(SMS\)](#)
- ♦ [CIFS](#)
- ♦ [Clustering \(NCS\)](#)
- ♦ [DHCP](#)
- ♦ [DNS](#)
- ♦ [Domain Services for Windows \(DSfW\)](#)
- ♦ [eDirectory](#)
- ♦ [FTP](#)
- ♦ [iFolder](#)
- ♦ [iManager](#)
- ♦ [iPrint](#)
- ♦ [Linux User Management \(LUM\)](#)
- ♦ [NCP Server/Dynamic Storage Technology](#)
- ♦ [NetStorage](#)
- ♦ [Pre-Migration Server](#)
- ♦ [QuickFinder](#)
- ♦ [Novell Remote Manager \(NRM\)](#)
- ♦ [Novell Samba](#)
- ♦ [Novell Storage Services](#)

When you have finished the configuration of a component, you are returned to the Novell Open Enterprise Server Configuration summary page.

- 3c** If you want to skip the configuration of a specific component and configure it later, click *Enabled* in the *Configure is enabled* status to change the status to *Reconfigure is disabled*.

If you change the status to *Reconfigure is disabled*, you need to configure the OES components after the installation is complete. See [“Installing or Configuring OES 11 SP1 on an Existing Server” on page 109](#).

- 4** After resolving all product configuration problems, click *Next* to proceed with the configuration of all components.
- 5** When the configuration is complete, continue with [Section 3.9, “Finishing the Installation,” on page 106](#).

### 3.8.11 Configuration Guidelines for OES Services

- ♦ [“Service Configuration Caveats” on page 79](#)
- ♦ [“LDAP Configuration for Open Enterprise Services” on page 80](#)
- ♦ [“Novell AFP Services” on page 81](#)
- ♦ [“Novell Archive and Version Services” on page 81](#)
- ♦ [“Novell Backup/Storage Management Services \(SMS\)” on page 82](#)

- ♦ “Novell CIFS for Linux” on page 82
- ♦ “Novell Cluster Services” on page 83
- ♦ “Novell DHCP Services” on page 85
- ♦ “Novell DNS Services” on page 88
- ♦ “Novell Domain Services for Windows” on page 89
- ♦ “Novell eDirectory Services” on page 89
- ♦ “Novell FTP Services” on page 94
- ♦ “Novell iFolder” on page 94
- ♦ “Novell iManager” on page 99
- ♦ “Novell iPrint” on page 100
- ♦ “Novell Linux User Management” on page 100
- ♦ “Novell NCP Server / Dynamic Storage Technology” on page 102
- ♦ “Novell NetStorage” on page 102
- ♦ “Novell Pre-Migration Server” on page 103
- ♦ “Novell QuickFinder” on page 103
- ♦ “Novell Remote Manager” on page 104
- ♦ “Novell Samba” on page 104
- ♦ “Novell Storage Services (NSS)” on page 105

## Service Configuration Caveats

Keep the following items in mind as you configure the OES 11 SP1 :

**Table 3-3** *Caveats for Configuring OES Services*

Issue	Guideline
Software Selections When Using Text-Based YaST	<p>Some older machines, such as a Dell 1300, use the text mode install by default when the video card does not meet SLES 11 SP2 specifications. When you go to the <i>Software Selection</i>, and then to the details of the OES software selections, YaST doesn't bring up the OES selections like it does when you use the graphical YaST (YaST2).</p> <p>To view the Software Selection and System Task screen, select <i>Filter &gt; Pattern</i> (or press Alt+F &gt; Alt+I).</p>
Specifying a State identifier for a Locality Class object	<p>If you to specify a state identifier, such as California, Utah, or Karnataka, as a Locality Class object in your eDirectory tree hierarchy, you must make sure to use the correct abbreviation in your LDAP (comma-delimited) or NDAP (period-delimited) syntax.</p> <p>When using LDAP syntax, use “st” to specify a state. For example:</p> <pre>ou=example_organization,o=example_company,st=utah,c=us</pre> <p>When using NDAP syntax, use “s” to specify a state. For example:</p> <pre>ou=example_organization.o=example_company.s=utah.c=us</pre>

Issue	Guideline
Specifying Typeful Admin Names	<p>When you install OES, you must specify a fully distinguished admin name by using the typeful, LDAP syntax that includes object type abbreviations (cn=, ou=, o=, etc.). For example, you might specify the following:</p> <pre>cn=admin,ou=example_organization,o=example_company</pre>
Using Dot-Delimited or Comma-Delimited Input for All Products	<p>For all parameters requiring full contexts, you can separate the names by using comma-delimited syntax; you must be consistent in your usage within the field.</p> <p>The OES installation routine displays all input in the comma-delimited (LDAP) format. However, it converts the name separators to dots when this is required by individual product components.</p> <p><b>IMPORTANT:</b> After the OES components are installed, be sure to follow the conventions specified in the documentation for each product. Some contexts must be specified using periods (.) and others using commas (,). However, eDirectory supports names like cn=juan\garcia.ou=users.o=novell. The period (.) inside a name component must be escaped.</p> <p>When using NDAP format (dot), you must escape all embedded dots. For example:cn=admin.o=novell\.provo</p> <p>When using LDAP format (commas), you must escape all embedded commas. For example:cn=admin,o=novell\,provo</p> <p>The installation disallows a backslash and period (\.) in the CN portion of the admin name.</p> <p>For example, these names are supported:</p> <pre>cn=admin.o=novell cn=admin.o=novell\.provo cn=admin.ou=deployment\.linux.o=novell\.provo</pre> <p>These names are not supported:</p> <pre>cn=admin\.first.o=novell cn=admin\.root.o=novell</pre> <p>Before LUM-enabling users whose cn contains a period (.), you must remove the backslash (\) from the unique_id field of the User object container.</p> <p>For example, cn=juan.garcia has a unique_id attribute = juan\garcia. Before such a user can be LUM-enabled, the backslash (\) must be removed from the unique_id attribute.</p>

## LDAP Configuration for Open Enterprise Services

**Table 3-4** LDAP Configuration for Open Enterprise Services Values

Page and Parameters
<b>Configured LDAP Servers</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ <b>eDirectory Tree Name:</b> The eDirectory tree name that you specified when configuring eDirectory. The tree you are installing this server into.</li> <li>♦ <b>Admin Name and Context:</b> The eDirectory Admin name you specified when configuring eDirectory.</li> </ul>



---

## Page and Parameters

---

- ♦ **Admin Password:** The password of the eDirectory Admin user.
- 

- ♦ **Configured LDAP Servers:** You can specify a list of servers that can be used to configure other OES services on this server.

Each added server must have either the master or a read/write replica of the eDirectory tree. The first server added to the list becomes the default server for the installed and configured OES services to use.

For each server you must specify an IP Address, LDAP Port, Secure LDAP Port, and Server Type.

For information about specifying multiple LDAP servers for Linux User Management (LUM), see “[Configuring a Failover Mechanism](#)” in the *OES 11 SP1: Novell Linux User Management Administration Guide*.

**Default:** The eDirectory server you specified when configuring eDirectory.

---

## Novell AFP Services

**Table 3-5** *Novell Apple Filing Protocol Parameters and Values*

---

### Page and Parameters

---

#### AFP Configuration - Mac Client Access to NSS Volumes

---

- ♦ **Directory Server Address:** The IP address of the eDirectory server.
  - ♦ **Proxy user name with context:** Specify the FQDN of the eDirectory containers that contain AFP users, for example ou=afp\_users.o=novell. In case of an existing tree, you can select the context using *Browse*.
- 

For additional configuration instructions, see “[Installing and Setting Up AFP](#)” in the *OES11 SP1: Novell AFP Administration Guide*.

## Novell Archive and Version Services

**Table 3-6** *Novell Archive and Version Services Parameters and Values*

---

### Page and Parameters

---

#### Archive and Version Services Configuration

---

- ♦ **Database Port Number:** Specify a port number to use for the archive database communications.

**Default:** 5432

---

- ♦ **Database Username:** Specify a username for the administrator of the archive database (the PostgreSQL database for the archived data).

**IMPORTANT:** The Postgres user must be an unprivileged user, not the root user.

**Default:** arkuser

---

- ♦ **Database Password:** Specify and validate a password for the database user.

Enter the password for the eDirectory Admin user.

---

For additional configuration instructions, see “[Setting Up Archive and Version Services](#)” in the *OES 11 SP1: Novell Archive and Version Services 2.1 Administration Guide*.

# Novell Backup/Storage Management Services (SMS)

**Table 3-7** *Novell Backup/Storage Management Services Parameters and Values*

Page and Parameters
<b>SMS Configuration</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>◆ <b>Directory Server Address:</b> If you do not want to use the default shown, select a different LDAP server in the list.  If you are installing into an existing tree, ensure that the server you select has a master replica or read/write replica of eDirectory. If you need to add another LDAP server to the list, add it by using the LDAP Configuration for Open Enterprise Services dialog box.  <b>Default:</b> The first server selected in the <i>LDAP Configuration</i> list of servers.</li></ul>

For additional configuration instructions, see “[Installing and Configuring SMS](#)” in the *Installing and Configuring SMS*.

# Novell CIFS for Linux

**Table 3-8** *Novell CIFS Parameters and Values*

Page and Parameters
<b>Novell CIFS Service Configuration</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>◆ <b>eDirectory server address or host name:</b> Leave the default or select from the drop-down list to change to a different server.</li><li>◆ <b>LDAP port for CIFS Server:</b> Displays the port value.</li><li>◆ <b>Local NCP Server context:</b> Displays the NCP Server context.</li></ul>

---

## Page and Parameters

---

### ♦ CIFS Proxy User

- ♦ **Use existing user as CIFS Proxy User:** Select this option to use an existing proxy user for the CIFS service.

If you specified the server's common proxy user, this option is selected.

- ♦ **Create a new CIFS Proxy User:** Select this option to create a new proxy user for the CIFS service.

- ♦ **CIFS Proxy User Name:** Specify the FQDN (fully qualified distinguished name) of the CIFS proxy user.

For example: cn=user, o=novell

**NOTE:** This user is granted rights to read the passwords of any users, including non-CIFS users, that are governed by any of the password policies you select in the Novell CIFS Service Configuration page.

- ♦ **CIFS Proxy User Password:** Specify a password for the CIFS proxy user to use when authenticating to the CIFS server, and verify the password if you are specifying an existing proxy user.

For more information on proxy user and password management, see “[Planning Your Proxy Users](#)” in the [OES 11 SP1: Planning and Implementation Guide](#).

- 
- ♦ **Credential Storage Location:** Accept CASA or specify the *Local File* option.

The CIFS proxy user password is encrypted and encoded in the credential storage location.

**Default:** CASA

---

## Novell CIFS Service Configuration (2)

---

- ♦ **eDirectory Contexts:** Provide a list of contexts that are searched when the CIFS User enters a username. The server searches each context in the list until it finds the correct user object.
- 

For additional configuration instructions, see “[Installing and Setting Up CIFS](#)” in the [OES 11 SP1: Novell CIFS for Linux Administration Guide](#) and the [OES11 SP1: Novell AFP Administration Guide](#)

## Novell Cluster Services

**Table 3-9** *Novell Cluster Services Parameters and Values*

---

## Page and Parameters

Before you configure a node for a Novell Cluster Services cluster, ensure that you have satisfied the prerequisites and have the necessary Administration rights described in “[Planning for Novell Cluster Services](#)” in the [OES 11 SP1: Novell Cluster Services 2.1 for Linux Administration Guide](#).

---

## Novell Cluster Services (NCS) Configuration

---

- ♦ **New or Existing Cluster:** Specify whether the server is part of a new cluster or is joining an existing cluster.

**Default:** Existing Cluster

---

---

## Page and Parameters

Before you configure a node for a Novell Cluster Services cluster, ensure that you have satisfied the prerequisites and have the necessary Administration rights described in [“Planning for Novell Cluster Services”](#) in the *OES 11 SP1: Novell Cluster Services 2.1 for Linux Administration Guide*.

---

- ◆ **Directory Server Address:** The IP addresses shown are the LDAP servers that are available for this service to use. The selected IP address is the default LDAP server for this service.

**Default:** The local LDAP server.

The LDAP servers that you select must have a master replica or a Read/Write replica of eDirectory. You can add, remove, or change the order of available LDAP servers for the node after the setup is complete by using the `/opt/novell/ncs/install/ncs_install.py` script. For information, see [“Changing the Administrator Credentials or LDAP Server IP Addresses for a Cluster”](#) in the *OES 11 SP1: Novell Cluster Services 2.1 for Linux Administration Guide*.

---

- ◆ **Cluster FDN:** Browse to select an existing eDirectory context where the Cluster objects will be created. The fully distinguished name (FDN) of the cluster is automatically added to the field with a suggested cluster name. You can specify a different cluster name.

You can also specify the typeful FDN for the cluster. Use the comma format illustrated in the example. Do not use dots. You must specify an existing context. Specifying a new context does not create a new context.

Cluster names must be unique. You cannot create two clusters with the same name in the same eDirectory tree. Cluster names are case sensitive on Linux.

---

- ◆ **Cluster IP Address:** If you are creating a new cluster, specify a unique IP address for the cluster.

The cluster IP address is separate from the server IP address and is required to be on the same IP subnet as the other servers in the cluster.

---

- ◆ **Storage Device With Shared Media:** If you are creating a new cluster, select the device where the Split Brain Detector (SBD) partition will be created.

An SBD is required if you plan to use shared disks in the cluster. The drop-down menu shows only devices that have been initialized and shared. If a device is not available, accept the default (none). You must create the SBD manually before adding a second server to the cluster.

**Default:** none

---

- ◆ **Optional Device for Mirrored Partitions:** If you want to mirror the SBD partition for greater fault tolerance, select the device where you want the mirror to be. You can also mirror SBD partitions after installing Novell Cluster Services.

**Default:** none

---

- ◆ **Desired Partition Size of the Shared Media:** Specify the size in MB (megabytes) of the SBD partition, or select Use Maximum Size to use the entire shared device. We recommend at least 20 MB for the SBD partition. If you specified a device to mirror the partition, the setting is also applied to the mirror.

**Default:** 8

---

## Novell Cluster Services (NCS) Proxy User Configuration (2)

---

---

## Page and Parameters

Before you configure a node for a Novell Cluster Services cluster, ensure that you have satisfied the prerequisites and have the necessary Administration rights described in “[Planning for Novell Cluster Services](#)” in the *OES 11 SP1: Novell Cluster Services 2.1 for Linux Administration Guide*.

---

Specify one of the following users as the NCS Proxy user.

- ♦ **OES Common Proxy User:** If the OES common proxy User is enabled in eDirectory, the *Use OES Common Proxy User* check box is automatically selected and the *NCS Proxy User Name* and *Specify NCS Proxy User Password* fields are populated with the credentials of the OES common proxy User.
  - ♦ **LDAP Admin User:** If the OES common proxy User is disabled in eDirectory, the *Use OES Common Proxy User* check box is automatically deselected and the *NCS Proxy User Name* and *Specify NCS Proxy User Password* fields are populated with the credentials of the LDAP Admin user. The fields are also automatically populated with the LDAP Admin credentials if you deselect the *Use OES Common Proxy User* check box.
  - ♦ **Another Administrator User:** Deselect the *Use OES Common Proxy User* check box, then specify the credentials of an administrator user.
- 

## Novell Cluster Services (NCS) Configuration (3)

---

- ♦ **Name of This Node:** This is the hostname of the server.
  - ♦ **IP Address of this Node:** This field contains the IP address of this node. If this server has multiple IP addresses, you can change the default address to another value if desired.
  - ♦ **Start Cluster Services Now:** Select this box if you want clustering to start now. If you want clustering to start after rebooting, or if you want to manually start it later, deselect this box.
- 

This option applies only to installing Novell Cluster Services after the OES installation because it starts automatically when the server initializes during the installation.

If you choose to not start Novell Cluster Services software, you need to either manually start it after the installation, or reboot the cluster server to automatically start it.

You can manually start Novell Cluster Services by going to the `/etc/init.d` directory and entering `./novell-ncs start` at the server console of the cluster server.

**Default:** Selected

---

For additional instructions, see the *OES 11 SP1: Novell Cluster Services 2.1 for Linux Administration Guide*.

## Novell DHCP Services

**Table 3-10** *Novell DHCP Services Parameters and Values*

---

## Page and Parameters

---

### Novell DHCP Services Configuration

---

- ♦ **DHCP Server Context:** Specify a context for the DHCP Server object.

**Default:** o=example

---

---

## Page and Parameters

---

- ♦ **DHCP Server Object Name:** Specify the name of the Server object that these DHCP services will be running on.

This is the DHCP server object that contains a list of DHCP Services (configuration) served by the DHCP Server.

**Default:** DHCP\_example\_server

---

- ♦ **Common DHCP Configuration Object Contexts**

- ♦ **Locator Object:** Specify the context for the DHCP Locator object.

The DHCP Locator object has references to dhcpServer and dhcpService objects.

- ♦ **Group Context:** Specify the context for the DHCP Group object.

This object is used to grant the necessary rights to the eDirectory user used by the DHCP server to access the DHCP objects.

**Default:** o=example

---

- ♦ **Log File Location:** Specify the path and filename for the DHCP server to dump the configurations it reads from eDirectory. Specify the path manually or click *Browse* to locate the log.

**Default:** Usually /var/log/dhcp-ldap-startup.log

---

- ♦ **LDAP Method**

- ♦ **Static:** Select this option if you do not want the DHCP server to query the LDAP server for host details.

- ♦ **Dynamic:** Select this option if you want the DHCP server to query for host details from the LDAP server for every request.

Selecting the dynamic LDAP method ensures that the responses you receive to queries are accurate, but the server takes a longer time to respond.

**Default:** Static

---

- ♦ **Referrals**

A referral is a message that the LDAP server sends to the LDAP client informing it that the server cannot provide complete results and that more data might be on another LDAP server.

- ♦ **Chase Referral:** Select this option if you want the DHCP server to follow referrals.

- ♦ **Do Not Chase Referral:** Select this option to ignore LDAP referrals.

**Default:** Chase referral

---

## Novell DHCP LDAP and Secure Channel Configuration

---

- ♦ **eDirectory Server Address or Host Name:** The IP address shown is the default LDAP server for this service. If you do not want to use the default, select a different LDAP server in the list.

If you are installing into an existing tree, ensure that the server you select has a master replica or read/write replica of eDirectory. If you need to add another LDAP server to the list, add it by using the LDAP Configuration for Open Enterprise Services dialog box.

**Default:** The first server is selected in the *LDAP Configuration* list of servers.

---

---

## Page and Parameters

---

- ♦ **Use Secure Channel for Configuration:** This option is selected by default. When you are configuring DHCP services, it ensures that all configuration is transferred over a secure channel.

Deselecting the option lets a user with fewer privileges configure LDAP services and allows configuration information to be transferred over a non-secure channel.

**Default:** Selected

- 
- ♦ **LDAP User Name with Context:** Specify a distinguished name and context for an LDAP user. For example: cn=joe, o=novell. This user should be an eDirectory user that can access the DHCP server.

During eDirectory configuration, if you have selected the *Use Common Proxy User as default for OES Products* check box, then the proxy user and password fields are populated with common proxy user name and password.

**Default:** cn=OESCommonProxy\_host name, o=novell

- 
- ♦ **LDAP User Password:** Type a password for the LDAP user.
- 

- ♦ **LDAP Port for DHCP Server:** Select a port for the LDAP operations to use.

**IMPORTANT:** The scripts that manage the common proxy user introduced in OES 11 SP1 require port 636 for secure LDAP communications.

**Default:** 636

- 
- ♦ **Use Secure channel for DHCP Server:** Selecting this option ensures that the data transferred between the DHCP server and the LDAP server is secure and private.

If you deselect this option, the data transferred is in clear text format.

**Default:** Selected

- 
- ♦ **Certificates (optional)**

- ♦ **Request Certificate:** Specifies what checks to perform on a server certificate in a SSL/TLS session. Select one of the following options:
    - ♦ *Never:* The server does not ask the client for a certificate. This is the default
    - ♦ *Allow:* The server requests a client certificate, but if a certificate is not provided or a wrong certificate is provided, the session still proceeds normally.
    - ♦ *Try:* The server requests the certificate. If none is provided, the session proceeds normally. If a certificate is provided and it cannot be verified, the session is immediately terminated
    - ♦ *Hard:* The server requests a certificate. A valid certificate must be provided, or the session is immediately terminated.
  - ♦ **Paths to Certificate Files:** Specify or browse the path for the certificate files.
    - ♦ The LDAP CA file contains CA certificates
    - ♦ The LDAP client certificate contains the client certificate.
    - ♦ The LDAP client key file contains the key file for the client certificate.
- 

## Novell DHCP Services Interface Selection

---

- ♦ **Network Boards for the Novell DHCP Server:** From the available interfaces, select the network interfaces that the Novell DHCP server should listen to.
-

For additional configuration instructions, see “[Installing and Configuring DHCP](#)” in the *OES 11 SP1: Novell DNS/DHCP Services for Linux Administration Guide*.

# Novell DNS Services

**Table 3-11** *Novell DNS Services Parameters and Values*

Page and Parameters
Novell DNS Configuration
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>◆ <b>Directory server address:</b> If you have specified multiple LDAP servers by using the LDAP Configuration for Open Enterprise Services dialog box, you can select a different LDAP server than the first one in the list.  If you are installing into an existing tree, you must ensure that the selected server has a master or read/write replica of eDirectory.  <b>Default:</b> The first LDAP server in the <i>LDAP Server Configuration</i> dialog box.</li><li>◆ <b>Local NCP Server Context:</b> Specify a context for the local NCP Server object. <b>Default:</b> The eDirectory context specified for this OES server.</li><li>◆ <b>Use Secure LDAP Port:</b> Selecting this option ensures that the data transferred by this service is secure and private.  If you deselect this option, the transferred data is in clear text format. <b>Default:</b> Selected</li><li>◆ <b>Proxy User for DNS Management:</b> Specify the FDN of the DNS proxy user.  An existing user must have eDirectory read, write, and browse rights under the specified context. If the user doesn't exist, it is created in the context specified. <b>Default:</b> If you specified a common proxy user, it is used by default. If you didn't specify a common proxy user, the eDirectory Admin name and context that you specified when configuring eDirectory is specified.</li><li>◆ <b>Specify Password for Proxy User:</b> Specify the password for the DNS proxy user.  For more information on proxy user and password management, see “<a href="#">Planning Your Proxy Users</a>” in the <i>OES 11 SP1: Planning and Implementation Guide</i>. <b>Default:</b> The password that you specified for the OES server you are installing.</li><li>◆ <b>Credential Storage Location:</b> Specify where the DNS proxy user's credentials are to be stored. <b>Default:</b> For security reasons, the default and recommended method of credential storage is CASA.</li></ul>



- ♦ **Common DNS Configuration Object and User Contexts:**

- ♦ **Get Context and Proxy User Information from Existing DNS Server:** Select this option if you are configuring DNS in an existing tree where DNS is already configured, and you want to use the existing Locator, Root Server Info, Group and Proxy User contexts.

- ♦ **Existing Novell DNS Server Address:** If you have enabled the previous option, you can type the IP address of an NCP server (must be up and running) that is hosting the existing DNS server.

To automatically retrieve the contexts of the objects that follow, click *Retrieve*.

If you do not want to use the retrieved contexts, you can change them manually.

- ♦ **Novell DNS Services Locator Object Context:** Specify the context for the DNS Locator object.

The Locator object contains global defaults, DHCP options, and a list of all DNS and DHCP servers, subnets, and zones in the tree.

**Default:** The context you specified for the OES server you are installing.

- ♦ **Novell DNS Services Root Server Info Context:** Specify the context for the DNS Services root server.

The RootSrvrInfo Zone is an eDirectory container object that contains resource records for the DNS root servers.

**Default:** The context you specified for the OES server you are installing.

- ♦ **Novell DNS Services Group Object Context:** Specify the context for the DNS Group object.

This object is used to grant DNS servers the necessary rights to other data within the eDirectory tree.

**Default:** The context you specified for the OES server you are installing.

- 
- ♦ **Create DNS Server Object:** Select this check box if you want to create the DNS server object in the eDirectory tree associated with the NCP server.
  - ♦ **Host Name:** Type the unique host name for the DNS server object.
  - ♦ **Domain Name for the DNS Server:** Type the domain name for the server object.
- 

For additional configuration instructions, see “[Installing and Configuring DNS](#)” in the *OES 11 SP1: Novell DNS/DHCP Services for Linux Administration Guide*.

## Novell Domain Services for Windows

There are multiple configuration scenarios, depending on your deployment. For information, see “[Installing Domain Services for Windows](#)” in the *OES 11 SP1: Domain Services for Windows Administration Guide*.

## Novell eDirectory Services

---

**IMPORTANT:** You specified the eDirectory configuration for this server in either “[Specifying LDAP Configuration Settings](#)” on page 67 or “[Specifying eDirectory Configuration Settings](#)” on page 69, and the settings you specified were extended to your OES service configurations by the OES install.

If you change the eDirectory configuration at this point in the install, your modifications might or might not extend to the other OES services. For example, if you change the server context from o=example to ou=servers.o=example, the other service configurations might or might not reflect the change.

Be sure to carefully check all of the service configuration summaries on the Novell Open Enterprise Server Configuration summary screen. If any of the services don't show the eDirectory change you made, click the service link and modify the configuration manually. Otherwise your installation will fail.

---

**Table 3-12** *Novell eDirectory Parameters and Values*

---

**Page and Parameters**

---

**eDirectory Configuration - New or Existing Tree**

---

♦ **New or Existing Tree**

♦ **New Tree:** Creates a new tree.

Use this option if this is the first server to go into the tree or if this server requires a separate tree. Keep in mind that this server will have the master replica for the new tree, and that users must log into this new tree to access its resources.

♦ **Existing Tree:** Incorporates this server into an existing eDirectory tree.

This server might not have a replica copied to it, depending on the tree configuration. For details, see the “[Guidelines for Replicating Your Tree \(http://www.novell.com/documentation/edir88/edir88/data/a2iie1.html#a2iie1\)](http://www.novell.com/documentation/edir88/edir88/data/a2iie1.html#a2iie1)” in the *Novell eDirectory 8.8 Administration Guide* (<http://www.novell.com/documentation/edir88/edir88/data/a2iii88.html#a2iii88>).

**Default:** New Tree

---

♦ **eDirectory Tree Name:** Specify a unique name for the eDirectory tree you want to create or the name of the tree you want to install this server into.

♦ **Use eDirectory Certificates for HTTPS Services:** Selecting this option causes eDirectory to automatically back up the currently installed certificate and key files and replace them with files created by the eDirectory Organizational CA (or Tree CA).

Most OES services that provide HTTPS connectivity are configured by default to use the self-signed common server certificate created by YaST. Self-signed certificates provide minimal security and limited trust, so you should consider using eDirectory certificates instead.

For all server installations, this option is enabled by default and is recommended for the increased security it provides.

To prevent third-party CA certificates from being accidentally backed up and overwritten, deselect this option.

For more information on certificate management and this option, see “[Security](#)” in the *OES 11 SP1: Planning and Implementation Guide*.

♦ **Require TLS for Simple Binds with Password:** Select this option to make connections encrypted in the Session layer.

♦ **Install SecretStore:** Select this option to install Novell SecretStore (SS), an eDirectory-based security product.

---

**eDirectory Configuration - New/Existing Tree Information**

---

♦ **IP Address of an Existing eDirectory Server with a Replica:** Specify the IP address of a server with an eDirectory replica.

This option appears only if you are joining an existing tree.

---

---

## Page and Parameters

---

- ♦ **NCP Port on the Existing Server:** Specify the NCP port used by the eDirectory server you specified.

This option appears only if you are joining an existing tree.

**Default:** 524

---

- ♦ **LDAP and Secure LDAP Ports on the Existing Server:** Specify the LDAP ports used by the eDirectory server you specified.

This option appears only if you are joining an existing tree.

**IMPORTANT:** The scripts that manage the common proxy user introduced in OES 11 SP1 require port 636 for secure LDAP communications.

**Default:** 389 (LDAP), 636 (Secure LDAP)

---

- ♦ **FDN Admin Name with Context:** Specify the name of the administrative user for the new tree.

This is the fully distinguished name of a User object that will be created with full administrative rights in the new directory.

**Default:** The eDirectory Admin name and context that you specified when initially configuring eDirectory.

---

- ♦ **Admin Password:** Specify the eDirectory administrator's password.

This is the password of the user specified in the prior field.

---

- ♦ **Verify Admin Password:** Retype the password to verify it.

This option only appears if you are creating a new tree.

---

## eDirectory Configuration - Local Server Configuration

---

- ♦ **Enter Server Context:** Specify the location of the new server object in the eDirectory tree.
- 

- ♦ **Enter Directory Information Base (DIB) Location:** Specify a location for the eDirectory database.

**Default:** The default path is `/var/opt/novell/eDirectory/data/dib`, but you can use this option to change the location if you expect the number of objects in your tree to be large and the current file system does not have sufficient space.

---

- ♦ **Enter LDAP Port:** Specify the LDAP port number this server will use to service LDAP requests.

**Default:** 389

---

- ♦ **Enter Secure LDAP Port:** Specify secure LDAP port number this server will use to service LDAP requests.

**IMPORTANT:** The scripts that manage the common proxy user introduced in OES 11 SP1 require port 636 for secure LDAP communications.

**Default:** 636

---

---

## Page and Parameters

---

- ♦ **Enter iMonitor Port:** Specify the port this server will use to provide access to the iMonitor application.

iMonitor lets you monitor and diagnose all servers in your eDirectory tree from any location on your network where a Web browser is available.

**Default:** 8028

- 
- ♦ **Enter Secure iMonitor Port:** Specify the secure port this server will use to provide access to the iMonitor application.

**Default:** 8030

---

## eDirectory Configuration - NTP and SLP

---

- ♦ **Network Time Protocol (NTP) Server:** Specify the IP address or DNS hostname of an NTP server.
  - ♦ For the first server in a tree, we recommend specifying a reliable external time source.
  - ♦ For servers joining a tree, specify the same external NTP time source that the tree is using, or specify the IP address of a configured time source in the tree. A time source in the tree should be running time services for 15 minutes or more before connecting to it, or the time synchronization request for the installation fails.

If the time source server is NetWare 5.0 or earlier, you must specify an alternate NTP time source, or the time synchronization request fails. For more information, see [“Time Services”](#) in the *OES 11 SP1: Planning and Implementation Guide*.

- ♦ **Use Local Clock:** Alternatively, you can select *Use Local Clock* to designate the server's hardware clock as the time source for your eDirectory tree.

This is not recommended if there is a reliable external time source available.

---

- ♦ **(SLP Options)**

- ♦ **Use Multicast to Access SLP:** Allows the server to request SLP information by using multicast packets. Use this in environments that have not established SLP DAs (Directory Agents).

**IMPORTANT:** If you select this option, you must disable the firewall for SLP to work correctly. Multicast creates a significant amount of network traffic and can reduce network throughput.

- ♦ **Configure as Directory Agent:** Configures this server as a Directory Agent (DA). This is useful if you plan to have more than three servers in the tree and want to set up SLP during the installation.
    - ♦ **DASyncReg:** Causes SLP, when it starts, to query the Directory Agents listed under Configured SLP Directory Agents for their current lists of registered services. It also causes the DA to share service registrations that it receives with the other DAs in the SLP Directory Agent list.
    - ♦ **Backup SLP Registrations:** Causes SLP to back up the list of services that are registered with this Directory Agent on the local disk.
    - ♦ **Backup Interval in Seconds:** Specifies how often the list of registered services is backed up.
  - ♦ **Configure SLP to use an existing Directory Agent:** Configures SLP to use an existing Directory Agent (DA) in your network. Use this in environments that have established SLP DAs. When you select this option, you configure the servers to use by adding or removing them from the SLP Directory Agent list.
-

---

## Page and Parameters

---

- ♦ **Service Location Protocols and Scope:** Configures the scopes that a user agent (UA) or service agent (SA) is allowed when making requests or when registering services, or specifies the scopes a directory agent (DA) must support. The default value is DEFAULT. Use commas to separate each scope. For example, net.slp.useScopes = myScope1,myScope2,myScope3.

This information is required when selecting the *Use Multicast to Access SLP* or *Configure SLP to Use an Existing Directory Agent* option is selected.

**Default:** Default

---

- ♦ **Configured SLP Directory Agents:** Lets you manage the list of hostname or IP addresses of one or more external servers on which a SLP Directory Agent is running.

It is enabled for input only when you configure SLP to use an existing Directory Agent.

---

## Novell Modular Authentication Services

---

**IMPORTANT:** NMAS client software (included with Novell Client software) must be installed on each client workstation where you want to use the NMAS login methods.

- ♦ **CertMutual:** The Certificate Mutual login method implements the Simple Authentication and Security Layer (SASL) EXTERNAL mechanism, which uses SSL certificates to provide client authentication to eDirectory through LDAP.
- ♦ **Challenge Response:** The Challenge-Response login method works with the Identity Manager password self-service process. This method allows either an administrator or a user to define a password challenge question and a response, which are saved in the password policy. Then, when users forget their passwords, they can reset their own passwords by providing the correct response to the challenge question.
- ♦ **DIGEST-MD5:** The Digest MD5 login method implements the Simple Authentication and Security Layer (SASL) DIGEST-MD5 mechanism as a means of authenticating the user to eDirectory through LDAP.
- ♦ **NDS:** The NDS login method provides secure password challenge-response user authentication to eDirectory. This method supports the traditional NDS password when the NMAS client is in use. Reinstallation is necessary only if the NDS login method object has been removed from the directory.
- ♦ **Simple Password:** The Simple Password NMAS login method provides password authentication to eDirectory. The Simple Password is a more flexible but less secure alternative to the NDS password. Simple Passwords are stored in a secret store on the user object.
- ♦ **SASL GSSAPI:** The SASL GSSAPI login method implements the Generic Security Services Application Program Interface (GSSAPI) authentication by using the Simple Authentication and Security Layer (SASL) that enables users to authenticate to eDirectory through LDAP by using a Kerberos ticket.

If you want to install all of the login methods into eDirectory, click *Select All*.

If you want to clear all selections, click *Deselect All*.

For more information on these login methods, see “[Managing Login and Post-Login Methods and Sequences](#)” in the *Novell Modular Authentication Services 3.3.4 Administration Guide*.

**Defaults:** Challenge Response and NDS

---

## OES Common Proxy User Information

---

---

## Page and Parameters

---

- ♦ **Use Common Proxy User as Default for OES Products:** Selecting this option configures the specified common proxy user for the following services: CIFS, DNS, DHCP, iFolder, NetStorage, and NCS. Optionally, you can specify that LUM use it.

- ♦ **OES Common Proxy User Name:** By default, the common proxy user's name is `OESCommonProxy_hostname`, but you can specify any name that fits your naming methodology. By default, the common proxy user is created in the container that you specify for the server object.

You can specify a different container, but it must meet one of the following qualifications:

- ♦ **New Tree Installation:** The container must be included in either the path specified for the eDirectory Admin user or the path for Server object.
- ♦ **Existing Tree Installation:** The container must already exist in eDirectory.

**IMPORTANT:** You cannot create a new container by specifying a non-qualifying path. If you attempt this, the installation program will appear to proceed normally until the eDirectory Configuration (`ndsconfig`) runs. At that point the installation will fail with an `Error creating Common Proxy User: 32` error, and you will need to install the server again.

- ♦ **OES Common Proxy User Password:** You can accept the default system-generated password or specify a new password for the common proxy user.
- ♦ **Verify OES Common Proxy User Password:** If you specified a different password, type the same password in this field. Otherwise, the system-generated password is automatically included.
- ♦ **Assign Common Proxy Password Policy to Proxy User:** The initial common proxy password policy is a simple password policy created with default rules. You can modify this policy after the installation to enforce stricter rules regarding password length, characters supported, expiration intervals, etc.

---

For additional configuration instructions, see [“Installing or Upgrading Novell eDirectory on Linux”](#) in the *Novell eDirectory 8.8 Installation Guide*.

## Novell FTP Services

No additional configuration is required.

## Novell iFolder

When you configure iFolder as part of the OES install and configuration, you can specify only an EXT3 or ReiserFS volume location for the System Store Path, which is where you store iFolder data for all your users. You cannot create NSS volumes during the system install.

If you want to use an NSS volume to store iFolder data, you must reconfigure iFolder after the initial OES installation. To reconfigure, use Novell iManager to create an NSS volume, then go to *YaST > Open Enterprise Server > Install and Configure Open Enterprise Services* and select *iFolder 3.9* to enter new information. All previous configuration information is removed and replaced.

**Table 3-13** *Novell iFolder 3.9 Parameters and Values*

---

## Page and Parameters

---

### Novell iFolder System Configuration Options

---

---

## Page and Parameters

---

### ♦ iFolder Component to Be Configured

- ♦ **iFolder Server:** Lets you configure the settings for the iFolder server that is the central repository for storing user iFolders and synchronizing files for enterprise users.
- ♦ **iFolder Web Admin:** Lets you create and configure settings for the administrator user.

The iFolder Admin user is the primary administrator of the iFolder Enterprise Server. The Web Admin server does not need to be configured on the iFolder Enterprise Server. Devoting a separate server to the Web Admin application improves the performance of the iFolder Enterprise Server by reducing the admin traffic.
- ♦ **iFolder Web Access:** Lets you configure the Web Access server, which is an interface that lets users have remote access to iFolders on the enterprise server.

The Web Access server lets users perform all the operations equivalent to those of the iFolder client through using a standard Web browser.

The Web Access server does not need to be configured in the same iFolder Enterprise Server. Directing the user tasks to a separate server and thereby reducing the HTTP requests helps to improve the performance of the iFolder Enterprise Server.

**Default:** All three items are selected.

---

## Novell iFolder System Configuration

---

- ♦ **Name Used to Identify the iFolder System to Users:** Specify a unique name to identify your iFolder Enterprise Server.

**Default:** iFolder

- 
- ♦ **System Description (optional):** Specify a descriptive label for your iFolder Enterprise Server to identify it to the users.

**Default:** iFolder Enterprise System

- 
- ♦ **Path to Server's Data Files:** Specify the case-sensitive address of the location where the iFolder Enterprise Server stores iFolder application files as well as the user iFolders and files.

**IMPORTANT:** This location cannot be modified after iFolder is installed.

**Default:** /var/simias/data/

- 
- ♦ **Path to the Recovery Agent Certificates (optional):** Specify the path to the recovery agent certificates that are used for recovering the encryption key.

**Default:** /var/simias/data/simias

---

## Novell iFolder System Configuration (2)

---

- ♦ **Name of iFolder Server:** Specify a unique name to identify your iFolder Enterprise Server. For example: Host1.

**Default:** The name of the OES server

- 
- ♦ **iFolder Public URL:** Specify the public URL for users to reach the iFolder Enterprise Server.

**Default:** The OES server's IP address

- 
- ♦ **iFolder Private URL:** Specify the private URL corresponding to the iFolder Enterprise Server to allow communication between the servers within the iFolder domain. The private URL and the public URL can be the same.

**Default:** The OES server's IP address

---

---

## Page and Parameters

---

- ♦ **Select SSL Option for iFolder:** Select the SSL option you want to set up a secure connection between the iFolder server and the iFolder clients.

There are three options for the channel for data transfer: SSL, Non SSL, and Both. However, authentication is always over SSL (not optional).

- ♦ *Both:* (default) This option lets you select a secure or a non-secure channel for communication among the iFolder server, Web Admin server, Web Access server and the clients. By default, these components use the HTTPS (secure) communication channel. However, all components can also be configured to use HTTP.
- ♦ *Non SSL:* Select this option to enable non-secure communication between the iFolder server, Web Admin server, Web Access server and the clients. The iFolder uses the HTTP channel for communication.
- ♦ *SSL:* Select this option to enable a secure connection among the iFolder server, iFolder Web Admin server, iFolder Web Access server, and the iFolder clients. The iFolder uses the HTTPS channel for communication.

**Default:** Both

- 
- ♦ **iFolder Port to Listen On:** Specify the port for the iFolder to listen on.

**Default:** 443

- 
- ♦ **Install into Existing iFolder Domain:** Select this option when you want to attach to an existing iFolder domain.

If this option is not selected, this server becomes the Master iFolder server.

**Default:** Deselected

- 
- ♦ **Private URL of the Master Server:** Specify the private URL of the Master iFolder server that holds the master iFolder data for synchronization to the current iFolder Enterprise Server.

- 
- ♦ **Configure LDAP Groups Plugin:** Select this option to configure the LDAP Groups plug-in.

If this option is left unselected, iFolder does not have LDAP Group support enabled.

---

## Novell iFolder LDAP Configuration

---

- ♦ **Directory server address:** The IP address shown is the default LDAP server for this service. If you do not want to use the default, select a different LDAP server in the list.

If you need to add another eDirectory LDAP server to the list, use the LDAP Configuration for Open Enterprise Services dialog box.

If you are installing into an existing tree, ensure that the server you select has a master replica or read/write replica of eDirectory.

If you are installing into an existing tree, you must enter the password of an admin user in the tree.

**Default:** The first server selected in the *LDAP Configuration* list of servers

---



---

## Page and Parameters

---

- ♦ **Use Alternate LDAP server:** If you need to add another LDAP server to the list, select this option and enter the following information:
    - ♦ **Alternate Directory Server Address:** Specify the host or IP address of the alternate LDAP server that iFolder will use.
    - ♦ **LDAP Port:** Specify the LDAP port to use for this alternate server.
    - ♦ **LDAP Secure Port:** Specify the LDAP secure port to use for this alternate server.
    - ♦ **Admin Name and Context:** Specify the administrator name and context for the alternate LDAP server.
    - ♦ **Admin Password:** Type the specified administrator's password.
- 

## Novell iFolder System Configuration

---

- ♦ **The iFolder Default Administrator:** Specify the username for the default iFolder administrative user. Use the full distinguished name of the iFolder administrative user.

**Default:** The eDirectory Admin user you specified while configuring eDirectory.

---

- ♦ **iFolder Admin Password:** Specify a password for the iFolder administrative user.
- 

- ♦ **Verify iFolder Admin Password:** Type the password for the iFolder administrative user again.
- 

- ♦ **LDAP Proxy User:** Specify the full distinguished name of the LDAP Proxy user.

This user must have the Read right to the LDAP service. This user is used to provision the users between iFolder Enterprise Server and the LDAP server. If it does not already exist, this user is created and granted the Read right to the root of the tree. The LDAP proxy user's domain name (DN) and password are stored by iFolder.

**Default:** If you specified a common proxy user, it is used by default if possible. If you didn't specify the common proxy user, a user object named iFolderProxy is created in the server context you specified.

The common proxy user cannot be used if iFolder is running on a cluster node. If the NCS pattern is selected along with iFolder, this field will be populated with the iFolderProxy by default.

---

- ♦ **LDAP Proxy User Password:** Specify a password for the LDAP Proxy user.

For more information on proxy user and password management, see "[Planning Your Proxy Users](#)" in the *OES 11 SP1: Planning and Implementation Guide*.

**Default:** A system-generated password

---

- ♦ **Verify LDAP Proxy User Password:** Type the password for the LDAP Proxy user again.
- 

- ♦ **LDAP Search Context:** Click *Add*, then specify an LDAP tree context to be searched for users to provision them in iFolder. For example, o=acme, o=acme2, or o=acme3

If no context is specified, only the iFolder administrative user is provisioned for services during the install.

**Default:** The server context you specified while configuring eDirectory.

---

---

## Page and Parameters

---

- ♦ **LDAP Naming Attribute:** Select which LDAP attribute of the User account to apply when authenticating users. This setting cannot be changed after the install.

Each user enters a username in this specified format at login time. Common Name (CN) is the default, and an e-mail address (email) is the other option.

For example, if a user named John Smith has a common name of jsmith and e-mail of john.smith@example.com, this field determines whether the user enters jsmith or john.smith@example.com as the username when logging in to the iFolder Enterprise Server.

**Default:** Common Name (CN)

- 
- ♦ **Require a Secure Connection Between the LDAP server and the iFolder Server:** If the LDAP server co-exists on the same computer as the iFolder Enterprise Server, you can deselect this option, which increases the performance of LDAP authentications.

**Default:** Selected

---

## Novell iFolder Web Access Configuration

---

- ♦ **An Apache Alias That Will Point to the iFolder Web Access Application:** This is a user-friendly pointer for the Apache service.

**Default:** /ifolder

- 
- ♦ **The Host or IP Address of the iFolder Server That Will Be Used by the iFolder Web Access Application:** This Web Access application performs all the user-specific iFolder operations on the host that runs the iFolder Enterprise Server.

**Default:** The IP address of the OES server you are installing

- 
- ♦ **Redirect URL for iChain/Access Gateway (optional):** Specify the redirect URL for iChain/Access Gateway that will be used by the iFolder Web Access application. This URL is used for the proper logout of iChain/Access Gateway sessions along with the iFolder session.

- 
- ♦ **Connect to the iFolder Server Using SSL:** Select the check box to establish a secure connection between the iFolder enterprise server and the iFolder Web Admin application.

**Default:** Selected

- 
- ♦ **iFolder Server Port to Connect on:** Specify the port for the iFolder server to connect to the Web Access application.

**Default:** 443 (SSL communications), 80 (non-SSL communication)

- 
- ♦ **Require a secure connection between the Web browser and the iFolder Web Access application:** Select the check box to establish a secure connection between the Web browser and the iFolder Web Access application.

**Default:** Selected

---

## Novell iFolder Web Admin Configuration

---

- ♦ **An Apache Alias That Will Point to the iFolder Web Admin Application:** This is an admin-friendly pointer for the Apache service.

**Default:** /admin

- 
- ♦ **The Host or IP Address of the iFolder Server That Will Be Used by the iFolder Web Application:** The iFolder Web admin application manages this host.

**Default:** The IP address of the OES server you are installing

---

---

**Page and Parameters**

---

- ♦ **Redirect URL for iChain/Access Gateway (optional):** Specify the redirect URL for iChain/Access Gateway that will be used by the iFolder Web Admin application. This URL is used for the proper logout of iChain/Access Gateway sessions along with the iFolder session.
  - ♦ **Connect to the iFolder Server Using SSL:** Select the check box to establish a secure connection between the iFolder Enterprise Server and the iFolder Web Admin application.
  - ♦ **iFolder Server Port to Connect on:** Specify the port for the iFolder server to connect to the Web Admin application. Port 443 is the default. Port 80 is the default value for non-SSL communication.
  - ♦ **Require a secure connection between the Web browser and the iFolder Web Access application:** Select the check box to establish a secure connection between the Web browser and the iFolder Web Admin application.
- 

For additional configuration instructions, see “[Installing and Configuring iFolder Services](#)” in the *Novell iFolder 3.9 Administration Guide*.

## Novell iManager

**Table 3-14** *Novell iManager Parameters and Values*

---

**Page and Parameters**

---

**iManager Configuration**

---

- ♦ **eDirectory Tree:** Shows the name of a valid eDirectory tree that you specified when configuring eDirectory.  
  
To change this configuration, you must change the eDirectory configuration.
  - ♦ **FDN Admin Name with Context** Shows the eDirectory Admin name and context that you specified when configuring eDirectory. This is the user that has full administrative rights to perform operations in iManager.  
  
To change this configuration, you must change the eDirectory configuration.
- 

For additional configuration instructions, see “[Installing iManager](#)” in the *Novell iManager 2.7.6 Installation Guide*.

## Novell iPrint

**Table 3-15** Novell iPrint Parameters and Values

Page and Parameters
iPrint Configuration
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>♦ <b>Directory server address:</b> The IP address shown is the default LDAP server for this service. If you do not want to use the default, select a different LDAP server in the list.  If you are installing into an existing tree, ensure that the server you select has a master replica or read/write replica of eDirectory. If you need to add another LDAP server to the list, add it by using the LDAP Configuration for Open Enterprise Services dialog box.</li></ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>♦ <b>Top-Most Container of eDirectory Tree:</b> iPrint uses LDAP to verify rights to perform various iPrint operations, including authenticating users for printing and performing management tasks such as uploading drivers.  During the installation of the iPrint software, iPrint attempts to identify the topmost container of the eDirectory tree and sets the base dn to this container for the AuthLDAPURL entry in <code>/etc/opt/novell/iprint/httpd/conf/iprint_ssl.conf</code>.  For most installations, this is adequate because users are often distributed across containers.  <b>IMPORTANT:</b> If you have multiple peer containers at the top of your eDirectory tree, leave this field blank so that the LDAP search begins at the root of the tree.</li></ul>

For additional configuration instructions, see “[Installing and Setting Up iPrint on Your Server](#)” in the *OES 11 SP1: iPrint Linux Administration Guide*.

## Novell Linux User Management

**Table 3-16** Novell Linux User Management Parameters and Values

Page and Parameters
Linux User Management Configuration
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>♦ <b>Directory Server Address:</b> The IP address shown is the default LDAP server for this service. If you do not want to use the default, select a different LDAP server in the list.  If you are installing into an existing tree, ensure that the server you select has a master replica or read/write replica of eDirectory. If you need to add another LDAP server to the list, add it by using the LDAP Configuration for Open Enterprise Services dialog box.  For information about specifying multiple LDAP servers for Linux User Management (LUM), see “<a href="#">Configuring a Failover Mechanism</a>” in the <i>OES 11 SP1: Novell Linux User Management Administration Guide</i>.</li></ul>
<b>Default:</b> The first server selected in the <i>LDAP Configuration</i> list of servers

---

## Page and Parameters

---

- ♦ **Unix Config Context:** The UNIX Config object holds a list of the locations (contexts) of UNIX Workstation objects in eDirectory. It also controls the range of numbers to be assigned as UIDs and GIDs when User objects and Group objects are created.

Specify the eDirectory context (existing or created here) where the UNIX Config object will be created. An LDAP search for a LUM User, a LUM Group, or a LUM Workstation object begins here, so the context must be at the same level or higher than the LUM objects searched for.

If the UNIX Config Object is placed below the location of the User objects, the `/etc/nam.conf` file on the target computer must include the `support-outside-base-context=yes` parameter.

Geographically dispersed networks might require multiple UNIX Config objects in a single tree, but most networks need only one UNIX Config object in eDirectory.

**Default:** The server context specified in the eDirectory configuration

---

- ♦ **Unix Workstation Context:** Computers running Linux User Management (LUM) are represented by UNIX Workstation objects in eDirectory. The object holds the set of properties and information associated with the target computer, such as the target workstation name or a list of eDirectory groups that have access to the target workstation.

Specify the eDirectory context (existing or created here) for the UNIX Workstation object created by the install for this server. The context should be the same as or below the UNIX Config Context specified above.

**Default:** The context you specified for this OES server in the eDirectory configuration

---

- ♦ **Proxy User Name with Context (Optional):** If you specified a common proxy user, and you select the *Use OES Common Proxy User* option (below) it is used by default. If you didn't specify a common proxy user, you can specify a user (existing or created here) with rights to search the LDAP tree for LUM objects.
- 

- ♦ **Proxy User Password:** If you are using the common proxy user, the password is automatically entered for you. Otherwise, you can specify a password (existing or created here) for the Proxy user.

For more information on proxy user and password management, see [“Planning Your Proxy Users”](#) in the *OES 11 SP1: Planning and Implementation Guide*.

---

- ♦ **Use OES Common Proxy User:** Check this option if you specified a common proxy user and want to use it as the proxy user for LUM.
- 

- ♦ **Restrict Access to the Home Directories of Other Users:** This option is selected by default to restrict read and write access for users other than the owner to home directories.

Using the default selection changes the umask setting in `/etc/login.defs` from 022 to 077.

**Default:** Selected

---

## Linux User Management Configuration (2)

---

---

## Page and Parameters

---

**IMPORTANT:** Before you change the PAM-enabled service settings, be sure you understand the security implications explained in “[User Restrictions: Some OES Limitations](#)” in the [OES 11 SP1: Planning and Implementation Guide](#).

- ♦ **Services to LUM-enable for authentication via eDirectory:** Select the services to LUM-enable on this server. The services marked *yes* are available to authenticated LUM users.
  - ♦ *login*: no
  - ♦ *ftp*: no
  - ♦ *sshd*: no

If you want to use the SSH protocol to define a NetStorage storage location object, you must select SSHD as a LUM-enabled service.

If do not select *SSHD*, users cannot to log in to NetStorage through SSH to access their files.
  - ♦ *su*: no
  - ♦ *sfcbsd*: *yes*

This is selected by default because it is used by many of the OES services such as NSS, SMS, Novell Remote Manager, and Samba. To access iManager and NRM, you must enable SFCB.
  - ♦ *gdm*: no
  - ♦ *gnome-screensaver*: no
  - ♦ *gnomesu-pam*: no

---

For additional configuration instructions, see “[Setting Up Linux User Management](#)” in the [OES 11 SP1: Novell Linux User Management Administration Guide](#).

## Novell NCP Server / Dynamic Storage Technology

**Table 3-17** *Novell NCP Server Parameters and Values*

---

### Page and Parameters

---

#### NCP Server Configuration

- ♦ **Admin Name with Context:** The eDirectory Admin user you specified in the eDirectory configuration.

---

For additional configuration instructions, see “[Installing and Configuring NCP Server for Linux](#)” in the [OES 11 SP1: NCP Server for Linux Administration Guide](#).

## Novell NetStorage

**Table 3-18** *Novell NetStorage Parameters and Values*

---

### Page and Parameters

---

#### NetStorage Configuration

---

---

## Page and Parameters

---

- ♦ **Authentication Domain Host:** The IP address shown is the default LDAP server for this service. If you do not want to use the default, select a different LDAP server in the list.

If you are installing into an existing tree, ensure that the server you select has a master replica or read/write replica of eDirectory. If you need to add another LDAP server to the list, add it by using the LDAP Configuration for Open Enterprise Services page.

**Default:** The first server selected in the *LDAP Configuration* list of servers.

---

- ♦ **Proxy User Name with Context:** Specify the proxy user name including the context, or accept the default.

This user performs LDAP searches for users logging into NetStorage.

**Default:** If you specified a common proxy user, it is used by default. If you didn't specify a common proxy user, the eDirectory Admin name and context that you specified when configuring eDirectory is specified.

---

- ♦ **Proxy User Password:** Specify a password for the proxy user.

For more information on proxy user and password management, see [“Planning Your Proxy Users”](#) in the *OES 11 SP1: Planning and Implementation Guide*.

---

- ♦ **User Context:** Specify the NetStorage user context, or accept the default.

This is the eDirectory context for the users that will use NetStorage. NetStorage searches the eDirectory tree down from the specified context for User objects. If you want NetStorage to search the entire eDirectory tree, specify the root context.

**Default:** The Organization object you specified while configuring eDirectory

---

For additional configuration instructions, see [“Installing NetStorage”](#) in the *OES 11 SP1: NetStorage Administration Guide for Linux*.

## Novell Pre-Migration Server

No additional configuration is required. For information, see [“Preparing the Source Server for Migration”](#) the *OES 11 SP1: Migration Tool Administration Guide*.

## Novell QuickFinder

**Table 3-19** *Novell QuickFinder Parameters and Values*

---

### Page and Parameters

---

#### Novell QuickFinder Admin User

---

- ♦ **Novell QuickFinder Admin User Type:** Make the QuickFinder administrator a LUM-enabled eDirectory user or a local Linux user.
  - ♦ *Local:* Select this option to give QuickFinder Server administration rights to a local Linux user (the default is the `root` user if no other local users exist).
  - ♦ *Directory LUM Enabled:* Gives QuickFinder Server administration rights to an eDirectory user.

**Default:** Directory LUM enabled

---

---

## Page and Parameters

---

- ♦ **QuickFinder Admin Name:** Specify the QuickFinder administrator name.

If you selected *Directory LUM enabled* as the user type, include the full context (such as `cn=admin,o=novell`).

If you selected *Local* as the user type, specify only the admin name (such as `root`). If the user does not already exist, it is created.

**Default:** The eDirectory Admin user you specified while configuring eDirectory

---

- ♦ **Add novlwww User to the Shadow Group:** If only LUM-enabled eDirectory users will use QuickFinder, this option does not need to be set.

QuickFinder uses Pluggable Authentication Modules (PAM) to authenticate users for both administration and rights-based searching. Because QuickFinder is a servlet under Tomcat, it has the same rights to the system as the Tomcat user (`wwwrun`).

For QuickFinder to verify user credentials for local users (including `root`), the `wwwrun` user must be added to the local shadow group.

**Default:** Yes

---

## Novell QuickFinder Admin Password

---

- ♦ **eDirectory Admin Name:** Specified on the previous page.
- 

- ♦ **Novell QuickFinder Admin User Type:** If a different admin user was created, specify a password.
- 

For additional configuration instructions, see “[Installing QuickFinder Server](#)” in the *OES 11 SP1: Novell QuickFinder Server 5.0 Administration Guide*.

## Novell Remote Manager

No additional configuration for the installation is required. To change the configuration after the installation, see “[Changing the Configuration](#)” in the *OES 11 SP1: Novell Remote Manager Administration Guide*.

## Novell Samba

**Table 3-20** *Novell Samba Parameters and Values*

---

## Page and Parameters

---

### Novell Samba Configuration

---

- ♦ **Directory server address:** The IP address shown is the default LDAP server for this service. If you do not want to use the default, select a different LDAP server in the list.

If you are installing into an existing tree, ensure that the server you select has a master replica or read/write replica of eDirectory. If you need to add another LDAP server to the list, add it by using the LDAP Configuration for Open Enterprise Services dialog box.

This is the primary IP address of the LDAP server to which CIFS client users (such as Windows users) authenticate, to use LDAP for access to the directories and files on this OES server.

**Default** The first server selected in the *LDAP Configuration* list of servers.

---



---

## Page and Parameters

---

- ♦ **Base Context for Samba Users:** The eDirectory context (existing or created here) where the default Samba group is created.

**Default:** The eDirectory context where the server is installed. Do not change the default unless you are altering the standard Samba configuration.

- 
- ♦ **Proxy User Name with Context:** A user on the specified LDAP server that has rights to search the LDAP tree for Samba users.

The name and context must be specified by using typeful syntax.  
(cn=name,ou=organizational\_unit,o=organization)

**Default:** The eDirectory context where the server is installed.

- 
- ♦ **Proxy User Password:** The password of the Proxy User specified above.

For more information on proxy user and password management, see “[Planning Your Proxy Users](#)” in the *OES 11 SP1: Planning and Implementation Guide*.

---

For additional configuration instructions, see “[Installing the Novell Samba Components](#)” in the *OES 11 SP1: Novell Samba Administration Guide*.

## Novell Storage Services (NSS)

**Table 3-21** *Novell Storage Services Parameters and Values*

---

## Page and Parameters

---

### NSS Unique Admin Object

---

- ♦ **Directory Server Address:** The IP address shown is the default LDAP server for this service. If you do not want to use the default, select a different LDAP server in the list.

If you are installing into an existing tree, ensure that the server you select has a master replica or read/write replica of eDirectory. If you need to add another LDAP server to the list, add it by using the LDAP Configuration for Open Enterprise Services dialog box.

**Default** The first server selected in the *LDAP Configuration* list of servers.

- 
- ♦ **Unique object Name for NSS Admin of This:** Specify the NSS Admin name and context or accept the default.

This is the fully distinguished name of a User object with administrative rights to NSS. You must have a unique NSS admin name for each server that uses NSS.

For more information, see “[Planning Your Proxy Users](#)” in the *OES 11 SP1: Planning and Implementation Guide*.

**Default:** The server hostname concatenated with the LDAP Admin Name you entered for this server, . cn=myserveradmin,o=organization.

---

For additional configuration instructions, see “[Installing and Configuring Novell Storage Services](#)” in the *OES 11 SP1: NSS File System Administration Guide for Linux*.

## 3.9 Finishing the Installation

The installation concludes with the following steps:

1. User Authentication Method
2. Clean Up
3. Release Notes
4. Hardware Configuration

After a successful configuration, YaST shows the Installation Completed dialog box. Do the following:

- 1 (Optional) Select whether to clone your newly installed system for AutoYaST. To clone your system, select *Clone This System for AutoYaST*.

The profile of the current system is stored in `/root/autoinst.xml`. Cloning is selected by default.

AutoYaST is a system for automatically installing one or more SUSE Linux Enterprise systems without user intervention. AutoYaST installations are performed by using a control file with installation and configuration data. For detailed information, see [Chapter 8, “Using AutoYaST to Install and Configure Multiple OES Servers,”](#) on page 181.

- 2 Finish the installation by clicking *Finish* in the Installation Completed page.
- 3 After the server reboots, continue with [Section 3.10, “Verifying That the Installation Was Successful,”](#) on page 106.

## 3.10 Verifying That the Installation Was Successful

One way to verify that your OES server installation was successful and that the components are loading properly is to watch the server reboot. As each component is loaded, the boot logger provides a status next to it indicating if the component is loading properly.

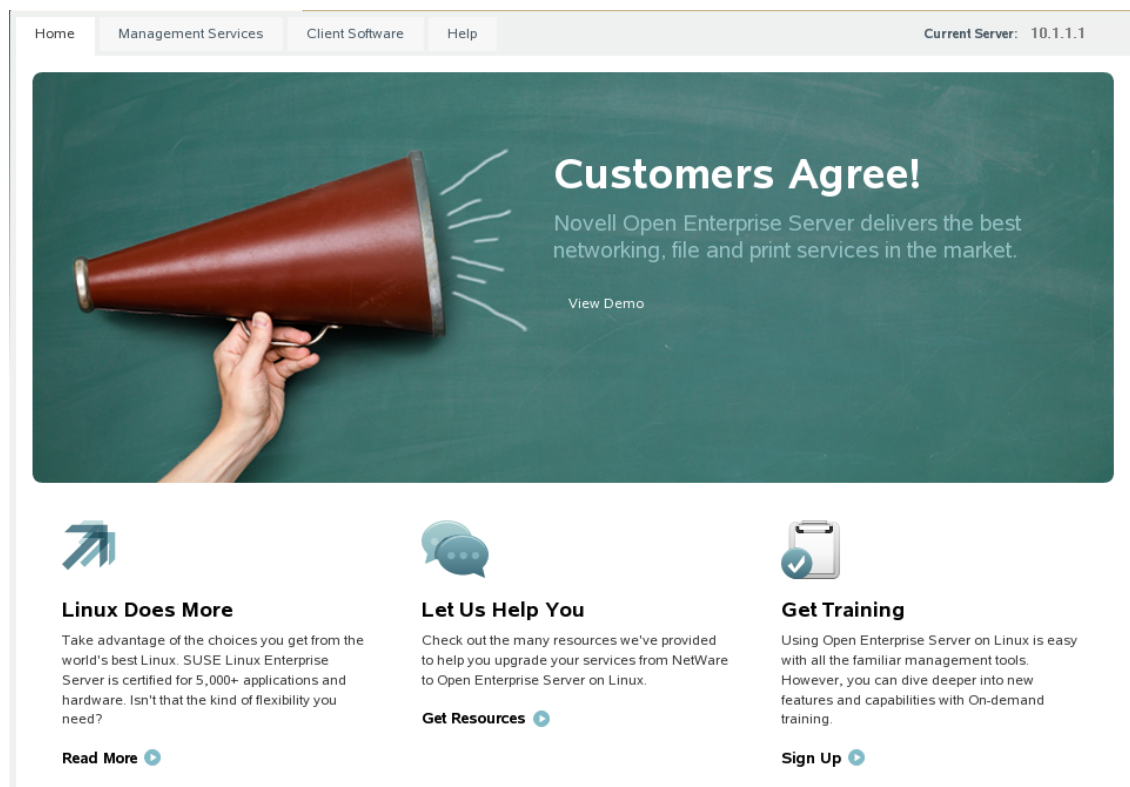
You can also quickly verify a successful installation by accessing the server from your Web browser.

- 1 In the Address field of your Web browser, enter the following URL:

`http://IP_or_DNS`

Replace *IP\_or\_DNS* with the IP address or DNS name of your OES server.

You should see a Web page similar to the following:




---

**IMPORTANT:** If you see the statement “It Works!” instead of the OES Welcome Page, that means that the Web and LAMP Server option was selected and installed as a SLES component on the server. The default OES behavior can be restored either by deleting the `/srv/www/htdocs/index.html` file from the server or renaming the `index.html` file to a different name.

You can also view the OES Welcome Page by using `http://IP_or_DNS/welcome` to access the server.

---

- 2 (Optional) If you want to look at the eDirectory tree and begin to see how iManager works, go to the OES Information and Management Web page, click *Management Tools > iManager*, then log in as user Admin (the user you created during product installation).

You can also access iManager by typing the following URL in a browser window and logging in as user Admin:

`http://IP_or_DNS_name/nps/iManager.html`

- 3 Continue with “What's Next” on page 107.

## 3.11 What's Next

After you complete the initial installation, complete any additional tasks you might need to perform. See “Completing OES Installation or Upgrade Tasks” on page 159



---

# 4 Installing or Configuring OES 11 SP1 on an Existing Server

After installing or upgrading to Novell Open Enterprise Server (OES 11 SP1), you can also install additional products or services and configure them to work in the new environment. If you have installed or upgraded a server to SUSE Linux Enterprise Server (SLES) 11 SP2, you can also add OES 11 SP1 services to the server.

- ♦ [Section 4.1, “Before You Install OES Services on an Existing Server,” on page 109](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.2, “Adding/Configuring OES Services on an Existing Server,” on page 110](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.3, “Adding/Configuring OES Services on a Server That Another Administrator Installed,” on page 113](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.4, “What’s Next,” on page 114](#)

---

**IMPORTANT:** If you have updated a server with a Support Pack, make sure the installation source is pointing to the latest Support Pack media.

---

## 4.1 Before You Install OES Services on an Existing Server

In addition to the information in [“Planning Your OES 11 SP1 Implementation”](#) in the *OES 11 SP1: Planning and Implementation Guide*, the following apply when you install OES on an existing server.

- ♦ [Section 4.1.1, “Always Use YaST to Install and Initially Configure OES Services,” on page 109](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.1.2, “Don’t Install OES While Running the Xen Kernel,” on page 110](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.1.3, “If You Want OES to Use a Local eDirectory Database on the Server,” on page 110](#)

### 4.1.1 Always Use YaST to Install and Initially Configure OES Services

Linux administrators sometimes wrongly assume that OES services can be installed or uninstalled by simply installing the associated RPMs. OES services require additional configuration that is only supported as an add-on product installation in YaST.

---

**IMPORTANT:** You must always install OES as an add-on product using the YaST install. For more information, see [Section 2.10, “Always Install OES as an Add-On Product,” on page 43](#).

---

## 4.1.2 Don't Install OES While Running the Xen Kernel

If you are adding supported OES 11 SP1 components to a server that is running the Xen kernel, you must reset the boot loader to boot the standard kernel before adding the OES 11 SP1 components.

- 1 In YaST, select *System > Boot Loader > SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 SP2 > Set As Default > Finish*.
- 2 Reboot the server.

After adding the supported OES 11 SP1 components, reset the boot loader option to Xen.

- 1 In YaST, select *System > Boot Loader > XEN > Set As Default > Finish*.
- 2 Reboot the server.

Be sure to add only those OES 11 SP1 components that are supported on a VM host server. For more information, see [Step 7 on page 189](#).

## 4.1.3 If You Want OES to Use a Local eDirectory Database on the Server

If you want the OES components to use a local eDirectory database, you should install eDirectory by itself first, then rerun the installation for the other OES components.

## 4.2 Adding/Configuring OES Services on an Existing Server

---

**IMPORTANT:** If you are not using the administrator account that originally installed the OES server you are adding services to, see [Section 2.4, “Installing and Configuring OES as a Subcontainer Administrator,” on page 18](#) and then follow the instructions in [Section 4.3, “Adding/Configuring OES Services on a Server That Another Administrator Installed,” on page 113](#).

---

To add/configure OES 11 SP1 services on an existing OES 11 SP1 server or SLES 11 SP2 server:

- 1 Open YaST.
- 2 If an OES 11 SP1 installation source has not been added to the server, continue with this step. Otherwise, skip to [Step 3](#).
  - 2a Click *Software > Add-on Products*.
  - 2b Click *Add*.
  - 2c In the Add-On Product Media dialog box, click *CD > Next*.

If you are using an alternate installation source, click the appropriate option that matches your installation source selection.
  - 2d In the Insert the Add-On Product CD dialog box, select the appropriate drive where you want to insert the CD labeled *Open Enterprise Server 11 SP1 CD 1*.
  - 2e Click *Eject*.
  - 2f Insert the CD labeled *Open Enterprise Server 11 SP1*, then click *Continue*.
  - 2g Read and accept the Novell Open Enterprise Server 11 SP1 license agreement, then click *Next*.
  - 2h Confirm that the Add-On Product Installation page shows the correct path to the OES media, then click *Next*.
  - 2i Skip to [Step 4](#).

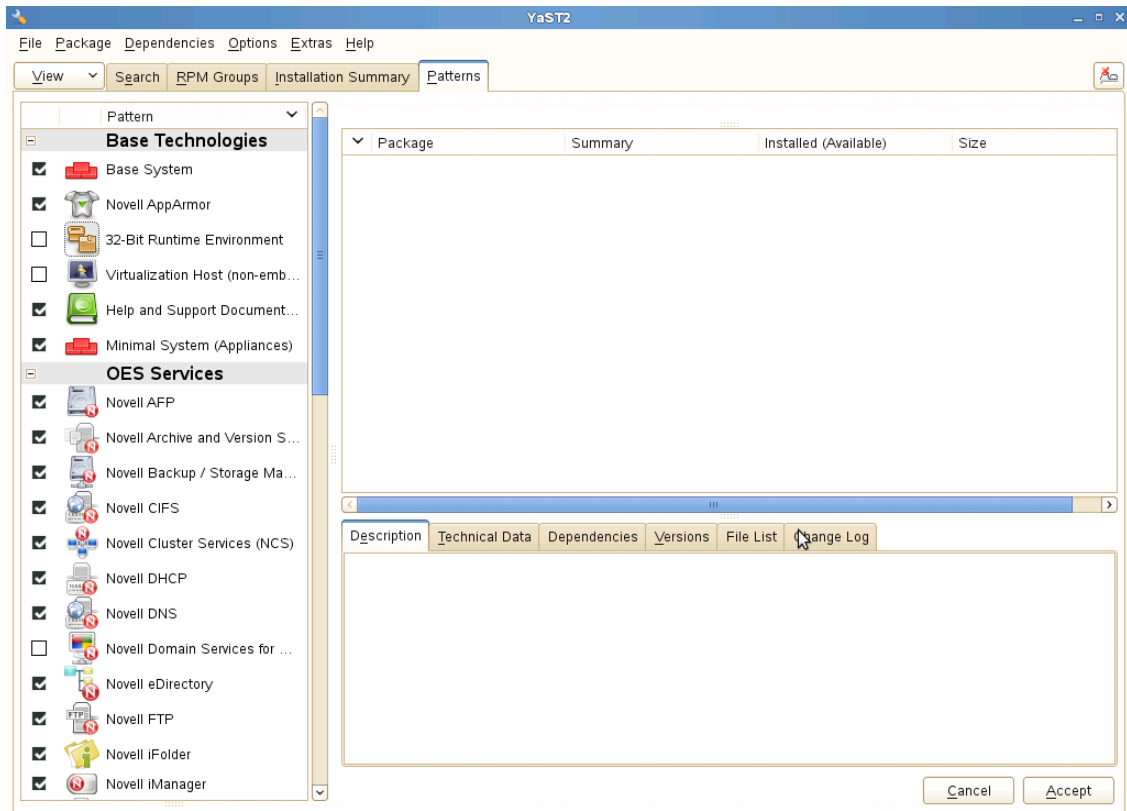
- 3 If an OES installation source has already been added to the server, click *Open Enterprise Server > OES Install and Configuration*.
- 4 On the Software Selection page, select the OES components that you want to install or configure. Services that you have already installed are indicated by a white tick mark on a black background in the status check box next to the service.

---

**IMPORTANT:** You cannot uninstall an OES service by deselecting it. For more information about removing service functionality from the server, see [Chapter 12, “Disabling OES 11 Services,”](#) on page 217.

---

- 5 If you are only configuring or reconfiguring services that are already installed, click *Accept*, then skip to [Step 9](#).



Not all OES components require eDirectory to be installed on the local server. Components that have a dependency on eDirectory being installed locally will prompt you to install eDirectory if it is not already installed.

---

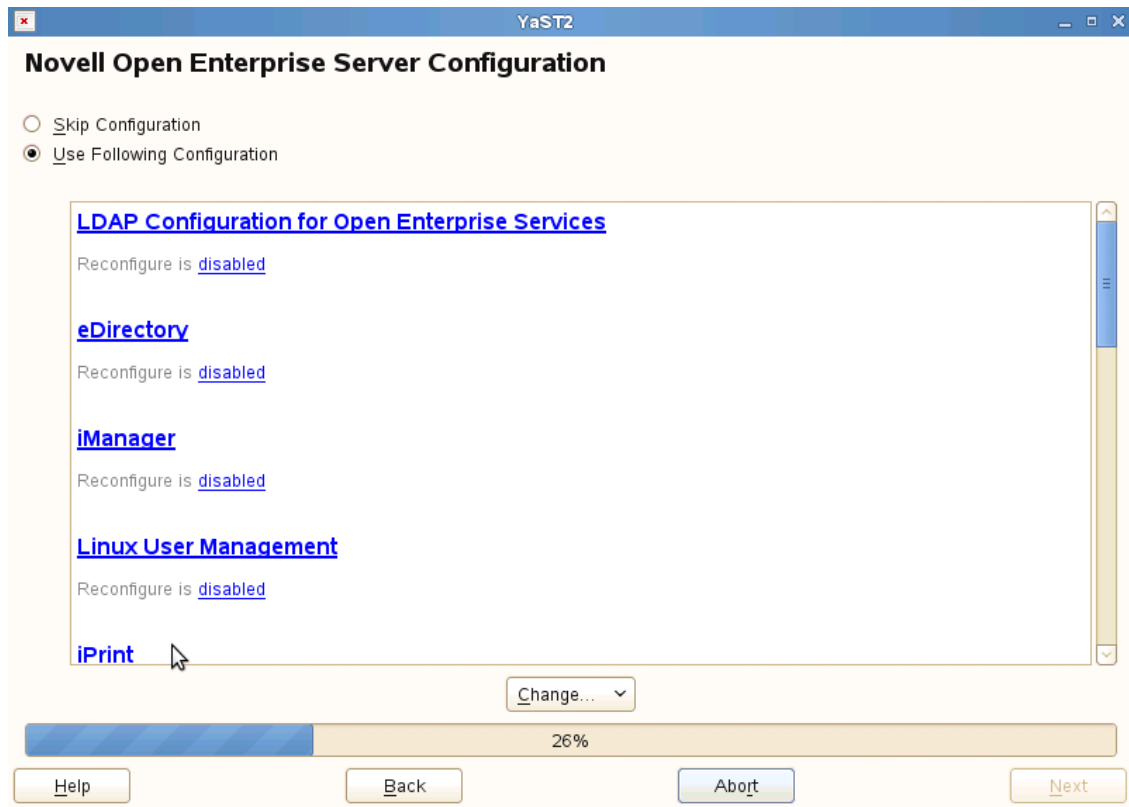
**IMPORTANT:** If you need to reconfigure eDirectory, we recommend that you use tools provided by eDirectory, such as iMonitor or iManager, rather than using YaST to change the configuration. The configuration provided in YaST is only for the initial eDirectory installation and configuration.

If you need to reconfigure eDirectory and OES services due to database corruption, go to [Chapter 13, “Reconfiguring eDirectory and OES Services,”](#) on page 219 and follow the instructions there.

---

- 6 After selecting the services to install, click *Accept*.
- 7 If package changes are required for your selections, select *Continue*.

- 8 Insert any media required to install the new packages.
- 9 Change the default configuration information as required.



In most cases, the default configuration is acceptable. You need to change the configuration at the following times:

- ♦ When the installation displays the following message to indicate that more information (often the administrator password) is required:  

```
service_name service requires additional configuration information before
continuing or disable the configuration.
```
- ♦ When you want to change the default configuration settings, such as enabling services for LUM.
- ♦ When you want to reconfigure a service that has already been configured.

- 9a** To change the configuration of a newly installed service or a service that has already been configured, change its configuration status to *Enabled*, then click the service heading link to access the configuration dialog box for that service.

Newly installed services that have not been configured have the status of *Configure is enabled*.

Services that have already been configured have a status of *Reconfigure is disabled*.

- 9b** To enable the configuration status of any disabled service configuration, click the *Disabled* link to change the status to *Enabled*.
- 9c** To delay the configuration of newly installed services to a later time, click the *Enabled* link to change the status to *Configure is disabled*.



For configuration guidelines, see [Section 3.8.11, “Configuration Guidelines for OES Services,” on page 78](#); or, if you are reading online, click a link below:

- ♦ [AFP](#)
  - ♦ [Archive and Version Services](#)
  - ♦ [Backup/Storage Management Services \(SMS\)](#)
  - ♦ [CIFS](#)
  - ♦ [Clustering \(NCS\)](#)
  - ♦ [DHCP](#)
  - ♦ [DNS](#)
  - ♦ [Domain Services for Windows \(DSfW\)](#)
  - ♦ [eDirectory](#)
  - ♦ [FTP](#)
  - ♦ [iFolder](#)
  - ♦ [iManager](#)
  - ♦ [iPrint](#)
  - ♦ [Linux User Management \(LUM\)](#)
  - ♦ [NCP Server/Dynamic Storage Technology](#)
  - ♦ [NetStorage](#)
  - ♦ [Pre-Migration Server](#)
  - ♦ [QuickFinder](#)
  - ♦ [Novell Remote Manager \(NRM\)](#)
  - ♦ [Novell Samba](#)
  - ♦ [Novell Storage Services](#)
- 10** When all the services have complete configuration information and the configuration or reconfiguration status is set to *Enabled* for the services that you want to configure, click *Next* to continue with the configuration process.
- 11** After the service configuration process has run and is finalized, click *Finish*.
- 12** If you are installing on an existing OES server, you can quit the installation at this point.
- If you are installing OES services for the first time on this server, see [Section 3.8.5, “Specifying Novell Customer Center Configuration Settings,” on page 61](#) for help with registering OES and updating the software.

## 4.3 Adding/Configuring OES Services on a Server That Another Administrator Installed

To add or configure OES services on an OES server that another administrator installed, you must have the rights described in [“Rights Required for Subcontainer Administrators” on page 18](#).

- 1** On the OES server, launch YaST. Then click *Open Enterprise Server > OES Install and Configuration*.
- 2** On the Software Selection page, select the additional OES services you want to install, then click *Accept*.

The required packages are installed.

- 3 When the Novell Open Enterprise Server Configuration summary screen appears, click the *disabled* link under *LDAP Configuration for Open Enterprise Services*.  
The link changes to *enabled*.
- 4 Click *LDAP Configuration for Open Enterprise Services*.
- 5 Change the Admin Name and Context.

---

**IMPORTANT:** Make sure all field delimiters are consistent. For example, if you are adding to the context already displayed, either use comma-delimited syntax or change all other delimiters to periods.

---

- 6 Type the subcontainer admin password in the *Admin Password* field, then click *Next*.
- 7 Go to [Step 9 on page 112](#) in [Section 4.2, "Adding/Configuring OES Services on an Existing Server," on page 110](#) and continue from there.

## 4.4 What's Next

After you complete the configuration process, complete any additional tasks you might need to perform. See ["Completing OES Installation or Upgrade Tasks" on page 159](#).

# 5 Upgrading to OES 11 SP1

Novell Open Enterprise Server (OES) 11 SP1 provides the option of updating an existing system to the new version without completely reinstalling it. No new installation is needed. Existing data such as home directories and system configuration is kept intact. During the life cycle of the product, you can apply Service Packs to increase system security and correct software defects.

- ♦ [Section 5.1, “Supported Upgrade Paths,” on page 115](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.2, “Planning for the Upgrade to OES 11 SP1,” on page 116](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.3, “Meeting the Upgrade Requirements,” on page 117](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.4, “Upgrading to OES 11 SP1,” on page 121](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.5, “Finishing the Upgrade,” on page 143](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.6, “Using AutoYaST for an OES 11 SP1 Upgrade,” on page 143](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.7, “Channel Upgrade from OES 11 to OES 11 SP1,” on page 148](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.8, “Upgrading eDirectory After an OES Upgrade,” on page 154](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.9, “Using SUSE Manager to Upgrade from OES 11 to OES 11 SP1,” on page 156](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.10, “Verifying That the Upgrade Was Successful,” on page 156](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.11, “Moving to Common Proxy Users After an Upgrade,” on page 157](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.12, “What’s Next,” on page 158](#)

## 5.1 Supported Upgrade Paths

[Table 5-1](#) outlines the supported paths for upgrading to OES 11 SP1.

All OES releases can be upgraded by installing the interim support packs in order. For example, you can upgrade from OES 2 SP2 to OES 2 SP3, then from OES 2 SP3 to OES 11 SP1. Cross-architecture upgrades (32-bit to 64-bit and 64-bit to 32-bit) are not supported.

**Table 5-1** *Supported OES 11 SP1 Upgrade Paths*

Source	Destination	Upgrade Methods Supported
OES 2 SP2 (64-bit)	OES 11 SP1 (64-bit)	Network-based media (offline) Physical media (offline)
OES 2 SP3 (64-bit)	OES 11 SP1 (64-bit)	Network-based media (offline) Physical media (offline)
OES 11 (64-bit)	OES 11 SP1 (64-bit)	Network-based media (offline) Physical media (offline) Channel or patch upgrade

---

**IMPORTANT:** Source servers must have all patches applied from the appropriate SUSE Linux Enterprise Server (SLES) and OES patch update repositories prior to an upgrade.

---

## 5.2 Planning for the Upgrade to OES 11 SP1

- ♦ [Section 5.2.1, “Be Sure to Check the Readme,” on page 116](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.2.2, “Always Upgrade SLES and OES at the Same Time,” on page 116](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.2.3, “Understanding the Implications for Other Products Currently Installed on the Server,” on page 116](#)

### 5.2.1 Be Sure to Check the Readme

The “[Before You Install](#)” section documents issues that Novell plans to address in a future release.

### 5.2.2 Always Upgrade SLES and OES at the Same Time

You must upgrade SLES and OES at the same time.

### 5.2.3 Understanding the Implications for Other Products Currently Installed on the Server

- ♦ [“OES 2 Server Upgrades: Non-OES 2 Packages Are Retained but Might Not Work After Upgrading” on page 116](#)

#### **OES 2 Server Upgrades: Non-OES 2 Packages Are Retained but Might Not Work After Upgrading**

During the upgrade process from earlier OES 2 releases to OES 11 SP1, packages that are not part of the SLES 11 SP2 and OES 11 SP1 distributions are automatically retained unless you select them for deletion.

This includes third-party products you have installed, as well as other Novell products such as GroupWise, ZENworks, and Identity Manager.

There is no guarantee that these products will continue to work after you upgrade. Therefore, it is critical that you check the product documentation for compatibility information before you upgrade servers with any Novell product installed.

For Information About This Novell Product	See This Documentation
GroupWise	<a href="http://www.novell.com/documentation/groupwise.html">GroupWise online documentation (http://www.novell.com/documentation/groupwise.html)</a>
ZENworks	<a href="http://www.novell.com/documentation/zenworks.html">ZENworks online documentation (http://www.novell.com/documentation/zenworks.html)</a>
Identity Manager	<a href="http://www.novell.com/documentation/secure_identity_management.html">Identity Management online documentation (http://www.novell.com/documentation/secure_identity_management.html)</a>

For Information About This Novell Product	See This Documentation
Other products	<a href="http://www.novell.com/documentation/">All Novell online documentation (http://www.novell.com/documentation/)</a>

If you have installed a third-party product, be sure to check that it is supported on SLES 11 SP2 and follow the upgrade instructions that should be included with it.

## 5.3 Meeting the Upgrade Requirements

Meet the following requirements before you upgrade and install any OES 11 SP1 components:

- ♦ [Section 5.3.1, “Securing Current Data,” on page 117](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.3.2, “Ensuring That There Is Adequate Storage Space on the Root Partition,” on page 117](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.3.3, “Preparing the Server You Are Upgrading,” on page 118](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.3.4, “Checking the Server’s IP Address,” on page 119](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.3.5, “Checking the Server’s DNS Name,” on page 119](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.3.6, “Ensuring That the Server Has a Server Certificate,” on page 119](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.3.7, “Changing the Mount Options Before an Upgrade,” on page 119](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.3.8, “Preparing an Installation Source,” on page 121](#)

### 5.3.1 Securing Current Data

Before upgrading, secure the current data on the server. For example, make a backup copy of the data, so you can restore the data volumes later if needed.

Save your configuration files. Copy all configuration files to a separate medium, such as a removable hard disk, or USB stick, to secure the data. This primarily applies to files stored in `/etc` as well as some of the directories and files in `/var` and `/opt`. You might also want to write the user data in `/home` (the Home directories) to a backup medium. Back up this data as `root`. Only `root` has read permission for all local files.

### 5.3.2 Ensuring That There Is Adequate Storage Space on the Root Partition

Before starting your upgrade, make note of the root partition and space available.

If you suspect running short of disk space, secure your data before updating, and repartition your system. There is no general rule regarding how much space each partition should have. Space requirements depend on your particular partitioning profile and the software selected.

---

**WARNING:** If you require more root partition space and if it resides in an EVMS container, you may not be able to repartition or expand the size of the root partition without deleting data elsewhere on the device.

---

The `df -h` command lists the device name of the root partition. In the following example, the root partition to write down is `/dev/sda2` (mounted as `/`) with 5.8 GB available.

```
blr8-119-74:/media # df -h
Filesystem      Size  Used Avail Use% Mounted on
/dev/sda2       9.9G  3.7G  5.8G  39% /
devtmpfs        940M  124K  940M   1% /dev
tmpfs           940M  244K  940M   1% /dev/shm
admin           4.0M    0  4.0M   0% /_admin
```

### 5.3.3 Preparing the Server You Are Upgrading

Complete the steps in [Table 5-2](#) for your target server.

**Table 5-2** *Preparing the Server You Are Upgrading*

If the Server Is Running	Do This Before Upgrading the Server
SLES 10 SP3	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ensure that the products and services you have running on the server can run on the new SLES 11 SP2 kernel.</li> <li>2. Make sure to download and update the latest sentinel agent from (<a href="http://support.novell.com/products/sentinel/secure/sentinelplugins.html">http://support.novell.com/products/sentinel/secure/sentinelplugins.html</a>). Failing to update the agent may result in SLES 11 booting issues.</li> <li>3. Ensure that the mount options for all the partitions in SLES 10 are set to <i>Device ID</i> or <i>Device Path</i>. For more information, see <a href="#">Section 5.3.7, “Changing the Mount Options Before an Upgrade,”</a> on page 119.</li> <li>4. Make sure the server meets the hardware requirements for SLES 11 SP2. See “System Requirements for Operating Linux” in the <i>Deployment Guide</i> (<a href="http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_sle_deployment/data/sec_x86_sysreqs.html">http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_sle_deployment/data/sec_x86_sysreqs.html</a>). Itanium is not a supported platform for OES 11.</li> <li>5. See the SLES 11 SP2 entry.</li> </ol>
SLES 11 SP2	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. See <a href="#">Chapter 4, “Installing or Configuring OES 11 SP1 on an Existing Server,”</a> on page 109.</li> </ol>
OES 2 SP2	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Run <i>YaST &gt; Software &gt; Online Update</i> to patch the OES 2 SP2 server to the latest patch level.</li> <li>2. Ensure that the server and services are still running as desired.</li> <li>3. Upgrade to OES 11 SP1 using the instructions in this section, then apply all patches and verify services.</li> </ol>
OES 2 SP3	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Run <i>YaST &gt; Software &gt; Online Update</i> to patch the OES 2 SP3 server to the latest patch level.</li> <li>2. Ensure that the server and services are still running as desired.</li> <li>3. Upgrade to OES 11 SP1 using the instructions in this section, then apply all patches and verify services.</li> </ol>
OES 11	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Run <i>YaST &gt; Software &gt; Online Update</i> to patch the OES 11 server to the latest patch level.</li> <li>2. Ensure that the server and services are still running as desired.</li> <li>3. Upgrade to OES 11 SP1 using the instructions in this section, then apply all patches and verify services.</li> </ol>

### 5.3.4 Checking the Server's IP Address

Make sure the server has a static IP address.

### 5.3.5 Checking the Server's DNS Name

Make sure that DNS returns the correct static IP address when you ping the server's full DNS name.  
For example

```
ping myserver.example.com
```

### 5.3.6 Ensuring That the Server Has a Server Certificate

---

**IMPORTANT:** Most OES servers have either an eDirectory certificate or a third-party certificate installed.

*These instructions only apply when that is not the case.*

---

Ensure that the server has a server certificate that has been generated and exported as a Common Server certificate.

To check for or add a certificate:

- 1 Launch YaST.
- 2 Click *Security and Users > CA Management*.
- 3 If no certificate authorities (CAs) are listed, create one by clicking *Create Root CA*.  
If a CA is listed, you can use it by selecting the CA and clicking *Enter CA*.
- 4 If you are using a listed CA, you must provide the CA password (generally the root password).
- 5 Click *Certificates > Add*.
- 6 Fill out the forms required for a server certificate. After the last form is complete, a server certificate is created and listed in the certificate list.
- 7 Select the certificate you just created.
- 8 Click the *Export* button, then select *Export as Common Server Certificate*.

### 5.3.7 Changing the Mount Options Before an Upgrade

Before starting the upgrade from OES2 to OES11 SP1, make sure the mount options for all the partitions are set to *Device ID* or *Device Path*. The default mount option in SLES 10 is *Kernel Device Name*, which is not persistent, and therefore it is unreliable for use during an upgrade process.

---

**IMPORTANT:** Mount options should not be changed when you are upgrading an OES 2 SP3 instance installed on XEN or whose `root` partition is on EVMS. Before starting the upgrade, apply the latest patches for OES 2 SP3 and SLES 10 and proceed with the upgrade to OES 11 SP1.

---

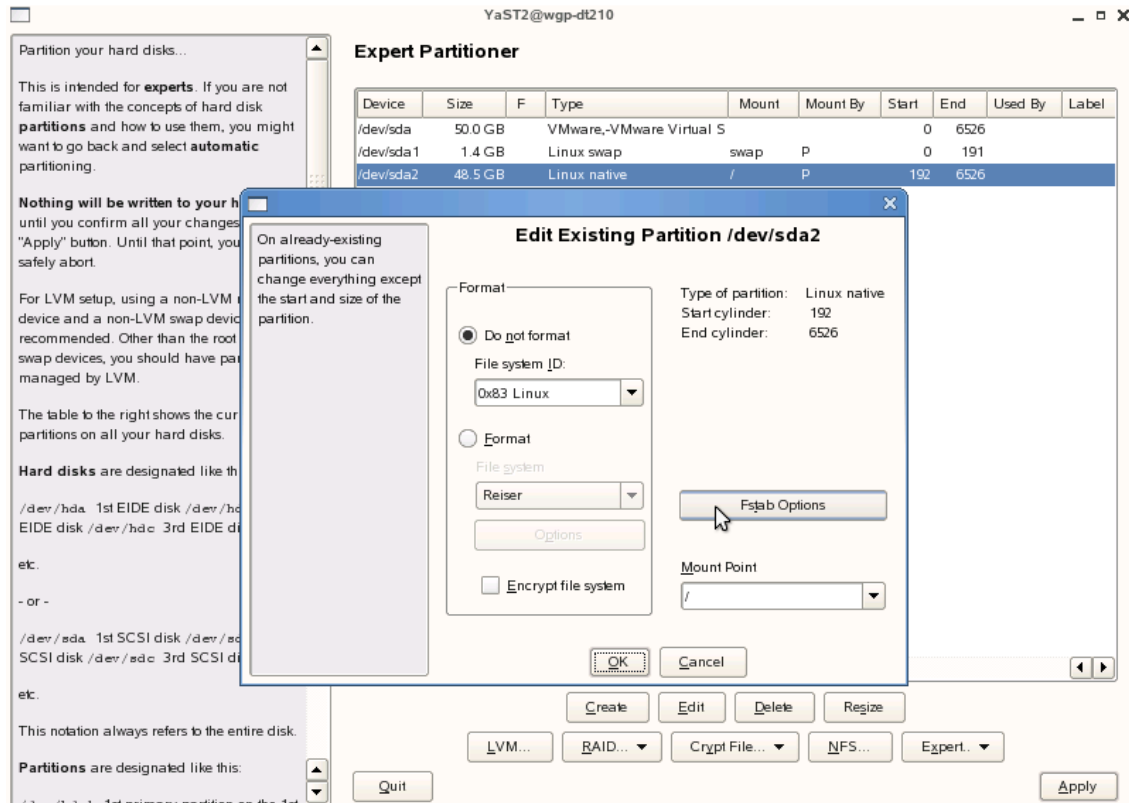
---

**NOTE:** After performing this procedure, do not attempt to boot the OES2 server. Instead, start the upgrade to OES11 SP1.

---

If the mount options are incorrect, use the following procedure to select the applicable one:

- 1 Log on to the OES2 server with root privileges.
- 2 In the terminal, type `yast2 disk`.
- 3 In the *Warning* dialog box, click *Yes*.
- 4 In the *Expert Partitioner* window, select a partition, say *root(/)*, and then click *Edit > Fstab Options*.



- 5 Under the *Fstab options*:, click *Device ID or Device path > OK > OK*.

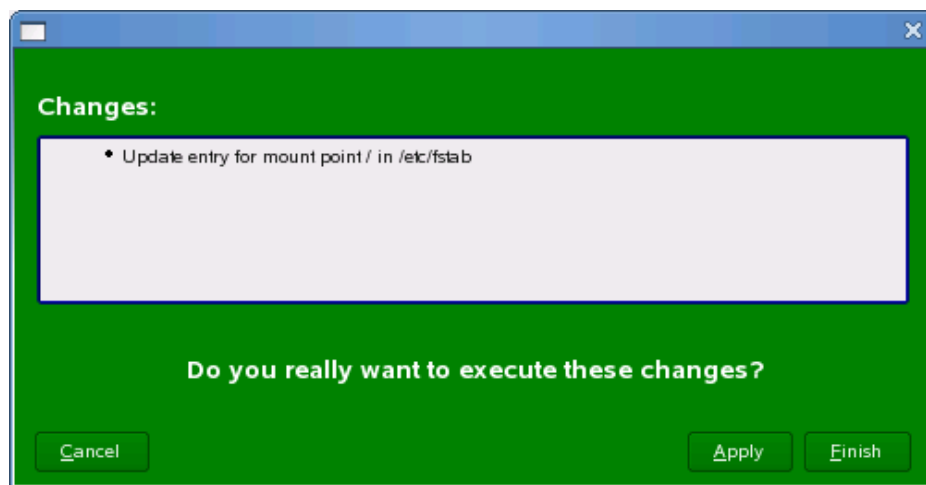
---

**IMPORTANT:** If you plan to clone your hard disks in the future, do not select *Device ID* as a mount option. The cloning process will fail. For more information, see (<http://www.novell.com/support/viewContent.do?externalId=3580082&sliceId=1>)

---

- 6 Repeat [Step 4](#) and [Step 5 on page 120](#) for all the partitions.
- 7 After you have changed the mount options, click *Apply*.
- 8 In the *Changes:* dialog box, click *Finish*.





The mount options are successfully changed.

### 5.3.8 Preparing an Installation Source

Review and complete the instructions for [“Setting Up a Network Installation Source” on page 38](#). We recommend using the network installation option, especially if you are upgrading multiple servers.

## 5.4 Upgrading to OES 11 SP1

Use the following instructions to complete the upgrade applicable to the installation source you are using:

- ♦ [Section 5.4.1, “For Servers with EVMS and LVM on the System Device,” on page 122](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.4.2, “To Upgrade Using a Network Installation Source with DHCP \(Offline\),” on page 122](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.4.3, “Upgrading Using a Network Installation Source without DHCP \(Offline\),” on page 123](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.4.4, “Using Physical Media to Upgrade \(Offline\),” on page 125](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.4.5, “Selecting the Installation Mode Options,” on page 125](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.4.6, “Specifying the Partition to Update,” on page 126](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.4.7, “Specifying the Add-On Product Installation Information,” on page 128](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.4.8, “Verifying and Customizing the Update Options in Installation Settings,” on page 128](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.4.9, “Accepting the Installation Settings,” on page 132](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.4.10, “Specifying Configuration Information,” on page 133](#)

## 5.4.1 For Servers with EVMS and LVM on the System Device

If you are attempting to upgrade an OES 2 SP3 server that has boot and swap partitions controlled by EVMS, to OES 11 SP1, then you must manually perform the following steps before the system reboots, to restore the boot and swap disks to the default `/dev/system/sys_1x` directory.

Do the following before the system reboots:

- 1 Update the `/etc/fstab` file by removing `/evms/lvm2` from the swap and root partitions, and modify the `/dev/evms/` path for `/boot` to `/dev`.
- 2 Remove the `/evms/lvm2` path from the `/boot/grub/menu.lst` file. Optionally, verify if the `/etc/sysconfig/bootloader` file has the correct entry for the boot device.

## 5.4.2 To Upgrade Using a Network Installation Source with DHCP (Offline)

- 1 Ensure that the server meets the upgrade requirements. See [“Meeting the Upgrade Requirements” on page 117](#).
- 2 Insert the *SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 SP2 DVD* into the CD-ROM drive of the server you want to upgrade to OES 11 SP1, then reboot the server.
- 3 From the boot menu, select the following Installation option that matches your environment, but do not press Enter.
  - ♦ **Installation:** The normal installation mode. All modern hardware functions are enabled.
  - ♦ **Installation—ACPI Disabled:** If the normal installation fails, it might be because the system hardware does not support ACPI (advanced configuration and power interface). If this seems to be the case, use this option to install without ACPI support.
  - ♦ **Installation—Local APIC Disabled:** If the normal installation fails, it might be because the system hardware does not support local APIC (advanced programmable interrupt controllers). If this seems to be the case, use this option to install without local APIC support.

If you are not sure, try *Installation—ACPI Disabled* or *Installation—Safe Settings* first.

  - ♦ **Installation—Safe Settings:** Boots the system with the DMA mode (for CD-ROM drives) and power management functions disabled. Experts can also use the command line to enter or change kernel parameters.
- 4 Specify the network installation source.

Because your network has DHCP, you don't need to specify an IP address for the server. However, you do need to specify the path to your network installation source.

Do one of the following:

- ♦ Press F4. Select the network installation type (NFS, FTP, HTTP). Type the server name and installation path of your network installation source, then click OK.

For information on setting up a network installation source, see [“Setting Up a Network Installation Source” on page 38](#).

or

- ♦ Specify the network installation type and path using the *Boot Options* line (see [“Using Custom Boot Options” in the SUSE Linux Enterprise Server Installation and Administration Guide](#) ([http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book\\_sle\\_admin/data/book\\_sle\\_admin\\_pre.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_sle_admin/data/book_sle_admin_pre.html))).

- 5 Press Enter to begin the upgrade.
- 6 Select a language, then click *Next*.

- 7 On the License Agreement page, click *Yes, I Agree to the License Agreement > Next*.
- 8 Follow the prompts, using the information contained in the following sections:
  - 8a “[Selecting the Installation Mode Options](#)” on page 125.
  - 8b “[Specifying the Partition to Update](#)” on page 126.
  - 8c “[Specifying the Add-On Product Installation Information](#)” on page 128.
  - 8d “[Verifying and Customizing the Update Options in Installation Settings](#)” on page 128.
  - 8e “[Accepting the Installation Settings](#)” on page 132.
  - 8f “[Specifying Configuration Information](#)” on page 133.
  - 8g “[Finishing the Upgrade](#)” on page 143.
- 9 Verify that the upgrade was successful. See the procedures in “[Verifying That the Installation Was Successful](#)” on page 106.
- 10 Complete the server setup by following the procedures in “[Completing OES Installation or Upgrade Tasks](#)” on page 159.

### 5.4.3 Upgrading Using a Network Installation Source without DHCP (Offline)

- 1 Ensure that the server meets the upgrade requirements. See “[Meeting the Upgrade Requirements](#)” on page 117.
- 2 Insert *SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 SP2 DVD* into the CD-ROM drive (or the SP2 DVD in a compatible drive) of the server that you are upgrading to OES 11 SP1, then reboot the machine.
- 3 From the CD boot menu, select one of the following Installation options that matches your environment, but do not press Enter.
  - ♦ **Installation:** The normal installation mode. All modern hardware functions are enabled.
  - ♦ **Installation—ACPI Disabled:** If the normal installation fails, it might be because the system hardware does not support ACPI (advanced configuration and power interface). If this seems to be the case, use this option to install without ACPI support.
  - ♦ **Installation—Local APIC Disabled:** If the normal installation fails, this might be because the system hardware does not support local APIC (advanced programmable interrupt controllers). If this seems to be the case, use this option to install without local APIC support.

If you are not sure, try *Installation—ACPI Disabled* or *Installation—Safe Settings* first.

- ♦ **Installation—Safe Settings:** Boots the system with the DMA mode (for CD-ROM drives) and power management functions disabled. Experts can also use the command line to enter or change kernel parameters.
- 4 To proceed with the upgrade, your server must have the following:
    - ♦ An IP address assigned.
    - ♦ The location of your network installation source.

To specify this information on the *Boot Options* line, proceed with [Step 5](#).

To supply the information in a series of dialog boxes, skip to [Step 7](#).

- 5 Specify the server’s IP address information and the path to the installation source on the *Boot Options* line (see “[Using Custom Boot Options](#)” in the *SUSE Linux Enterprise Server Deployment Guide* ([https://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book\\_sle\\_deployment/data/sec\\_deployment\\_remoteinst\\_bootinst.html#sec\\_deployment\\_remoteinst\\_bootinst\\_custom](https://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_sle_deployment/data/sec_deployment_remoteinst_bootinst.html#sec_deployment_remoteinst_bootinst_custom))).
- 6 Press Enter and continue with [Step 24](#).
- 7 Continuing from [Step 4](#), press Enter.

The following error displays.

Could not find the SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 Installation source.  
Activating manual set up program.

- 8 Press Enter.
- 9 Select the language, then select *OK* and press Enter.
- 10 Select a keyboard map, then select *OK* and press Enter.
- 11 Select *Start Installation or System*, then select *OK* and press Enter.
- 12 Select *Start Installation or Update*, then select *OK* and press Enter.
- 13 Select *Network*, then select *OK* and press Enter.
- 14 Select the network protocol that matches the configured protocol on your network installation server, then press Enter.
- 15 (Conditional) If you have more than one network interface card, select one of the cards, then press Enter.  
We recommend *eth0*, if it is connected to the subnet for the primary static IP address used by the server you are upgrading.
- 16 When you are prompted whether you want to use DHCP, select *No*, then press Enter.
- 17 Specify the static IP address of the server you are upgrading, then press Enter.
- 18 Specify the subnet mask, then press Enter.
- 19 Specify the gateway, then press Enter.
- 20 Specify the IP addresses of a name server, then press Enter.
- 21 Specify the IP address of the network installation server, then press Enter.
- 22 (Conditional) Depending on the protocol you specified, you might see additional screens for FTP or HTTP. Select the options that are appropriate for your network, then continue with [Step 23](#).
- 23 Specify the path to your installation source on the network installation server, then press Enter.  
The installation system loads and the YaST install starts.
- 24 Select the language, then click *Next*.
- 25 On the License Agreement page, click *Yes, I Agree to the License Agreement > Next*.
- 26 Follow the prompts, using the information contained in the following sections:
  - 26a [“Selecting the Installation Mode Options” on page 125.](#)
  - 26b [“Specifying the Partition to Update” on page 126.](#)
  - 26c [“Specifying the Add-On Product Installation Information” on page 128.](#)
  - 26d [“Verifying and Customizing the Update Options in Installation Settings” on page 128.](#)
  - 26e [“Accepting the Installation Settings” on page 132.](#)
  - 26f [“Specifying Configuration Information” on page 133.](#)
  - 26g [“Finishing the Upgrade” on page 143.](#)
- 27 Verify that the upgrade was successful. See the procedures in [“Verifying That the Installation Was Successful” on page 106.](#)
- 28 Complete the server setup by following the procedures in [“Completing OES Installation or Upgrade Tasks” on page 159.](#)

## 5.4.4 Using Physical Media to Upgrade (Offline)

- 1 Ensure that the server meets the upgrade requirements. See [“Meeting the Upgrade Requirements” on page 117](#).
- 2 Insert the *SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 SP2 DVD* or the *OES 11 SP1 Integrated DVD* into the CD-ROM or DVD drive of the server that you are upgrading to OES 11 SP1, then reboot the machine.
- 3 From the DVD boot menu, select the *Installation* option that best fits your environment, then press Enter.
- 4 Select the language that you want to use.
- 5 On the License Agreement page, click *Yes, I Agree to the License Agreement > Next*.
- 6 Follow the prompts, using the information contained in the following sections:
  - 6a [“Selecting the Installation Mode Options” on page 125](#).
  - 6b [“Specifying the Partition to Update” on page 126](#).
  - 6c [“Specifying the Add-On Product Installation Information” on page 128](#).
  - 6d [“Verifying and Customizing the Update Options in Installation Settings” on page 128](#).
  - 6e [“Accepting the Installation Settings” on page 132](#).
  - 6f [“Specifying Configuration Information” on page 133](#).
  - 6g [“Finishing the Upgrade” on page 143](#).
- 7 Verify that the upgrade was successful. See the procedures in [“Verifying That the Installation Was Successful” on page 106](#).
- 8 Complete the server setup by following the procedures in [“Completing OES Installation or Upgrade Tasks” on page 159](#).

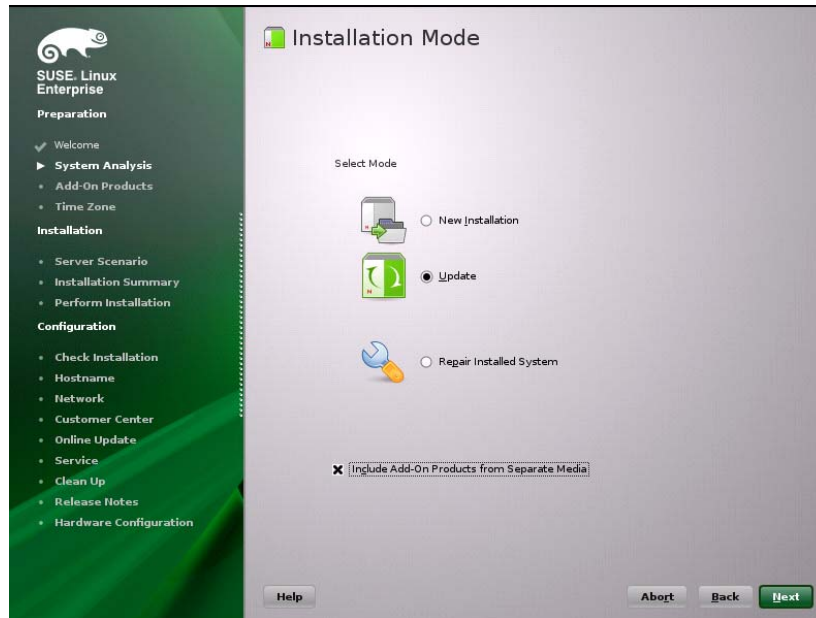
## 5.4.5 Selecting the Installation Mode Options

- 1 When the Installation Mode page displays, select the following menu options:
  1. *Update*
  2. *Include Add-On Products from Separate Media*

---

**IMPORTANT:** To upgrade previously installed OES services and install any additional OES services, you must select the *Include Add-On Products from Separate Media* option. If you don't, only SLES is updated (if necessary). None of the OES services are upgraded.

---



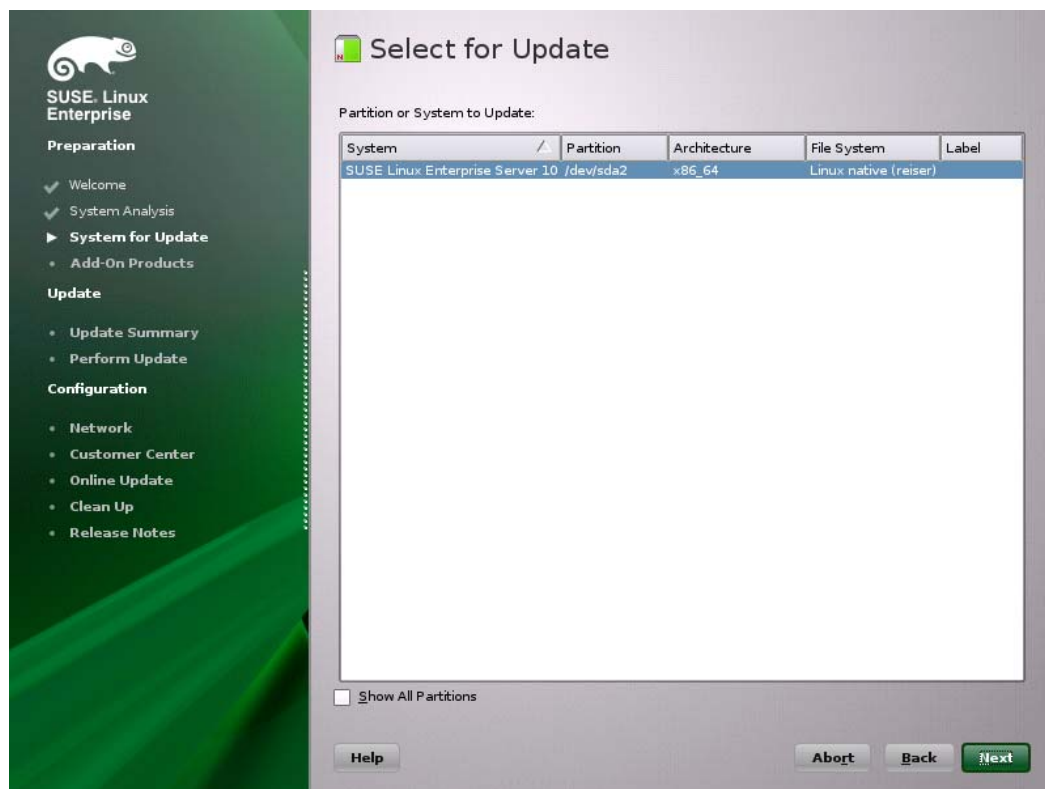
- 2 Click *Next*.
- 3 Continue with [“Specifying the Partition to Update” on page 126](#) or [“Specifying the Add-On Product Installation Information” on page 128](#), depending on which matches your installation.

## 5.4.6 Specifying the Partition to Update

YaST tries to determine the correct root (/) partition. If there are several possibilities, or if YaST can't definitely determine the correct root partition, the Select for Update page displays.

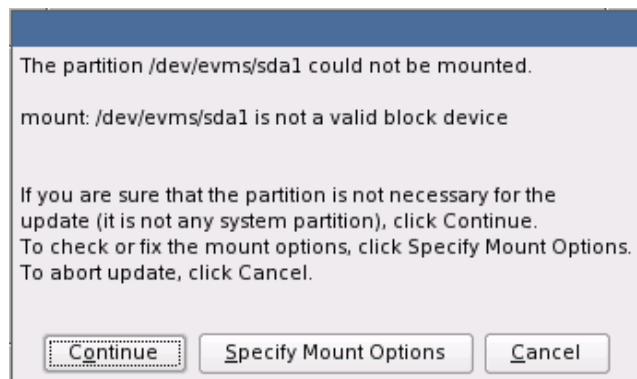
- 1 If there is only one partition listed, click *Next*.
- 2 If there are several partitions, select the partition with `/1vm` in the path.
- 3 Click *Next*.

YaST reads the old `fstab` on this partition to analyze and mount the file systems listed there.

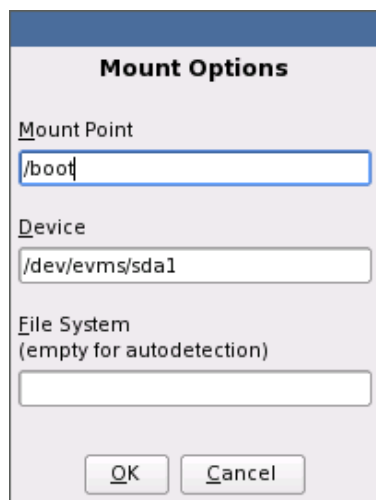


Next, YaST tries to mount the boot (/boot) partition.

- 4 If no error displays, skip to [“Specifying the Add-On Product Installation Information” on page 128.](#)



- 5 If this error displays, click *Specify Mount Options*.  
The Mount Options dialog box appears.



The image shows a 'Mount Options' dialog box. It has a title bar with the text 'Mount Options'. Below the title bar, there are three labeled text input fields: 'Mount Point' with the value '/boot', 'Device' with the value '/dev/evms/sda1', and 'File System' with the text '(empty for autodetection)' below it. At the bottom of the dialog box, there are two buttons: 'OK' and 'Cancel'.

- 6 Click OK.
- 7 Continue with [“Specifying the Add-On Product Installation Information”](#) on page 128.

## 5.4.7 Specifying the Add-On Product Installation Information

- 1 When the Add-On Product Installation page displays, click *Add*.
- 2 In the Add-On Product Media page, if you are installing from physical media, click *CD > Next*. Otherwise, skip to [Step 3](#).
  - 2a In the Insert the Add-On Product CD dialog box, select the drive where you want to insert the CD labeled *Novell Open Enterprise Server 11 SP1 CD* if there is more than one drive.
  - 2b Click *Eject*.
  - 2c Insert the CD labeled *Novell Open Enterprise Server 11 SP1 CD*, click *Continue*, then skip to [Step 4](#).
- 3 If you are using an alternate installation source, such as a network location, click the appropriate option, such as the network protocol that matches your installation source, then click *Next* and specify the information for the source you have specified.
- 4 Read and accept the Novell Open Enterprise Server 11 SP1 license agreement, then click *Next*.
- 5 Confirm that the Add-On Product Installation page shows the correct path to the OES media, then click *Next*.

## 5.4.8 Verifying and Customizing the Update Options in Installation Settings

---

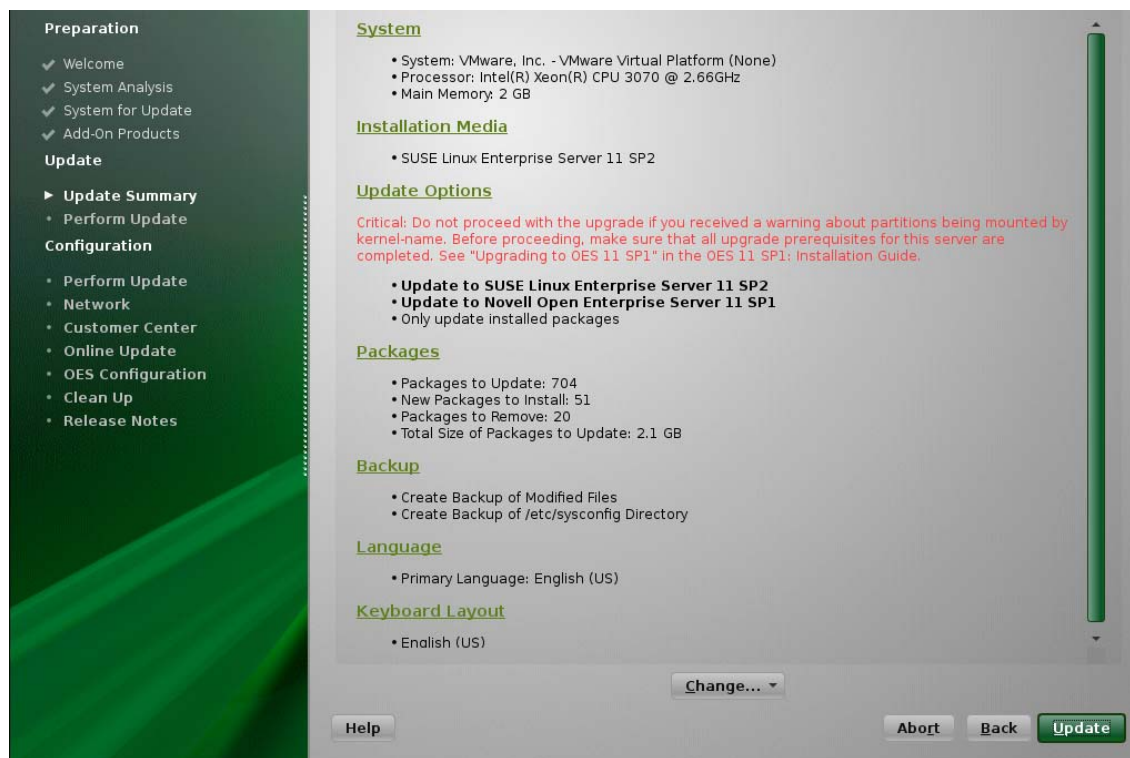
**IMPORTANT:** To verify that previously installed services are selected for installation and to install any additional OES services during the upgrade, you must customize the Update Options on the Installation Settings page.

---

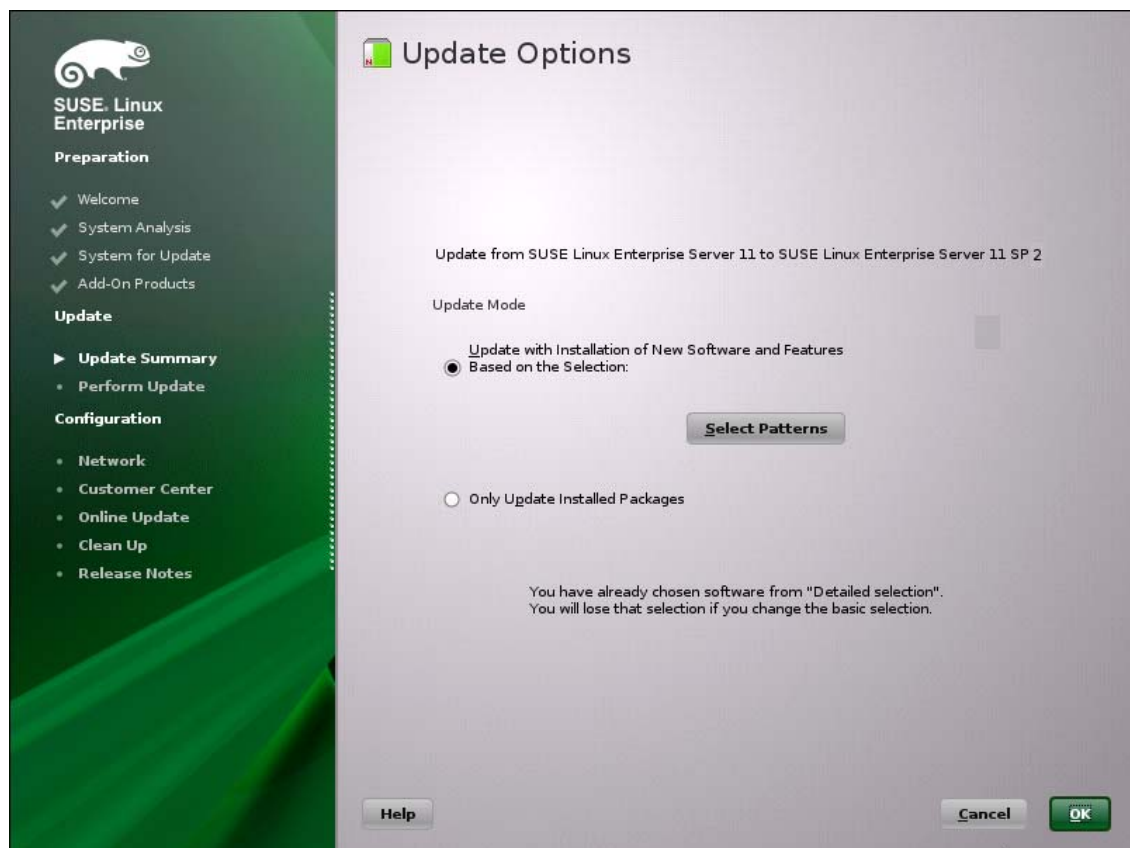
To verify or customize the software packages that are installed on the server:

- 1 On the Installation Settings page, make sure Novell Open Enterprise Server 11 SP1 is listed under the *Add-On Products* link. If it is, proceed with [Step 3](#).





- 2 If Novell Open Enterprise Server is not listed, click the *Add-On Products* link and follow the steps in [“Specifying the Add-On Product Installation Information” on page 128](#). When the Installation Settings page shows Novell Open Enterprise Server 11 SP1 as an installation setting, proceed with [Step 3](#).
- 3 If you see package conflict errors (red text under the *Packages* link), refer to the [OES 11 SP1: Readme](#) for resolution instructions.
- 4 On the Installation Settings page, click *Update Options*.
- 5 In the Update Options page, click *Update with Installation of New Software and Features Based on the Selection > Select Patterns*.



- 6 All of the OES Services patterns that were previously installed are selected by default.

Ensure that the patterns for the services you are upgrading are selected, and select the patterns for any new OES Services patterns that you might want to also install.

A description displays to the right of a pattern when the pattern is selected. For a description of OES Services patterns and the components selected with each pattern, see [Table 2-5 on page 29](#).

Some OES services, such as Novell CIFS and Novell Samba, are not supported together on the same server. For more information, see “[Unsupported Service Combinations](#)” in the *OES 11 SP1: Planning and Implementation Guide*.

---

**IMPORTANT:** If you deselect a pattern after selecting it, you are instructing the installation program to not install that pattern and all of its dependent patterns. Rather than deselecting a pattern, click *Cancel* to cancel your software selections, then click the *Select Patterns* heading again to choose your selections again.

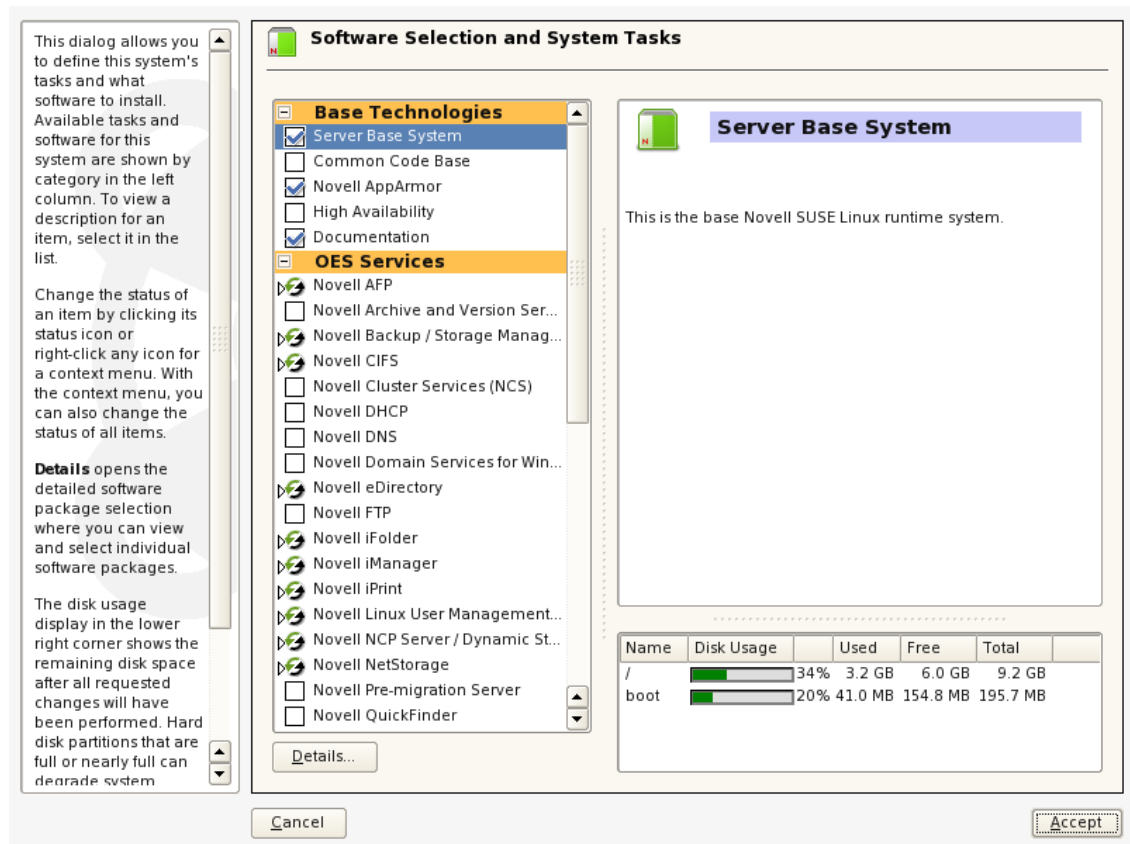
Selecting only the patterns that you want to install ensures that the patterns and their dependent patterns and packages are installed.

If you click *Accept*, then return to software pattern selection page, the selections that you made become your base selections and must be deselected if you want to remove them from the installation proposal.

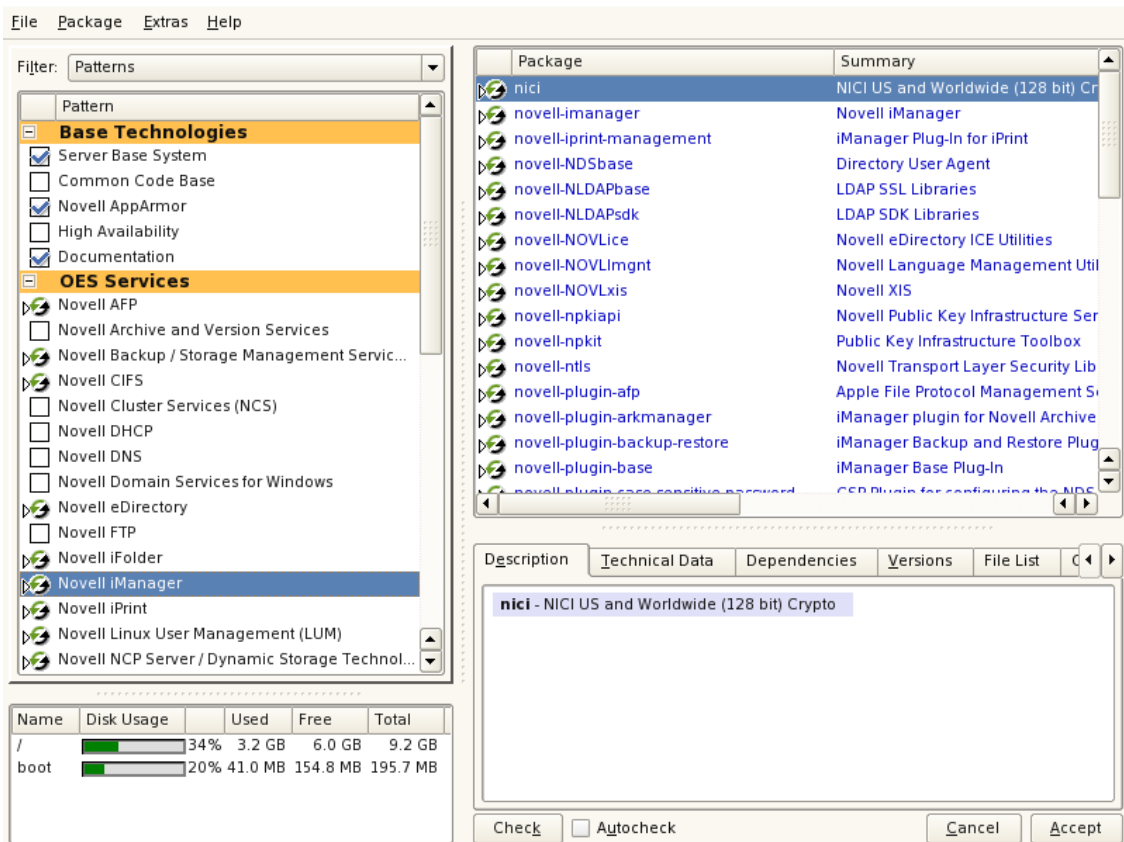
Attempting to uninstall a service by deselecting its pattern is not recommended. For more information, see [Chapter 12, “Disabling OES 11 Services,” on page 217](#).

---

Selecting a pattern automatically selects the other patterns that it depends on to complete the installation.



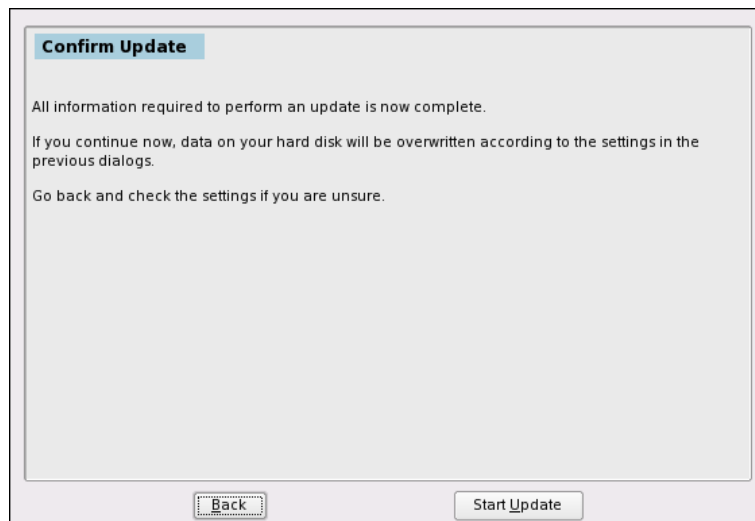
7 If you want to see the details of your selections, click *Details*.



- 8 When you have the software components selected that you want to install, click *Accept*.
- 9 When the notification about deleting unmaintained packages appears, click *OK*.
- 10 (Conditional) If the prompt for the AGFA Fonts license displays, read the agreement, then click *Accept*.
- 11 (Conditional) If the prompt for *Automatic Changes* displays, click *Continue*.
- 12 (Conditional) If you are prompted, resolve any dependency conflicts.
- 13 If the Update Options page displays again, click *Accept*.
- 14 Continue with [“Accepting the Installation Settings”](#) on page 132.

## 5.4.9 Accepting the Installation Settings

- 1 Review the final Installation Settings page to ensure that you have all the Installation settings you desire. Make sure that the page shows all the OES Services that you want to update and install.
- 2 After you have changed all the installation settings as desired, click *Accept*.
- 3 In the Confirm Update dialog box, click *Start Update*.



The base installation settings are applied and the packages are installed.

- 4 While the server is updating the files, do one of the following:
  - ♦ For installations using a network installation source, remove the boot CD (*SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 SP2 DVD1*) from the CD drive.
  - ♦ For installations using a CD or DVD installation source, leave the CD or DVD in the CD-ROM or DVD drive. When the installation process prompts you for each CD at the appropriate time, insert the CD. The progress status at the bottom of the screen indicates which CD will be prompted for next.
- 5 After the server reboots, continue with [“Specifying Configuration Information” on page 57](#).

---

**TIP:** If you have the disk driver situation mentioned in [Step 7 on page 128](#), your server boots to a prompt for the root password. Specify the password, and then use an editor such as VI to modify the `/etc/fstab` file so that the path to the boot partition uses `sda` instead of `hda`. Then reboot the server. The upgrade should continue normally.

---

## 5.4.10 Specifying Configuration Information

When the server reboots, you are required to complete the following configuration information:

- ♦ [“Testing the Connection to the Internet” on page 133](#)
- ♦ [“Specifying Novell Customer Center Configuration Settings” on page 134](#)
- ♦ [“Updating the Server Software During the Upgrade” on page 136](#)
- ♦ [“Upgrading eDirectory” on page 140](#)
- ♦ [“Specifying LDAP Configuration Settings” on page 140](#)
- ♦ [“Configuring Novell Open Enterprise Server Services” on page 141](#)

### Testing the Connection to the Internet

On the Test Internet Connection page:

- 1 Select *Yes, Test Connection to the Internet*, click *Next*.
- 2 Obtaining the latest SUSE release notes might fail at this point. If it does, view the log to verify that the network configuration is correct, then click *Next*.

- 3 If the network configuration is not correct, click *Back > Back* and fix your network configuration. See [“Network Interface” on page 58](#). The most common problem is that an invalid DNS server is specified.

or

Skip this test by clicking *No, Skip This Test*, then continue with [Step 4](#).

---

**IMPORTANT:** Most OES services configurations require a connection to the Internet.

Skipping this test also skips downloading release notes, configuring the Novell Customer Center, and updating online.

---

- 4 If you skipped the customer center test, continue with [“Upgrading eDirectory” on page 140](#). Otherwise, continue with [“Specifying Novell Customer Center Configuration Settings” on page 134](#).

## Specifying Novell Customer Center Configuration Settings

To receive support and updates for your OES 11 SP1 server, you need to register it in the Novell Customer Center. When the Novell Customer Center Configuration page is displayed, you have three options:

- ♦ [“Updating a Registered Server \(Recommended\)” on page 134](#)
- ♦ [“Registering the Server Later / Skipping a Registered Server Update” on page 134](#)
- ♦ [“Registering the Server During the Upgrade” on page 134](#)

### Updating a Registered Server (Recommended)

- 1 If you have already registered your OES 11 SP1 server and you want to download the available patches, leave *Configure Now* selected and click *Next*.  
YaST contacts the server (which might take a few minutes) and then downloads the available patches.
- 2 Go to [Step 8 on page 136](#).

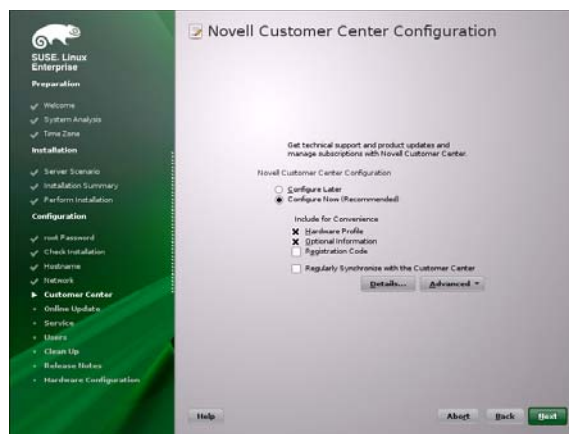
### Registering the Server Later / Skipping a Registered Server Update

- 1 Click *Configure Later*.
- 2 Continue with [“Upgrading eDirectory” on page 140](#).

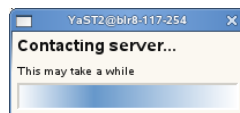
### Registering the Server During the Upgrade

- 1 On the Novell Customer Center Configuration configuration page, select all of the following options, then click *Next*.

Option	What it Does
<i>Configure Now</i>	Proceeds with registering this server and the SLES 11 SP2 and OES product in the Novell Customer Center.
<i>Hardware Profile</i>	Sends information to the Novell Customer Center about the hardware that you are installing SLES 11 SP2 and OES 11 SP1 on.
<i>Optional Information</i>	Sends optional information to the Novell Customer Center for your registration. For this release, this option doesn't send any additional information.
<i>Registration Code</i>	Makes the registration with activation codes mandatory.
<i>Regularly Synchronize with the Customer Center</i>	Keeps the installation sources for this server valid. It does not remove any installation sources that were manually added.



- 2 After you click *Next*, the following message is displayed. Wait until this message disappears and the Manual Interaction Required page displays.



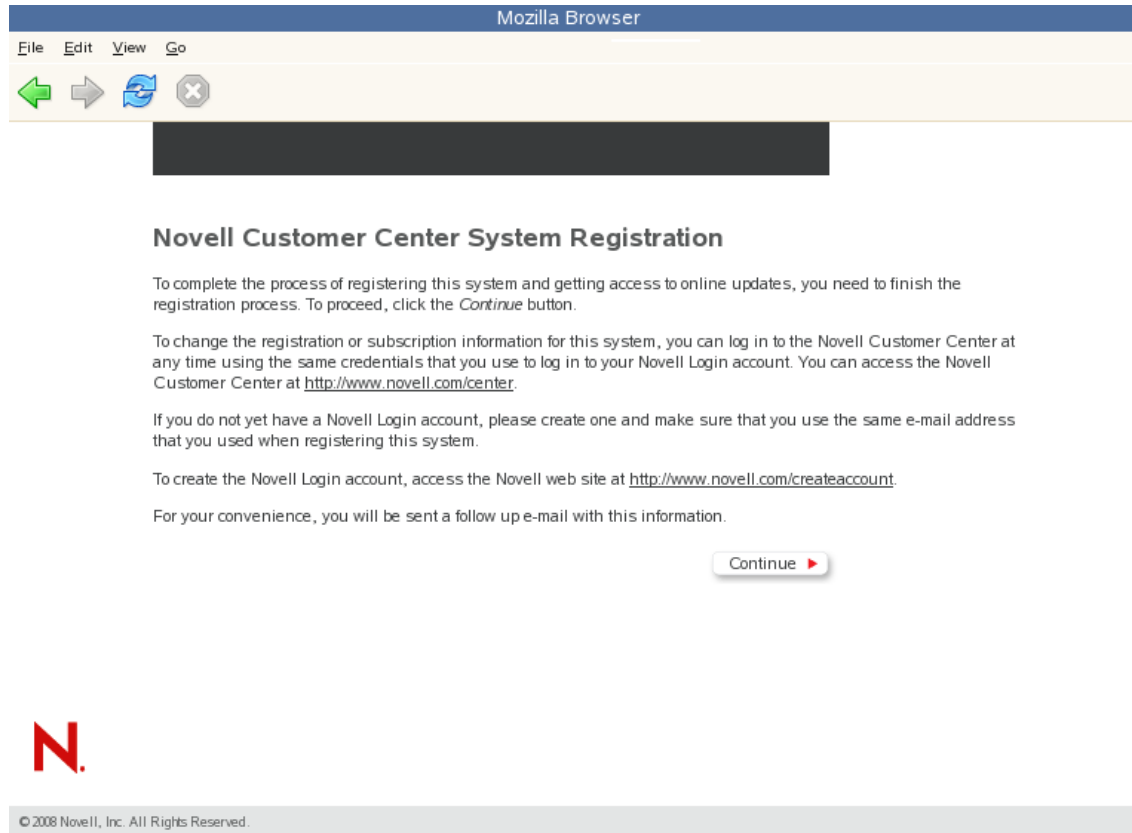
- 3 On the Manual Interaction Required page, note the information that you will be required to specify, then click *Continue*.
- 4 On the Novell Customer Center Registration page, specify the required information in the following fields:

- ♦ **Email Address:** The e-mail address for your Novell Login account.
- ♦ **Confirm Email Address:** The same e-mail address for your Novell Login account
- ♦ **Activation Code for SLES Components (optional):** Specify your purchased or 60-day evaluation registration code for the SLES 11 SP2 product.  
If you don't specify a code, the server cannot receive any updates or patches.
- ♦ **Activation Code for OES Components (optional):** Specify your purchased or 60-day evaluation registration code for the OES 11 SP1 product.  
If you don't specify a code, the server cannot receive any updates or patches.

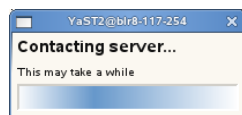
- ♦ **System Name or Description (optional):** The hostname for the system is specified by default.

If you want to change this to a description, for the Novell Customer Center, specify a description to identify this server.

- 5 Click *Submit*.
- 6 When the message to complete the registration displays, click *Continue*.



- 7 After you click *Continue*, the following message is displayed with the Manual Interaction Required page. Wait until this message disappears and Novell Customer Center Configuration page displays with the message that Your configuration was successful.



- 8 When you see the message Your configuration was successful on the Novell Customer Center Configuration, click *Ok*.
- 9 Continue with [“Updating the Server Software” on page 63](#).

## Updating the Server Software During the Upgrade

If you have a successful connection to the Internet and have registered the server in the Novell Customer Center, the server displays the Online Update page. You can run the online update now or skip it and get updates later.

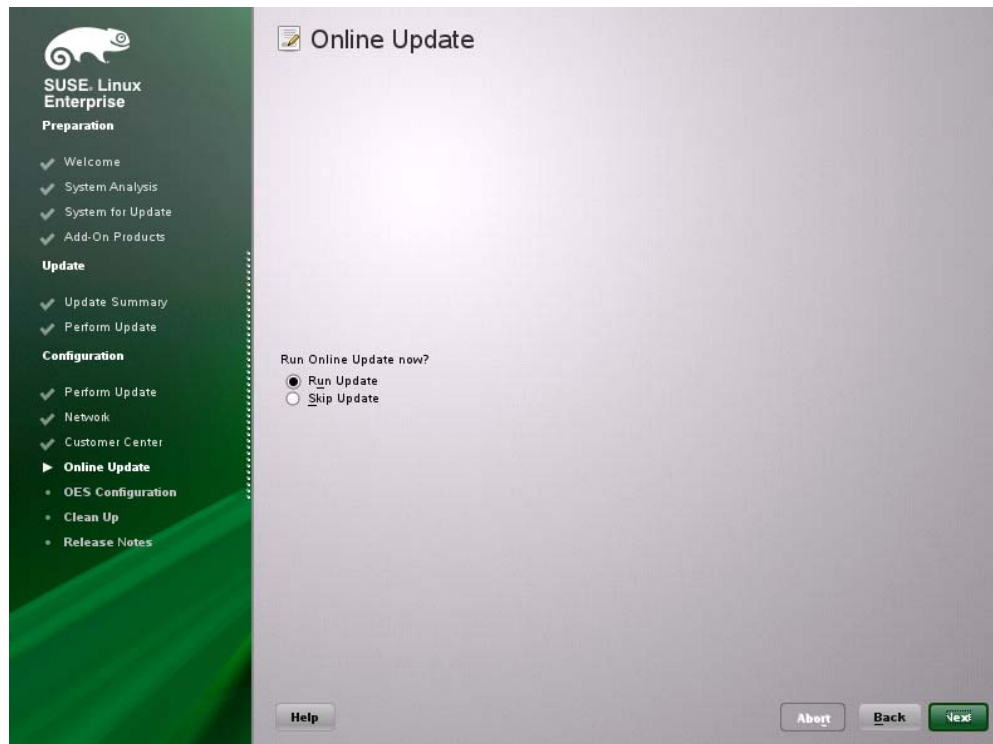


To skip getting updates during the upgrade:

- 1 On the Online Update page, click *Skip Update*.
- 2 Continue with [“Upgrading eDirectory” on page 140](#).

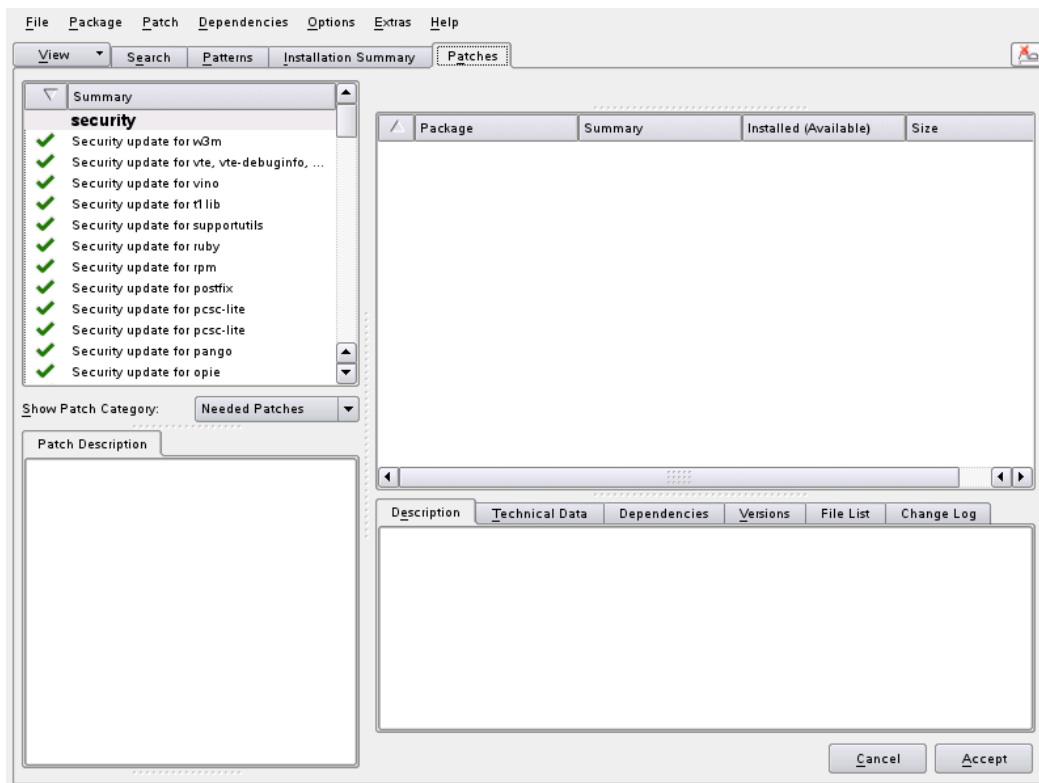
To get updates during the upgrade:

- 1 On the Online Update page, click *Run Update*.

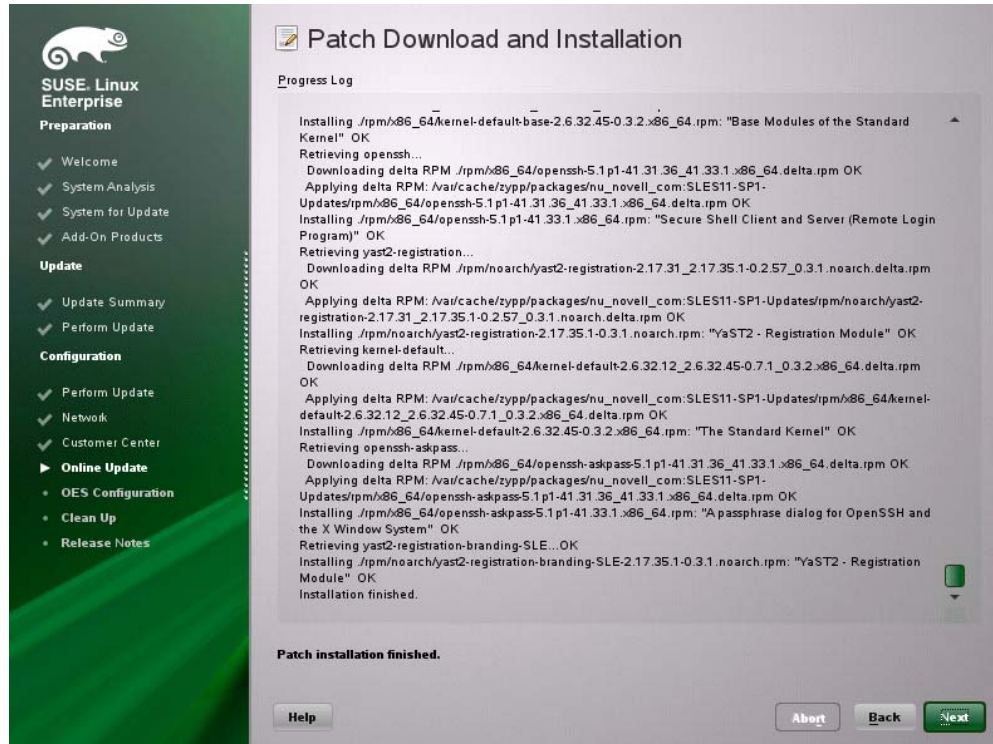


- 2 On the page that shows that updates are available, select the updates that you want to install, then click *Accept*.

The check marks that are shown in the summary column of the patches list are the patches that have already been installed on your system.



- 3 When you see the message, **Installation finished** on the Patch Download and Installation page, click **Next**.



- 4 If the update makes changes to YaST, the following message displays. If so, click **OK** to restart YaST.

Packages for package management were updated.  
Finishing and restarting now.

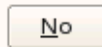
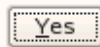


- 5 If the installation was interrupted, the following message might display. If so, click *Yes* to continue with the installation, and enter the root password.

**Starting Installation...**

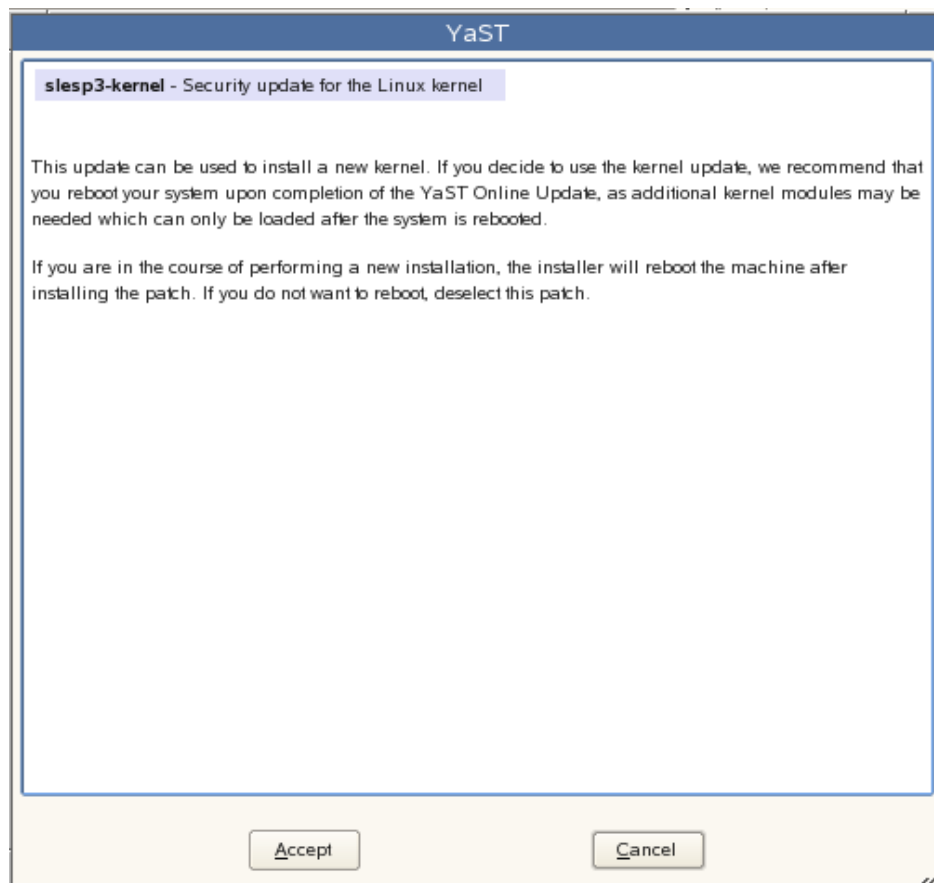
The previous installation has failed.  
Would you like it to continue?

Note: You may have to enter some information again.



The online update displays again with additional updates. If a patch has changes to the kernel, you might want to deselect it and install it later after the installation is complete.

- 6 If you do install patches that have changes to the kernel, click *OK* when you see the following message.



- 7 After all the patches are installed, continue with [“Upgrading eDirectory”](#) on page 140.

## Upgrading eDirectory

OES 11 includes eDirectory 8.8.6.

- 1 When the following dialog box appears, click *Upgrade*.



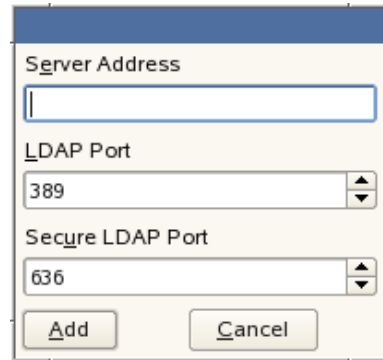
- 2 On the eDirectory Upgrade - Existing Server Information page, type the Admin password.
- 3 Click *Next*.
- 4 On the Novell Modular Authentication Service page, click *Next*.
- 5 Continue with [“Specifying LDAP Configuration Settings” on page 140](#).

## Specifying LDAP Configuration Settings

Many of the OES services require eDirectory. If eDirectory was not selected as a product to upgrade or install but other OES services that do require LDAP services were installed, the LDAP Configuration service displays so that you can complete the required information.

- 1 In the *eDirectory Tree Name* field, specify the name for the existing eDirectory tree that you are installing this server into.
- 2 In the *Admin Name and Context* field, specify the name and context for user Admin on the existing tree.
- 3 In the *Admin Password Name* field, specify a password for user for user Admin on the existing tree.
- 4 Add the LDAP servers that you want the services on this server to use. The servers that you add should hold the master or a read/write replica of eDirectory. Do the following for each server you want to add.
  - 4a Click *Add*.
  - 4b In the next dialog box, specify the following information for the server to add, then click *Add*.
    - ♦ Server IP Address
    - ♦ LDAP port

- ◆ Secure LDAP port



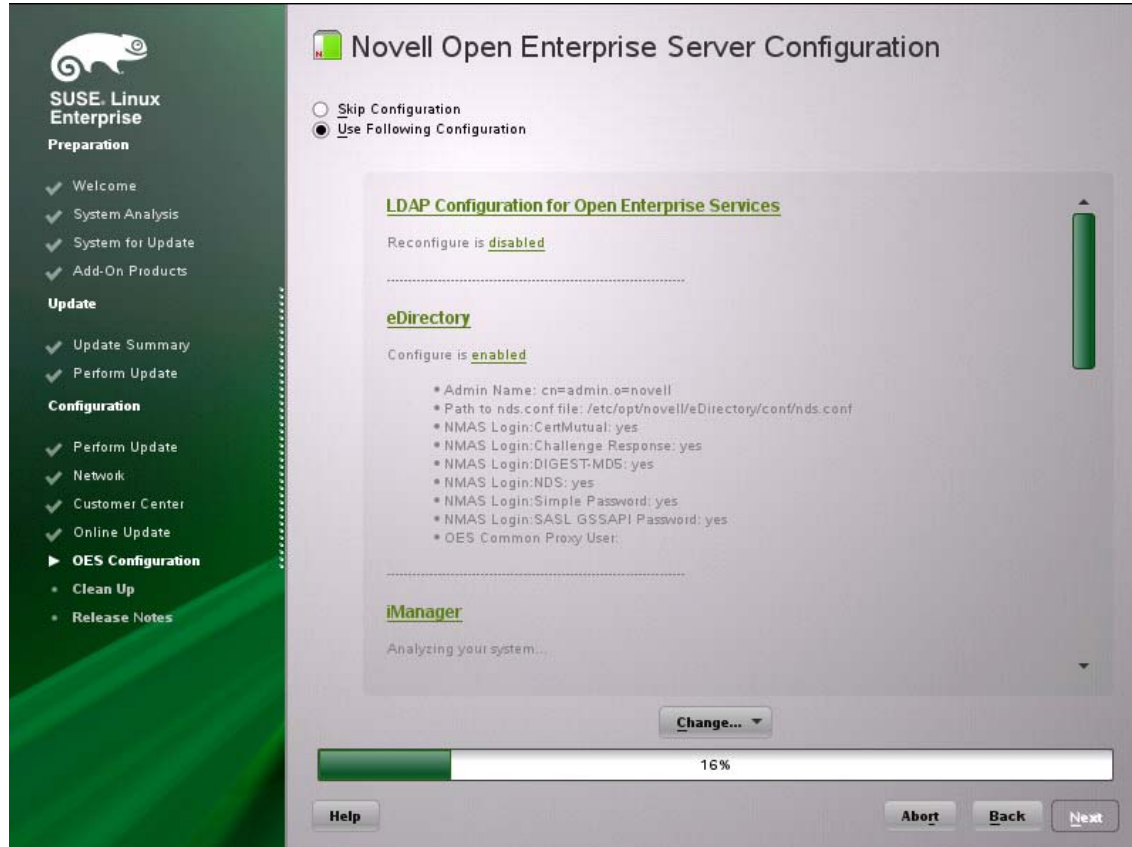
A dialog box titled "LDAP Configuration" with a blue header. It contains three input fields: "Server Address" (empty), "LDAP Port" (set to 389), and "Secure LDAP Port" (set to 636). At the bottom are "Add" and "Cancel" buttons.

- 4c** Click *Add*.
- 4d** (Optional) Repeat [Step 4a](#) through [Step 4c](#) to add additional servers.
- 5** When all the LDAP servers that you want to specify are listed, click *Next*.
- 6** Continue with [“Configuring Novell Open Enterprise Server Services”](#) on page 141.

## Configuring Novell Open Enterprise Server Services

After you complete the LDAP configuration or eDirectory configuration, the *Novell Open Enterprise Server Configuration* summary page is displayed, showing all the OES components you updated and installed and their configuration settings.

- 1** Review the setting for each component and click the component heading to change any settings.



When you specify the configuration information for OES services, see the information in [“Configuration Guidelines for OES Services” on page 78](#); or, if you are reading online, click a link below:

- ◆ [AFP](#)
- ◆ [Archive and Version Services](#)
- ◆ [Backup/Storage Management Services \(SMS\)](#)
- ◆ [CIFS](#)
- ◆ [Clustering \(NCS\)](#)
- ◆ [DHCP](#)
- ◆ [DNS](#)
- ◆ [Domain Services for Windows \(DSfW\)](#)
- ◆ [eDirectory](#)
- ◆ [FTP](#)
- ◆ [iFolder](#)
- ◆ [iManager](#)
- ◆ [iPrint](#)
- ◆ [Linux User Management \(LUM\)](#)
- ◆ [NCP Server/Dynamic Storage Technology](#)
- ◆ [NetStorage](#)
- ◆ [Pre-Migration Server](#)
- ◆ [QuickFinder](#)
- ◆ [Novell Remote Manager \(NRM\)](#)
- ◆ [Novell Samba](#)
- ◆ [Novell Storage Services](#)

**2** When you are satisfied with the settings for each component, click *Next*.

**3** When you confirm the OES component configurations, you might receive the following error:

The proposal contains an error that must be resolved before continuing.

If this error is displayed, check the summary list of configured products for any messages immediately below each product heading. These messages indicate products or services that need to be configured. If you are running the YaST graphical interface, the messages are red text. If you are using the YaST text-based interface, they are not red.

For example, if you selected Linux User Management in connection with other OES products or services, you might see a message similar to the following:

Linux User Management needs to be configured before you can continue or disable the configuration.

If you see a message like this, do the following:

**3a** On the summary page, click the heading for the component.

**3b** Supply the missing information in each configuration page.

When you specify the configuration information for OES services during the upgrade, see the information in [“Configuration Guidelines for OES Services” on page 78](#).

When you have finished the configuration of that component, you are returned to the Novell Open Enterprise Server Configuration summary page.

- 3c If you want to skip the configuration of a specific component and configure it later, click *Enabled* in the *Configuration is enabled* status to change the status to *Configuration is disabled*.  
If you change the status to *Configuration is disabled*, you must configure the OES components after the installation is complete. See [“Installing or Configuring OES 11 SP1 on an Existing Server” on page 109](#).
- 4 After resolving all product configuration problems, click *Next* to proceed with the configuration of all services and installation of iManager plug-ins.
- 5 When the Readme page displays, click *Next* and continue with [Section 5.5, “Finishing the Upgrade,” on page 143](#).

## 5.5 Finishing the Upgrade

After a successful configuration, YaST shows the Installation Completed page.

- 1 Deselect *Clone This System for AutoYaST*. Cloning is selected by default.  
This increases the speed of finishing the installation update.  
AutoYaST is a system for automatically installing one or more SUSE Linux Enterprise systems without user intervention. Although you can create a profile from a system that has been upgraded, it does not work to upgrade a similar system.
- 2 Finish the upgrade by clicking *Finish* on the Installation Completed page.

## 5.6 Using AutoYaST for an OES 11 SP1 Upgrade

If you are a system administrator who needs to upgrade multiple OES 2 or OES 11 servers, it can be time-consuming and inconvenient to repeat the process of swapping installation discs and providing necessary upgrade information. You can now use AutoYaST to upgrade an OES 2 (64-bit) or OES 11 server to OES 11 SP1 with no user intervention. Ensure to use the integrated OES 11 SP1 ISO (OES11-SP1-addon\_with\_SLES11-SP2-x86\_64-DVD.iso) for the upgrade.

---

**IMPORTANT:** Information mentioned in this section is critical. Failing to abide might result in loss of data or the OES server becoming unrecoverable. Before performing these procedures in a live environment, it is strongly recommended to try them on a test environment to familiarize with the unattended upgrade process.

---

- ♦ [Section 5.6.1, “Prerequisites,” on page 143](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.6.2, “Remastering the Integrated ISO without the add\\_on\\_products.xml,” on page 144](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.6.3, “Creating an Answer File to Provide the eDirectory and DSfW Passwords,” on page 144](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.6.4, “Upgrading an OES 2 \(64-bit\) Server to OES 11 SP1,” on page 145](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.6.5, “Upgrading an OES 2 \(64-bit\) XEN Guest Server to OES 11 SP1,” on page 146](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.6.6, “Troubleshooting an AutoYaST Upgrade,” on page 147](#)

### 5.6.1 Prerequisites

- ♦ Identify the 64-bit OES 2 SP2, OES 2 SP3 or OES 11 server that you want to upgrade, and ensure that the latest patches are applied before starting the upgrade. Ensure that you meet all the OES 11 SP1 upgrade requirements specified in [Section 5.3, “Meeting the Upgrade Requirements,” on page 117](#).



- Ensure that you have the eDirectory replica server IP address and eDirectory credentials.
- Ensure that the replica server is reachable over the network.
- Ensure that the correct eDirectory replica server's IP address is present in the eDirectory install configuration file (for OES 2 SP2, the file name is `edir2_sp2`, for OES 2 SP3, it is `edir2_sp3` and for OES 11, it is `edir11`) at `/etc/sysconfig/novell/` as shown below:  

```
CONFIG_EDIR_REPLICA_SERVER=<specify the eDirectory Replica IP>"
```
- Download the `OES11-SP1-addon_with_SLES11-SP2-x86_64-DVD.iso`, remove the `add_on_products.xml` and then remaster the ISO. Use the remastered ISO for the upgrade. For more information, see [Section 5.6.2, “Remastering the Integrated ISO without the add\\_on\\_products.xml,” on page 144.](#)
- Create an answer file that provides the eDirectory password. For more information, see [Section 5.6.3, “Creating an Answer File to Provide the eDirectory and DSfW Passwords,” on page 144.](#)

## 5.6.2 Remastering the Integrated ISO without the add\_on\_products.xml

For a truly unattended OES 11 SP1 upgrade from OES 2 or OES 11, use the remastered integrated ISO (`OES11-SP1-addon_with_SLES11-SP2-x86_64-DVD.iso`) that does not have the `add_on_products.xml` file.

To remaster the ISO:

1. Download the `OES11-SP1-addon_with_SLES11-SP2-x86_64-DVD.iso` and loop mount it under any directory using the following command.

```
mount -o loop OES11-SP1-addon_with_SLES11-SP2-x86_64-DVD.iso /mnt/autoupgrade
```

It gets mounted in read-only mode.

2. Copy the `autoupgrade` folder to another location, and then delete the `add_on_products.xml` file.

```
cp -r /mnt/autoupgrade /tmp
```

3. Remaster the `OES11-SP1-addon_with_SLES11-SP2-x86_64-DVD.iso` without the `add_on_products.xml` file.

```
mkisofs -R -b boot/x86_64/loader/isolinux.bin -c boot.cat -no-emul-boot -boot-load-size 4 -boot-info-table -o /tmp/SLES11-with-OES11-SP1.iso /tmp/autoupgrade
```

## 5.6.3 Creating an Answer File to Provide the eDirectory and DSfW Passwords

During an AutoYaST upgrade, the system requires user input only to provide the eDirectory and DSfW passwords. Even this intervention can be eliminated with the help of an answer file.

---

**WARNING:** During the answer file creation, no validation is performed on the passwords you enter. On entering a wrong password, the upgrade will fail, and the server that you are upgrading will become unrecoverable.

---

To create an answer file use any one of the following methods:

- 1 Direct Generation of the Answer Key File

Log in to your OES 2 (64-bit) machine as a root user and execute the following command:



```
yast2 /usr/share/YaST2/clients/create-answer-file.ycp <eDirectory password>
[<DsFW Administrator Password for a DsFW server upgrade>]
```

---

**NOTE:** This method is not recommended as the passwords are stored in the `y2log` file in clear text.

---

## 2 Exporting the Passwords to Variables

In the terminal window, type the following commands:

- ♦ `export OES_EDIR_DATA=<specify eDirectory Administrator Password>`
- ♦ `export OES-DSFW_DATA=<specify the DsFW Administrator Password for a DsFW server upgrade>`
- ♦ `yast2 /usr/share/yast2/clients/create-answer-file.ycp`

## 3 Using the GUI on OES 11 SP1 and above

**3a** In the terminal window, type the following command:

```
yast2 /usr/share/yast2/clients/create-answer-file.ycp
```

**3b** In the YaST2 dialog, provide the eDirectory and DSfW passwords, then click OK.

---

**NOTE:** DSfW password should be specified only if you are upgrading a DSfW server.

---

Once you have successfully generated the answer key file using any of the above stated methods, copy it from the current working directory to `/opt/novell/oes-install/`.

---

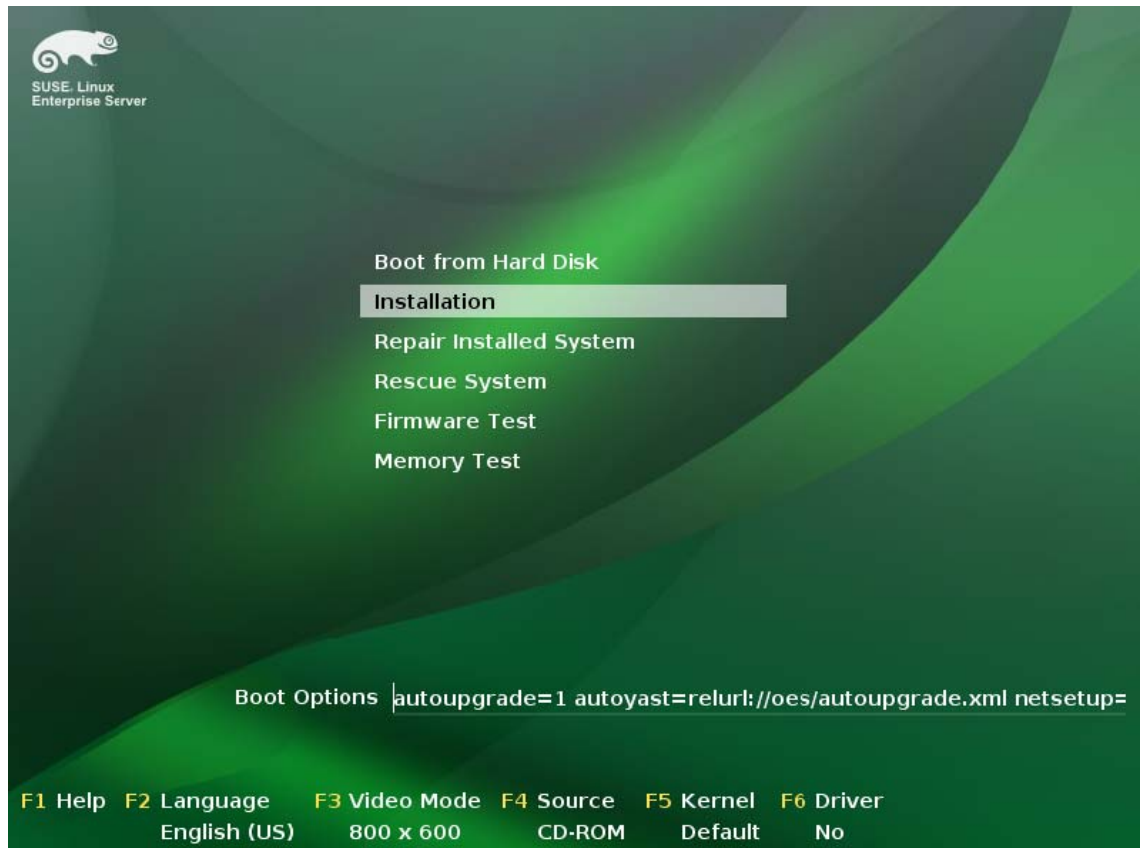
**TIP:** To invoke help for creating the answer key file, in the terminal window, type `yast2 create-answer-file.ycp --help`.

---

## 5.6.4 Upgrading an OES 2 (64-bit) Server to OES 11 SP1

Ensure that you have met all the requirements listed in [Section 5.6.1, “Prerequisites,” on page 143](#).

- 1 Use the remastered integrated iso (`OES11-SP1-addon_with_SLES11-SP2-x86_64-DVD.iso`) to boot the OES 2 or the OES 11 machine that you want to upgrade.



- 2 In the installation screen, select *Install*, and specify the following information:

```
autoupgrade=1 autoyast=relurl://oes/autoupgrade.xml netsetup=hostip
hostip=<enter the host IP> netmask=<enter the netmask IP> gateway=<enter the
gateway IP> netdevice=<If you have multiple Network Interface Cards (NIC),
enter the NIC name through which you will access the installation source. For
example, netdevice=eth1. This entry is not required if you have only one NIC.>
```

For example:

```
autoupgrade=1 autoyast=relurl://oes/autoupgrade.xml netsetup=hostip
hostip=192.168.1.225 netmask=255.255.254.0 gateway=192.168.1.254
```

- 3 Press Enter.

The upgrade proceeds without any user intervention.

## 5.6.5 Upgrading an OES 2 (64-bit) XEN Guest Server to OES 11 SP1

Ensure that you have met all the requirements listed in [Section 5.6.1, “Prerequisites,”](#) on page 143.

- 1 Shut down the guest machine.
- 2 Open the guest machine's XML file at `/etc/xen/vm`, delete the boot loader entry, then save the file.
- 3 Use the following command to delete the guest machine:

```
xm delete <guest machine>
```
- 4 Use the following command to start the virtual manager GUI:

```
os=sles11; vm-install --vm-settings /etc/xen/vm/<guest>.xml --os-type $os --os-  
settings http://<the web server IP>/download/autoupgrade.xml
```

- 5 In the Operating System Installation screen, select the appropriate SLES 11 options as shown in the following image.

By default, the autoupgrade.xml path is populated for the AutoYaST file.

**Operating System Installation**

Specify the bootable virtual disk (often labeled as Disk 1) or the network installation source URL. Each CD, DVD, or ISO image required for installation must be added as a virtual disk.

☒ Virtual Disk: 0.0 GB CD-ROM or DVD (file:/OES11-SP1-addon\_with\_SLES11-SP2-x86\_64-DVD.iso) + Add

☐ Network URL: ▼

☐ PXE Boot ▼

Some operating systems support automating the installation by specifying a URL or file(s). Select a directory to include multiple files.

AutoYaST file: relurl://oes/autoupgrade.xml Find

Some operating systems accept additional arguments, used to customize the installation or boot process.

Additional Arguments: netsetup=hostip hostip=198.162.1.1 netmask=255.255.252.0 gateway=198.162.1.254

Select the behavior when the operating system exits with power off, reboot or crash. Settings take effect after installation is complete.

Power Off: destroy Reboot: restart Crash: destroy

Cancel Apply

- 6 In the *Additional Arguments* text box, specify the parameter information for the host IP, gateway IP, and netmask.

For example:

```
autoupgrade=1 netsetup=hostip hostip=192.168.1.225 netmask=255.255.254.0  
gateway=192.168.1.254
```

- 7 Click *Apply*.

The upgrade proceeds without any user intervention.

## 5.6.6 Troubleshooting an AutoYaST Upgrade

- ♦ [“Providing the Correct eDirectory and DSfW Administrator Password” on page 148](#)
- ♦ [“Unattended Upgrade Scenarios That Require User Input” on page 148](#)

## Providing the Correct eDirectory and DSfW Administrator Password

There is no validation for the passwords that you enter while creating the answer file. If you do not specify the correct passwords, the upgrade will not be successful and the server that you are upgrading will become unrecoverable.

For a Domain Services for Windows (DSfW) server upgrade, specify the DSfW Administrator password after the eDirectory password. For more information, see [Section 5.6.3, “Creating an Answer File to Provide the eDirectory and DSfW Passwords,” on page 144](#)

## Unattended Upgrade Scenarios That Require User Input

If you have not created the answer file, you will be prompted for the eDirectory and DSfW administrator passwords.

If the eDirectory replica server's IP address is not present in the eDirectory install configuration file (for OES 2 SP2, the file name is `edir2_sp2`, for OES 2 SP3, it is `edir2_sp3` and for OES 11, it is `edir11`) at `/etc/sysconfig/novell/`, you will be prompted for the same. For more information, see [Section 5.6.1, “Prerequisites,” on page 143](#).

## 5.7 Channel Upgrade from OES 11 to OES 11 SP1

- [Section 5.7.1, “Channel Upgrade from OES 11 to OES 11 SP1 Via Wagon,” on page 148](#)
- [Section 5.7.2, “Channel Upgrade from OES 11 to OES 11 SP1 Using Zypper,” on page 151](#)
- [Section 5.7.3, “Upgrading OES 11 to OES 11 SP1 Using SMT,” on page 152](#)
- [Section 5.7.4, “Rolling Back the Server in the Middle of a Wagon-based Channel Upgrade,” on page 153](#)

### 5.7.1 Channel Upgrade from OES 11 to OES 11 SP1 Via Wagon

- 1 Register the OES 11 server with NCC using the following command:

```
suse_register -a email=<Email-Address> -a regcode-sles=<SLESactivation-key> -a  
regcode-oes=<OES-activation-key> -L /root/.suse_register.log
```

- 2 Run the `zypper ca` command to ensure that OES11-Pool, OES11-Updates, SLES11-SP1-Pool and SLES11-SP1-Updates catalogs are subscribed and enabled.
- 3 Apply all the available patches either using `zypper` or `YOU`. In the list of available patches, ensure that the Enable update to Novell Open Enterprise Server 11 Service Pack 1 is selected. If this patch is not installed, you cannot proceed with the upgrade.

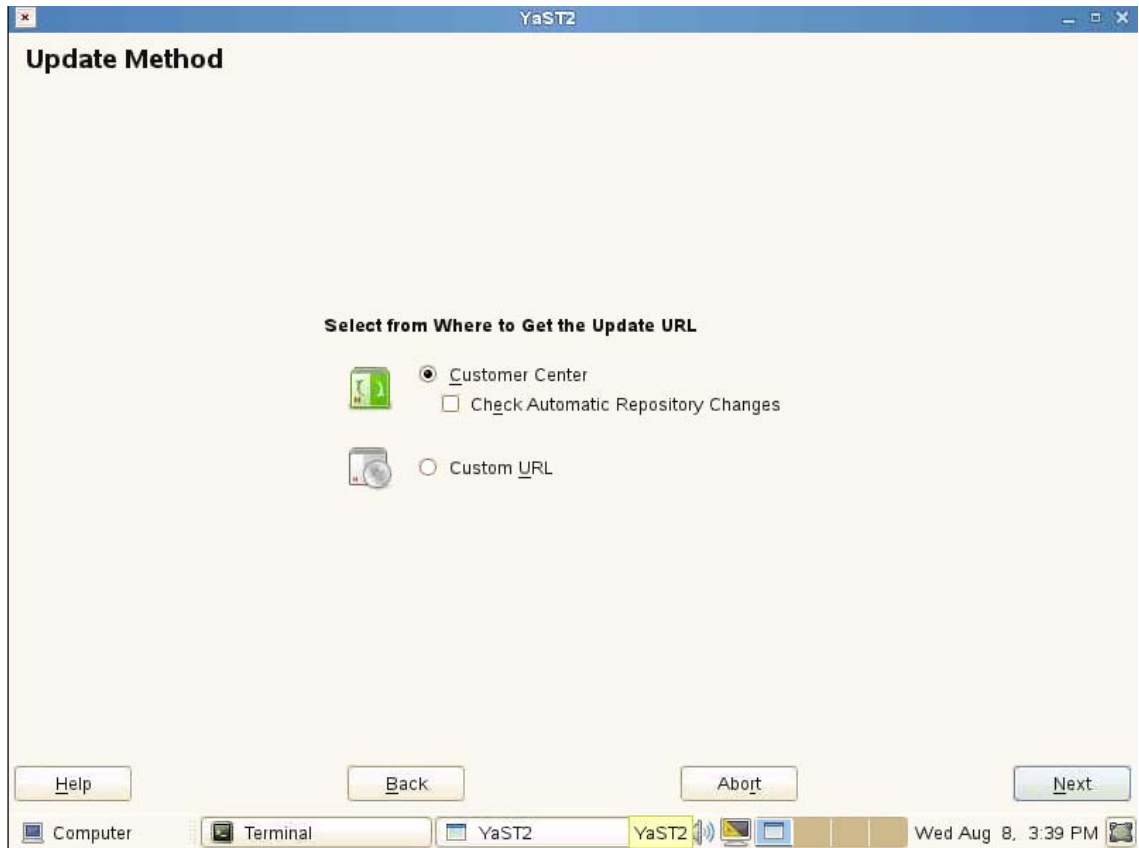
---

**NOTE:** If the patching requires a server reboot, do so when notified by the system.

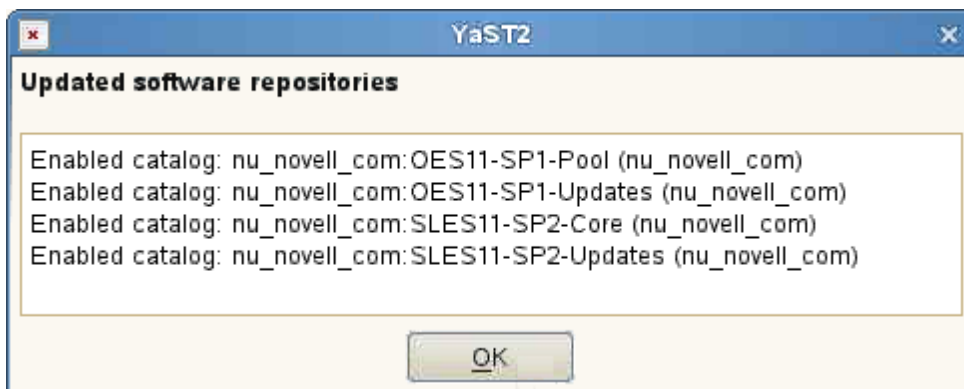
---

- 4 Start the wagon upgrade module using the `yast2 wagon` command.
- 5 On the welcome screen, click *Next*.
- 6 In Registration Check screen, click *Run Registration* if the “System not Registered” warning is displayed.
- 7 The Run Registration redirects to the NCC screen and click *Next*. Wagon does a sync and pops up a message stating that the software repositories need not be changed. This happens as there are no updates at this stage.

- 8 In the Registration Check screen, ensure that the registration summary displays “SLES11SP1 has a valid registration, OES11 has a valid registration”. If the valid registration message is displayed, click *Next*, and it resets the package manager.
- 9 In the Update Method screen, select *Customer Center* > *Next*.



- 10 The NCC screen is displayed again. Click *Next*, and it does a sync and pops up a message stating that the configuration is successful. Click *Details* and ensure that the following repositories are enabled as shown in the following figure.



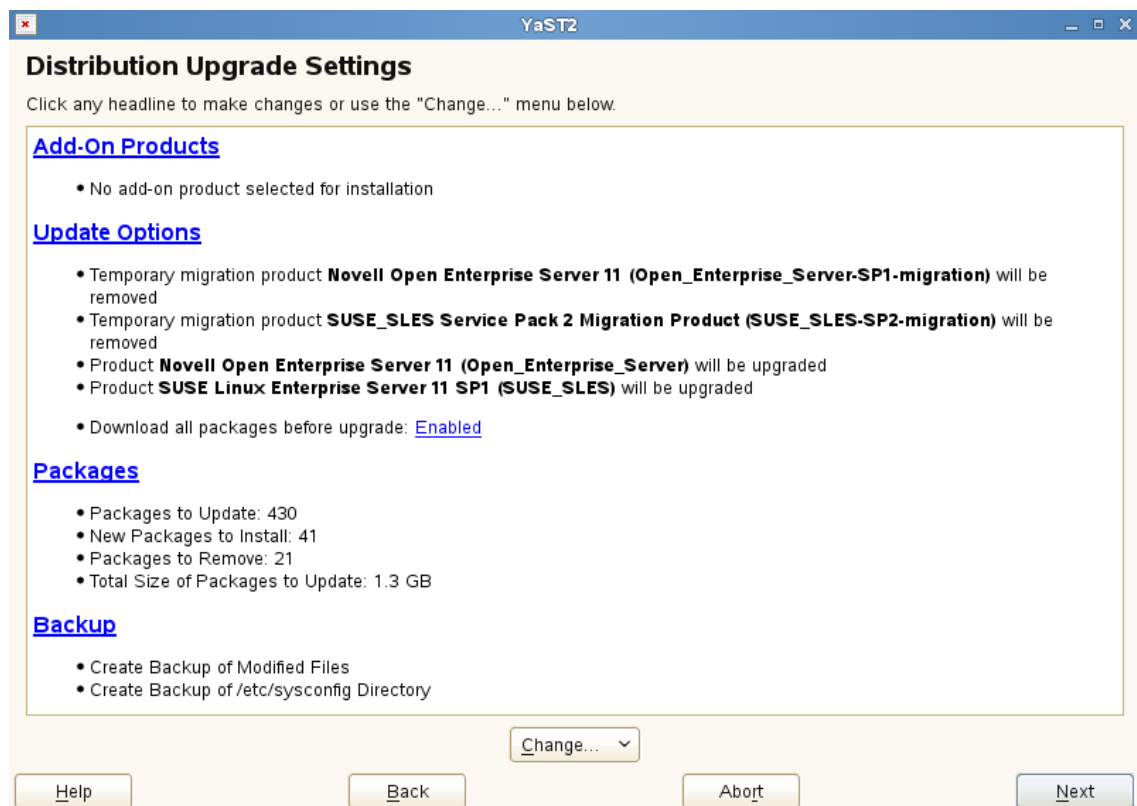
**NOTE:** If the repositories are not enabled, click *Back* > *Next* and redo the NCC registration until it is successful. If you are not able to do a successful NCC registration after multiple attempts, abort the process and roll back the server. For more information, see [Section 5.7.4, “Rolling Back the Server in the Middle of a Wagon-based Channel Upgrade,”](#) on page 153.

- 11 In the Migration Type screen, select *Minimal - upgrade from repositories added by registration*, then click *Next*.
- 12 In the Distribution Upgrade Settings screen, you must see the following content under the *Update Options* section.
  - ♦ Temporary migration product Novell Open Enterprise Server 11 (Open\_Enterprise\_Server-SP1-migration) will be removed
  - ♦ Temporary migration product SUSE\_SLES Service Pack 2 Migration Product (SUSE\_SLES-SP2-migration) will be removed
  - ♦ Product Novell Open Enterprise Server 11 (Open\_Enterprise\_Server) will be upgraded
  - ♦ Product Novell SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 SP1 (SUSE\_SLES) will be upgraded

---

**NOTE:** In the following screen shot, the number of packages to be updated may vary based on the patterns selected.

---



---

**IMPORTANT:** After clicking *Start Upgrade*, you cannot revert the server to its old state.

---

- 13 Click *Next* > *Start upgrade* and continue with the upgrade. Once the upgrade is complete, a pop up is displayed informing about a server reboot; click *OK* and continue with the upgrade.
- 14 The NCC screen is displayed once again, wherein the registration of the final product is triggered. Click *Next* and at the final success message dialog, click *Finish*.
- 15 Reboot the server to get the new kernel.

- 16 After the reboot, log on to the server and run the `yast2 channel-upgrade-oes` command to complete the OES services reconfiguration. This will prompt for eDirectory and DSfW passwords if the answer file is not created. Provide the password and continue. For more information on creating the answer file, see [Section 5.6.3, “Creating an Answer File to Provide the eDirectory and DSfW Passwords,”](#) on page 144.
- 17 Run `yast2 oes-install` to complete the channel upgrade.

---

**IMPORTANT:** After running this command, ensure to complete the process without making any configuration modifications. Just click *Accept*, *Next* or *Finish* in the respective screens.

---

## 5.7.2 Channel Upgrade from OES 11 to OES 11 SP1 Using Zypper

- 1 Register the OES 11 server with NCC using the `suse_register -a email=<Email-Address> -a regcode-sles=<SLESactivation-key> -a regcode-oes=<OES-activation-key> -L /root/.suse_register.log` command.
- 2 Run the `zypper ca` command to ensure that OES11-Pool, OES11-Updates, SLES11-SP1-Pool and SLES11-SP1-Updates catalogs are subscribed and enabled.
- 3 Run the `zypper update -t patch` command to install package management updates.
- 4 Run the `zypper update -t patch` command once again to install all available updates for SLES 11 SP2 and OES11. Ensure that the `oes11-enable-OES11-SP1-online-migration` patch is installed. If this patch is not installed, you cannot proceed with the upgrade.

---

**NOTE:** If the patching requires a server reboot, do so when intimated by the system.

---

- 5 Run the `zypper pd` command to ensure that the `Open_Enterprise_Server-SP1-migration` and `SUSE_SLES-SP2-migration` are listed but not installed. To check the products installed, run `zypper pd -i` command.
- 6 The installed products contain information about the distribution upgrades and the migration products that should be installed to perform the migration. Use the `zypper se -t product | grep -h -- "-migration" | cut -d\| -f2` command.

A sample output is as follows:

```
Open_Enterprise_Server-SP1-migration
SUSE_SLES-SP2-migration
```

- 7 Install these migration products using the `zypper in -t product Open_Enterprise_Server-SP1-migration SUSE_SLES-SP2-migration` command.
- 8 Run the `suse_register -L /root/.suse_register.log` command to register the products and to get the corresponding repositories.
- 9 Run the `zypper ref -s` command to refresh services and repositories.
- 10 Check the repositories using the `zypper lr` command. It should list OES11-SP1-Pool, OES11-SP1-Updates, SLES11-SP2-Core and SLES11-SP2-Updates repositories, and they should be enabled.
- 11 Perform a distribution upgrade using the `zypper dup --from OES11-SP1-Pool --from OES11-SP1-Updates --from SLES11-SP2-Core --from SLES11-SP2-Updates` command.
  - ♦ The following products are going to be REMOVED:  
Novell Open Enterprise Server 11 SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 SP2 Migration Product

REMARK: You can choose to ignore this message. The actual product that is being removed are OES 11 SP1 Migration Product and SLES 11 SP2 Migration Product.

- ♦ The following products are going to be upgraded:  
Novell Open Enterprise Server 11 SP1 SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 SP2  
REMARK: You can choose to ignore this message. The actual products that are being upgraded are OES 11 and SLES 11 SP2 and not what is mentioned in the message.  
It's safe to ignore the following messages as well. They have no impact on the channel upgrade.

- ♦ The following package is not supported by its vendor:  
yast2-ldap
- ♦ The following products are going to be downgraded:  
libedit0 mono-addon-libgdiplus0

The Following packages are going to change architecture:  
apparmo-docs noarch -> x86\_64  
apparmor-utils noarch -> x86\_64  
yast2-schema noarch -> x86\_64

---

**NOTE:** The packages listed here may vary based on your setup.

---

- 12 Once the upgrade is successfully completed, register the new products once again using the `suse_register -L /root/.suse_register.log` command.
- 13 Reboot the server.
- 14 After the reboot, log on to the server and run the `yast2 channel-upgrade-oes` command to complete the OES services reconfiguration. This will prompt for eDirectory and DSfW passwords if the answer file is not created. Provide the password and continue. For more information on creating the answer file, see [Section 5.6.3, “Creating an Answer File to Provide the eDirectory and DSfW Passwords,”](#) on page 144.
- 15 Run `yast2 oes-install` to complete the channel upgrade.

---

**IMPORTANT:** After running this command, ensure to complete the process without making any configuration modifications. Just click *Accept*, *Next* or *Finish* in the respective screens.

---

### 5.7.3 Upgrading OES 11 to OES 11 SP1 Using SMT

- 1 Install and set up the SMT server. For more information on setting up SMT, see [Subscription Management Tool \(SMT\) for SUSE Linux Enterprise 11](#).
- 2 Mirror down the following channels on to the SMT server:
  - ♦ OES11 – OES11-Pool and OES11-Updates channels
  - ♦ OES11SP1 – OES11-SP1-Pool and OES11-SP1-Updates channels
  - ♦ SLES11SP1 – SLES11-SP1-Pool and SLES11-SP1-Updates
  - ♦ SLES11SP2 – SLES11-SP2-Core and SLES11-SP2-Updates Channels

For more information on Mirroring and Managing the repositories, see [Mirroring Repositories on the SMT Server](#) and [Managing Repositories with YaST SMT Server Management](#).

- 3 Register the OES 11 server with the SMT server. For more information on registering, see [Configuring Clients with the clientSetup4SMT.sh Script](#) in the [Subscription Management Tool Guide](#).



- 4 After registration, upgrading the OES11 to OES 11 SP1 is the same as that of NCC upgrades as described from Step 2 in [Section 5.7, “Channel Upgrade from OES 11 to OES 11 SP1,”](#) on page 148.

---

**NOTE:** If you use Wagon and SMT based upgrade, you will not go through the [Step 6](#) to [Step 8](#) on page 149 mentioned in [Section 5.7.1, “Channel Upgrade from OES 11 to OES 11 SP1 Via Wagon,”](#) on page 148. After clicking on next in [Step 5](#) continue from [Step 9](#) on page 149.

---

## 5.7.4 Rolling Back the Server in the Middle of a Wagon-based Channel Upgrade

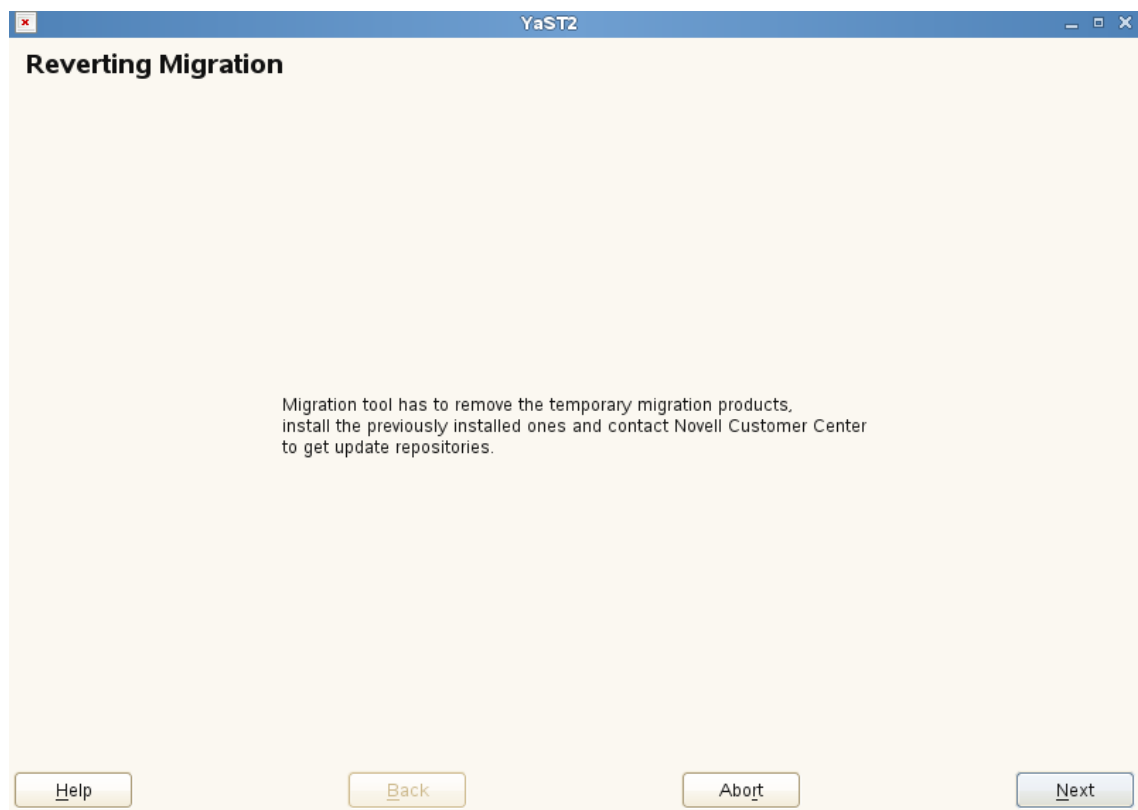
After multiple failed attempts to do an NCC registration, follow this procedure to roll back the server to its previous state safely.

- 1 Click *Abort*.
- 2 In the Reverting Migration screen, click *Next*.

---

**IMPORTANT:** Do not click *Abort* in this screen as it will abort the revert process.

---



- 3 In NCC registration screen, click *Next*.
- 4 Follow the screen prompts and complete the revert process.

## 5.8 Upgrading eDirectory After an OES Upgrade

Before starting the OES upgrade, ensure to take note of the eDirectory versions available in the OES server that is to be upgraded, the target OES version and the version available in the patch channel.

If applying the OES patches results in an eDirectory upgrade from one version to another, ensure to extend the eDirectory schema in the eDirectory tree before applying the patches. The patch process does not support schema extension. For more information on schema extension, see [Section 2.5.4, “Extending the Schema,” on page 26](#).

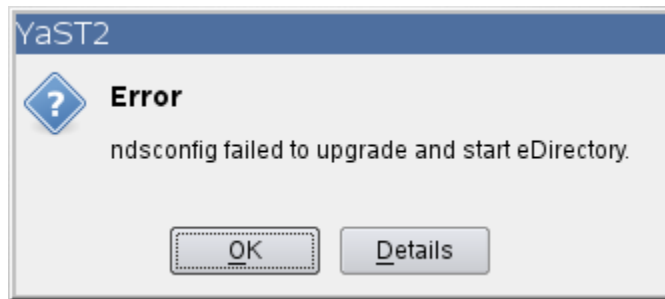
When you upgrade a fully patched OES server, there are possibilities of a higher eDirectory version available in the OES server that is to be upgraded than the eDirectory version available in the target OES version. In such an upgrade scenario, the eDirectory will not start and the OES upgrade will fail. This scenario can be avoided, if you apply all the patches during the OES upgrade. The following scenarios explain this situation in detail:

### Scenario 1: Upgrading OES 2 SP3 to OES 11

- ♦ **Current OES Version:** OES 2 SP3 with all patches applied till April 2013 and the eDirectory version installed in the OES 2 SP3 server is eDirectory 8.8 SP7 Patch 3.
- ♦ **Target OES Version:** OES 11 with eDirectory 8.8 SP6

There are two ways in which you can upgrade the OES 2 SP3 server to OES 11:

- ♦ During the upgrade process, patch the OES 11 server with all the available patches. The upgrade will be completed without any issues and eDirectory will be running after the upgrade. For more information on patching during the upgrade, see [“Registering the Server During the Upgrade” on page 134](#) and [“Updating the Server Software During the Upgrade” on page 136](#).
- ♦ If you do not patch during the upgrade process to OES 11, the upgrade will fail with the following errors, and eDirectory will not be allowed to start. The `/var/opt/novell/eDirectory/log/ndsd.log` also gets updated with the following message, “eDirectory is stopped. It is downgraded from Novell eDirectory 8.8 SP7 v20704.00 to Novell eDirectory 8.8 SP6 v20608.00. To complete the upgrade refer to Upgrading eDirectory after an OES Upgrade section of Installation Guide.”



This happens because of the eDirectory version conflict. The version available in OES 2 SP3 is eDirectory 8.8 SP7 and the one available in OES 11 is 8.8 SP6. In the upgrade process, eDirectory 8.8 SP7 is downgraded to eDirectory 8.8 SP6.

To resolve this issue:

- 1 In the eDirectory Upgrade Failure message box, click *Abort* and the server will reboot.
- 2 Apply all the patches for OES 11 along with the upgrade to eDirectory to 8.8 SP7 using the normal patch process. For more information on patching, see [Chapter 7, “Updating \(Patching\) an OES 11 SP1 Server,”](#) on page 163.
- 3 Resume the OES 11 upgrade, using the `yast2 oes-install` command.

## Scenario 2: Upgrading OES 2 SP3 or OES 11 to OES 11 SP1

- ♦ **Current OES Version:** OES 2 SP3 or OES 11 with all patches applied till April 2013 and the eDirectory version installed in the server is eDirectory 8.8 SP7 Patch 3.
- ♦ **Target OES Version:** OES 11 SP1 with eDirectory 8.8 SP7 Patch 1

If you observe the eDirectory versions, they are same except for the patch levels. In such a scenario, even if you don't patch during the upgrade process, the OES upgrade will be successful, and eDirectory will be up and running after the upgrade. As always, it is recommended to apply all the latest patches.

## 5.9 Using SUSE Manager to Upgrade from OES 11 to OES 11 SP1

- 1 Ensure that you have completed the instructions in [Section 7.9.1, “Setting Up SUSE Manager,” on page 172](#) and patched the OES 11 server with the latest patches.
- 2 Perform the service pack migration:
  - 2a Log in to the SUSE Manager Web console with administrative credentials.
  - 2b Click *System*, then select the OES server to be migrated.
  - 2c Click *Software > SP Migration* and verify the information of the installed product and target product.
  - 2d Select the SLES11-extras channel, then click *Schedule Migration > Confirm*.
- 3 After the support pack migration, reboot the OES 11 server.
- 4 Log in to the OES 11 server, run the `yast2 repositories` command.
- 5 From the repositories, remove the OES 11/SLES 11 SP1 installation sources, then add the OES 11 SP1/SLES 11 SP2 installation sources.
- 6 After the OES server reboot, log in to the OES server with administrative credentials and run the `yast2 channel-upgrade-oes` command to complete the OES services reconfiguration. This will prompt for eDirectory and DSfW passwords if the answer file is not created. Provide the passwords and continue. For more information on creating the answer file, see [Section 5.6.3, “Creating an Answer File to Provide the eDirectory and DSfW Passwords,” on page 144](#).
- 7 Run the `yast2 oes-install` command to complete the channel upgrade.

---

**IMPORTANT:** After running this command, ensure that you complete the process without making any configuration modifications. Just click *Accept*, *Next*, or *Finish* in the respective screens.

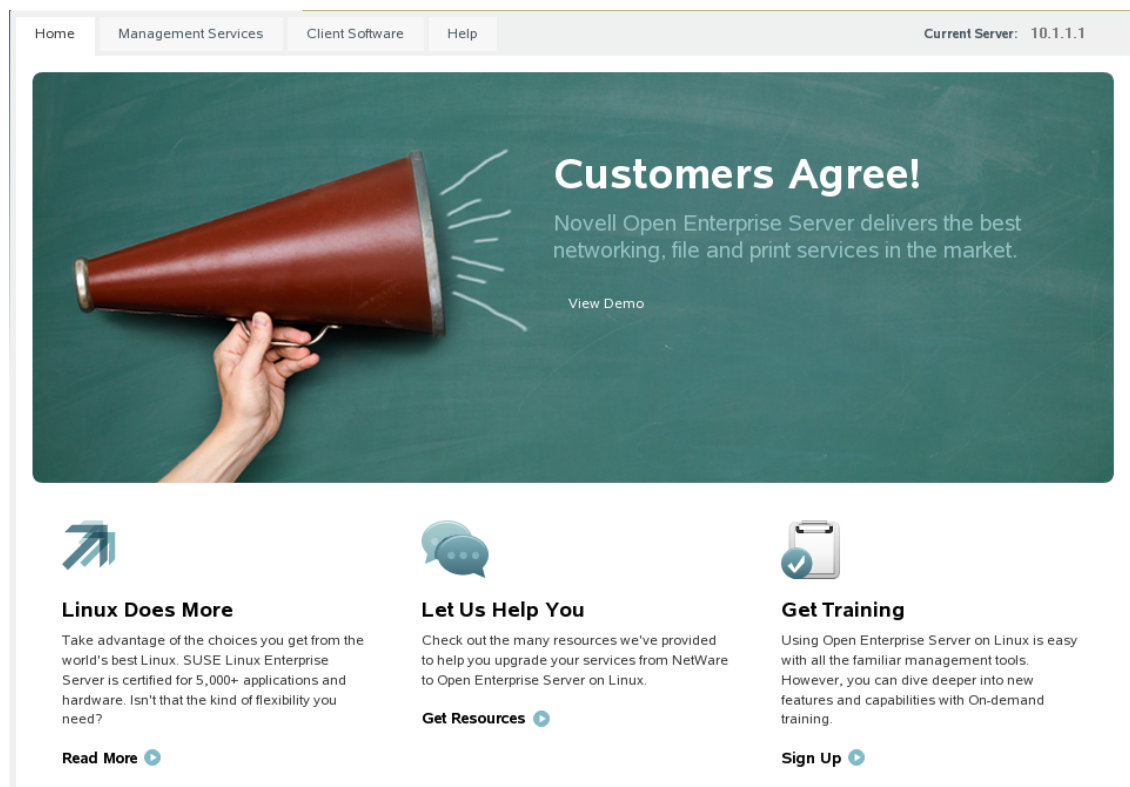
---

## 5.10 Verifying That the Upgrade Was Successful

One way to verify that your OES server upgrade was successful and that the components are loading properly is to watch as the server boots. As each component is loaded, the boot logger provides a status next to it indicating if the component is loading properly.

You can also quickly verify a successful installation by accessing the server from your Web browser.

- 1 In the Address field of your Web browser, enter the following URLs:  
`http://IP_or_DNS`  
Replace *IP\_or\_DNS* with the IP address or DNS name of your OES server.  
You should see a Web page similar to the following:



- 2 If you want to look at the eDirectory tree and begin to see how iManager works, click the Management Services home page, click *Management Tools > iManager*, and then log in as user Admin (the user you created during product installation).

You can also access iManager by typing the following URL in a browser window and logging in as user Admin:

```
http://IP_or_DNS_name/nps/iManager.html
```

- 3 Verify the version of SLES and OES using the following command. It should be SLES 11 SP2 and OES 11 SP1.

```
cat /etc/*-release
```

- 4 Ensure that all the RPMs are up to date after an upgrade. You may use the following command to see the list of RPMs and compare them with a fresh installation of OES 11 SP1 or an installation source.

```
rpm -qa | sort >> <type the filename where the list of rpms will be stored>
```

- 5 Continue with [“What's Next” on page 158](#).

## 5.11 Moving to Common Proxy Users After an Upgrade

After you successfully upgrade to OES 11 SP1 from OES 2, it is recommended to run the `move_to_common_proxy.sh` script as a post-upgrade activity. This script moves services (CIFS, DNS, DHCP, iFolder, NetStorage, NCS and LUM) that use a service-specific proxy user to common proxy user. A common proxy user helps you avoid the administrative overhead that occurs with multiple proxy users.

---

**NOTE:** Two nodes in a tree cannot have the same common proxy user.

---

- 1 After migrating OES 2 to OES 11 SP1, use the following commands to identify the list of services that use common proxy users and service-specific proxy users:

```
cd /opt/novell/proxymgmt/bin
./retrieve_proxy_list.sh.
cat /var/opt/novell/log/proxymgmt/pxylist.txt
```

- 2 Use the following command to move the services that are not using the common proxy user:

```
./move_to_common_proxy.sh -d <LDAP Admin FDN> -w <LDAP Admin Password> -i <LDAP
server IP address> -p <LDAP port> -s <service name>
```

Use a comma to separate multiple services. To move all services, use the keyword 'all' in the service name.

For example, to move the LUM service, the command would be:

```
./move_to_common_proxy.sh -d cn=admin, o=novell -w novell -i 192.168.1.255 -p
636 -s novell-LUM
```

---

**IMPORTANT:** If you choose to provide your own password, it should conform to the policy that is in effect for common proxy user. If the password contains single (') or double (") quotes, OES configuration fails. Quotes must be escaped by prefixing them with a backslash \. For example, to add a single quote, escape it as nove\'ll. The system-generated password always conforms to the policy rules.

---

## 5.12 What's Next

After you complete the upgrade and verify that it was successful, see [“Completing OES Installation or Upgrade Tasks” on page 159](#).

# 6 Completing OES Installation or Upgrade Tasks

This section provides information for completing the following tasks:

- ♦ [Section 6.1, “Determining Which Services Need Additional Configuration,” on page 159](#)
- ♦ [Section 6.2, “Rebooting the Server after Installing NSS,” on page 161](#)
- ♦ [Section 6.3, “Restarting Tomcat,” on page 161](#)
- ♦ [Section 6.4, “Launching and Configuring Firefox for Linux,” on page 161](#)

## 6.1 Determining Which Services Need Additional Configuration

**NOTE:** For information on configuring OES services as a different administrator than the one who originally installed the OES server, see [Section 2.4.4, “Adding/Configuring OES Services as a Different Administrator,” on page 22](#).

Depending on the products you have installed, there might be some tasks that you must complete before you can use individual service components.

For more information, see “[Caveats for Implementing OES 11 SP1 Services](#)” in the [OES 11 SP1: Planning and Implementation Guide](#).

If a component requires additional configuration that is not part of the Novell Open Enterprise Server (OES) 11 SP1 installation, see the component's administration guide for more information. The following table include links to the installation and configuration information for most OES 11 SP1 services.

**Table 6-1** OES 11 SP1 Services Additional Installation and Configuration Instructions

OES 11 SP1 Service	For Additional Installation and Configuration Information
Domain Services for Windows	See “ <a href="#">Installing Domain Services for Windows</a> ” in the <a href="#">OES 11 SP1: Domain Services for Windows Administration Guide</a> .
Novell AFP	See “ <a href="#">Installing and Setting Up AFP</a> ” in the <a href="#">OES11 SP1: Novell AFP Administration Guide</a> .
Novell Archive and Version Services	See “ <a href="#">Setting Up Archive and Version Services</a> ” in the <a href="#">OES 11 SP1: Novell Archive and Version Services 2.1 Administration Guide</a> .
Novell Backup/Storage Management Services (SMS)	See “ <a href="#">Installing and Configuring SMS</a> ” in the <a href="#">OES 11 SP1: Storage Management Services Administration Guide for Linux</a> .
Novell CIFS	See “ <a href="#">Installing and Setting Up CIFS</a> ” in the <a href="#">OES 11 SP1: Novell CIFS for Linux Administration Guide</a> .

OES 11 SP1 Service	For Additional Installation and Configuration Information
Novell Cluster Services	See “ <a href="#">Installing and Configuring Novell Cluster Services on OES 11 SP1</a> ” in the <a href="#">OES 11 SP1: Novell Cluster Services 2.1 for Linux Administration Guide</a> .
Novell DHCP	See “ <a href="#">Installing and Configuring DHCP</a> ” in the <a href="#">OES 11 SP1: Novell DNS/DHCP Services for Linux Administration Guide</a> .
Novell DNS	See “ <a href="#">Installing and Configuring DNS</a> ” in the <a href="#">OES 11 SP1: Novell DNS/DHCP Services for Linux Administration Guide</a> .
Novell eDirectory 8.8	See “ <a href="#">Installing or Upgrading Novell eDirectory on Linux</a> ” in the <a href="#">Novell eDirectory 8.8 Installation Guide</a> .
Novell iFolder 3.9	<p>When you configure iFolder as part of the OES install and configuration, you can specify only an EXT3 or ReiserFS volume location for the System Store Path, which is where you are storing iFolder data for all your users. You cannot create NSS volumes during the system install.</p> <p>If you want to use an NSS volume to store iFolder data, you must reconfigure iFolder after the initial OES installation. To reconfigure, use Novell iManager to create an NSS volume, then go to <i>YaST &gt; Open Enterprise Server &gt; Install and Configure Open Enterprise Services</i> and select iFolder 3.9 to enter new information. All previous configuration information is removed and replaced.</p> <p>See “<a href="#">Installing and Configuring iFolder Services</a>” in the <a href="#">Novell iFolder 3.9 Administration Guide</a>.</p>
Novell iManager 2.7.4	See “ <a href="#">Installing iManager</a> ” in the <a href="#">Novell iManager 2.7.6 Installation Guide</a> .
Novell iPrint	See “ <a href="#">Installing and Setting Up iPrint on Your Server</a> ” in the <a href="#">OES 11 SP1: iPrint Linux Administration Guide</a> .
Novell Linux User Management	See “ <a href="#">Setting Up Linux User Management</a> ” in the <a href="#">OES 11 SP1: Novell Linux User Management Administration Guide</a> .
Novell NCP Server	See “ <a href="#">Installing and Configuring NCP Server for Linux</a> ” in the <a href="#">OES 11 SP1: NCP Server for Linux Administration Guide</a> .
Novell NetStorage	See “ <a href="#">Installing NetStorage</a> ” in the <a href="#">OES 11 SP1: NetStorage Administration Guide for Linux</a> .
Novell QuickFinder	See “ <a href="#">Installing QuickFinder Server</a> ” in the <a href="#">OES 11 SP1: Novell QuickFinder Server 5.0 Administration Guide</a> .
Novell Remote Manager	See “ <a href="#">Changing the Configuration</a> ” in the <a href="#">OES 11 SP1: Novell Remote Manager Administration Guide</a> .
Novell Samba	See “ <a href="#">Installing the Novell Samba Components</a> ” in the <a href="#">OES 11 SP1: Novell Samba Administration Guide</a> .
Novell Storage Services	See “ <a href="#">Installing and Configuring Novell Storage Services</a> ” in the <a href="#">OES 11 SP1: NSS File System Administration Guide for Linux</a> .
Pre-Migration Server	See “ <a href="#">Preparing for Transfer ID</a> ” in the <a href="#">OES 11 SP1: Migration Tool Administration Guide</a> .



## 6.2 Rebooting the Server after Installing NSS

If you install Novell Storage Services (NSS) on an existing OES server, enter `rcnovell-smrdr restart` at the command prompt or reboot the server before performing any backups, restores, or server consolidations on the NSS file system.

## 6.3 Restarting Tomcat

If you install iManager after the server has been installed, Tomcat is not running and you must restart it to run iManager.

To restart Tomcat, enter the following command at a command line prompt.

```
/etc/init.d/novell-tomcat6 restart
```

## 6.4 Launching and Configuring Firefox for Linux

After upgrading to OES 11 SP1, you need to launch and configure Mozilla Firefox before accessing other applications via a URL.

For example, you cannot configure the Novell Customer Center from the YaST until Firefox is configured.

To configure Firefox:

- 1 On the GNOME desktop, click *Computer > Firefox*.  
or  
On the KDE desktop, click the *Main Menu* icon > *Browse > Web Browser > Firefox*.
- 2 When Firefox opens, configure the browser by supplying all of the information that it requests. After Firefox is ready to browse the Internet, it is also ready to be used with OES.



---

# 7 Updating (Patching) an OES 11 SP1 Server

Updating an Novell Open Enterprise Server (OES) 11 SP1 Linux server is essentially the same as updating a SUSE Linux Enterprise Server (SLES) 11 SP2 server except that you apply patches for both SLES 11 SP2 and OES 11 SP1.

To update your server with the patches released from Novell requires you to perform the following tasks during the installation or upgrade or after the installation or upgrade is complete. The instructions in this section are for patching the server after the installation or upgrade is complete.

- [Section 7.1, “Overview of Updating \(Patching\),” on page 163](#)
- [Section 7.2, “Preparing the Server for Updating,” on page 164](#)
- [Section 7.3, “Registering the Server in the Novell Customer Center,” on page 165](#)
- [Section 7.4, “Updating the Server,” on page 169](#)
- [Section 7.5, “Verifying That Your Repository Subscriptions Are Up-to-Date,” on page 170](#)
- [Section 7.6, “Frequently Asked Questions about Updating,” on page 171](#)
- [Section 7.7, “Patching From Behind a Proxy Server,” on page 171](#)
- [Section 7.8, “GUI Based Patching,” on page 171](#)
- [Section 7.9, “Using SUSE Manager to Patch an OES Server,” on page 171](#)
- [Section 7.10, “Quick Path Updating,” on page 176](#)
- [Section 7.11, “Installing the Latest iManager NPMs After Applying OES Patches,” on page 178](#)

## 7.1 Overview of Updating (Patching)

- [Section 7.1.1, “The Patch Process Briefly Explained,” on page 163](#)
- [Section 7.1.2, “Update Options,” on page 164](#)

### 7.1.1 The Patch Process Briefly Explained

The OES 11 SP1 patch process consists of the following processes:

1. The patch tool (zypper, Package Kit, or YaST Online Update [YOU]) checks for available patches on its configured patch update repositories and displays them for selection.
2. The patch administrator selects which patches to apply.
3. The patch tool checks cross-dependencies and displays any messages regarding situations or conflicts that require administrator input.
4. The patches are downloaded.

If any downloaded patches contain information or instructions, these are displayed for administrator acknowledgement. For example, administrators might be instructed to restart a service or run a configuration script file to complete the process after the patch process completes.

5. After all of the messages have been acknowledged, the downloaded patches are installed.
6. The administrator is prompted to restart the server.

## 7.1.2 Update Options

OES 11 SP1 administrators have three options for updating servers with patches from Novell.

- ♦ **Novell Online Update Servers:** For those who don't require an internal update source, OES 11 SP1 servers can be easily configured to directly access the online patch repository. Instructions for doing this are included in the sections that follow.
- ♦ **Subscription Management Tool (SMT) for SUSE Linux Enterprise:** This product doesn't require a separate license. It lets you host patches from the Novell online update repository on a server, which provides more security and greatly reduces Web traffic related to server updates. SMT is available for download on the [Novell Download Site \(http://download.novell.com/Download?buildid=5YxjWD8\\_ZZk~\)](http://download.novell.com/Download?buildid=5YxjWD8_ZZk~).
- ♦ **ZENworks Linux Management:** An enterprise-level product that requires a separate license. It provides updates for SUSE Linux Enterprise, OES, and Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) products. In addition to hosting updates for download, ZENworks Linux Management is also capable of pushing the updates to targeted devices through a single Web interface. For more information about ZENworks Linux Management, see its [product page on Novell.com \(https://www.novell.com/documentation/zenworks11/zen11\\_cm\\_linuxpkg\\_mgmt/data/bvjhr7p.html\)](https://www.novell.com/documentation/zenworks11/zen11_cm_linuxpkg_mgmt/data/bvjhr7p.html).
- ♦ **SUSE Manager:** SUSE Manager is a server solution for providing updates, patches, and security fixes for single SUSE Linux Enterprise, OES, and Red Hat Enterprise Linux clients. It comes with a set of tools and a Web-based user interface for management tasks. For more information on SUSE Manager, see the [SUSE Manager documentation \(https://www.suse.com/documentation/suse\\_manager/\)](https://www.suse.com/documentation/suse_manager/).

---

**IMPORTANT:** OES patches are not cumulative. A patch update to a specific component does not necessarily contain all related RPMs for that component. When you patch a server that has any version of OES, either by directly using the update catalogs from nu.novell.com or by mirroring the update catalogs from nu.novell.com to a local SMT or ZCM server, you must apply all available patches as they are offered through the official update repositories. Do not apply partial patches, or apply patches intermittently or out of sequence.

Each patch release assumes that you will apply the new patches to a fully patched system, and that you will apply all of the patches in the release. We do not support applying only selected patches from a specific scheduled maintenance patch, skipping a scheduled maintenance patch, or applying patches out of their intended order.

---

## 7.2 Preparing the Server for Updating

- 1 Make sure you have installed all the services that you need on the server.
- 2 Before starting your update, make note of the root partition and available space.

If you suspect you are running short of disk space, secure your data before updating and repartition your system. There is no general rule regarding how much space each partition should have. Space requirements depend on your particular partitioning profile and the software selected.

The `df -h` command lists the device name of the root partition. In the following example, the root partition to write down is `/dev/sda2` (mounted as `/`).

Example: List with `df -h`.

```
blr8-119-74:/media # df -h
Filesystem      Size  Used Avail Use% Mounted on
/dev/sda2        9.9G  3.7G  5.8G  39% /
devtmpfs         940M  124K  940M   1% /dev
tmpfs            940M  244K  940M   1% /dev/shm
admin            4.0M    0   4.0M   0% /_admin
```

In particular, ensure that you have enough space where the update process downloads all the updates to in `/var/cache/zypp/`.

Depending on the number of patches that you are going to apply, you might need about 3 GB for OES 11 SP1.

- 3 Before updating the server, secure the current data on the server.

Copy all configuration files to a separate medium, such as a streamer, removable hard disk, USB stick, or ZIP drive. This primarily applies to files stored in `/etc` as well as some of the directories and files in `/var` and `/opt`. You might also want to write the user data in `/home` (the HOME directories) to a backup medium. Back up this data as `root`. Only `root` has read permission for all local files.

## 7.3 Registering the Server in the Novell Customer Center

Before you can patch an OES 11 SP1 server with updates from Novell, you must register the server either during installation or later by using the instructions in this section.

If you register through evaluation codes, your server can receive patches for only 60 days, at which time the codes expire.

You need to register each server with the Novell Customer Center only once. After you have registered the server, you can update the server at any time. This includes replacing evaluation codes with purchased codes. You can use the desktop interface (GUI) or the command line to accomplish this task.

This section contains the following information:

- ♦ [Section 7.3.1, “Prerequisites,” on page 165](#)
- ♦ [Section 7.3.2, “Registering the Server in the Novell Customer Center Using the Command Line,” on page 166](#)
- ♦ [Section 7.3.3, “Registering the Server in the Novell Customer Center Using the GUI,” on page 167](#)

### 7.3.1 Prerequisites

To complete these procedures, you must have the following:

- ♦ A Novell Customer Center account or access to an account.

For more information about creating a Novell Customer Center account, see [“Creating an Account” in the Novell Customer Center User Guide](#) (<http://www.novell.com/documentation/ncc/ncc/data/b5exp8k.html#b5exj2f>). This is the same account that you use for Bugzilla.

- The activation codes for SLES and OES 11 SP1 that you received when you purchased your product.
- An established connection to the Internet.

## 7.3.2 Registering the Server in the Novell Customer Center Using the Command Line

To register a new server or to replace evaluation activation codes with standard codes.

- 1 Log in to the server as root or su to root
- 2 At the command line, enter

```
suse_register -a email=email_address -a regcode-sles=SLES_registration_code -a
regcode-oes=oes11_registration_code
```

For example:

```
suse_register -a email=joe@example.com -a regcode-sles=4adab769abc68 -a
regcode-oes=30a74ebb94fa
```

---

**IMPORTANT:** If you are replacing evaluation codes with purchased codes, simply enter the codes. No further action is required.

---

- 3 Verify that the server is registered by checking whether you have the service types and catalogs needed for updates:

- 3a To verify the service type, enter

```
zypper ls
```

The results should be similar to the following:

```
blr8-119-74:/media # zypper ls
```

#	Alias	Name	Enabled	Refresh	Type
1	nu_novell_com	nu_novell_com	Yes	No	ris
2	Novell-Open-Enterprise-Server-11-SP1 11.1.1-1.153	Novell Open Enterprise Server 11 SP1	Yes	Yes	yast2
3	SUSE-Linux-Enterprise-Server-11-SP2 11.2.2-1.234	SUSE-Linux-Enterprise-Server-11-SP2 11.2.2-1.234	Yes	Yes	yast2

The URIs you see for the ZYPP type differ based on your installation source.

- 3b To verify the catalogs, enter

```
zypper lr
```

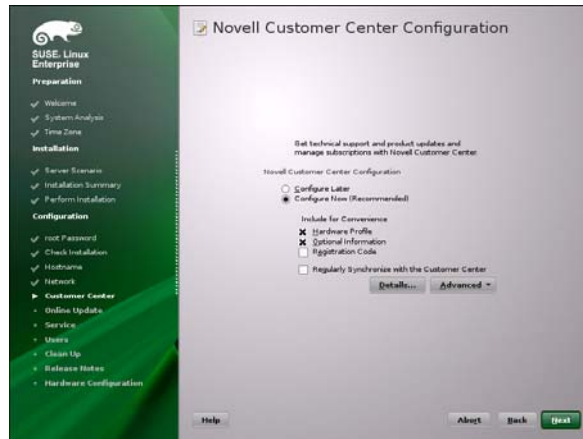
The results should be similar to the following:

```
blr8-119-74:/media # zypper lr
```

#	Alias	Name	Enabled	Refresh
1	Novell-Open-Enterprise-Server-11-SP1 11.1.1-1.153	Novell Open Enterprise Server 11 SP1	Yes	Yes
2	SUSE-Linux-Enterprise-Server-11-SP2 11.2.2-1.234	SUSE-Linux-Enterprise-Server-11-SP2 11.2.2-1.234	Yes	Yes
3	nu_novell_com:OES11-SP1-FTU	OES11-SP1-FTU	No	Yes
4	nu_novell_com:OES11-SP1-Pool	OES11-SP1-Pool	Yes	Yes
5	nu_novell_com:OES11-SP1-Updates	OES11-SP1-Updates	Yes	Yes
6	nu_novell_com:SLE11-SP1-Debuginfo-Pool	SLE11-SP1-Debuginfo-Pool	No	Yes
7	nu_novell_com:SLE11-SP1-Debuginfo-Updates	SLE11-SP1-Debuginfo-Updates	No	Yes
8	nu_novell_com:SLE11-SP2-Debuginfo-Core	SLE11-SP2-Debuginfo-Core	No	Yes
9	nu_novell_com:SLE11-SP2-Debuginfo-Updates	SLE11-SP2-Debuginfo-Updates	No	Yes
10	nu_novell_com:SLE11-WebYaST-SP2-Pool	SLE11-WebYaST-SP2-Pool	No	Yes
11	nu_novell_com:SLE11-WebYaST-SP2-Updates	SLE11-WebYaST-SP2-Updates	No	Yes
12	nu_novell_com:SLES11-Extras	SLES11-Extras	No	Yes
13	nu_novell_com:SLES11-SP1-Pool	SLES11-SP1-Pool	Yes	Yes
14	nu_novell_com:SLES11-SP1-Updates	SLES11-SP1-Updates	Yes	Yes
15	nu_novell_com:SLES11-SP2-Core	SLES11-SP2-Core	Yes	Yes
16	nu_novell_com:SLES11-SP2-Extension-Store	SLES11-SP2-Extension-Store	Yes	Yes
17	nu_novell_com:SLES11-SP2-Updates	SLES11-SP2-Updates	Yes	Yes

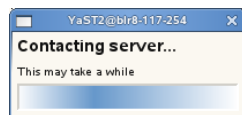
## 7.3.3 Registering the Server in the Novell Customer Center Using the GUI

- 1 In the *YaST Control Center*, click *Other > Novell Customer Center Configuration*.
- 2 On the Novell Customer Center Configuration configuration page, select all of the following options, then click *Next*.



- ♦ **Configure Now:** Proceeds with registering this server and the OES product with the Novell Customer Center.
- ♦ **Hardware Profile:** Sends information to the Novell Customer Center about the hardware that you are installing SLES 11 SP2 and OES 11 SP1 on.
- ♦ **Optional Information:** Sends optional information to the Novell Customer Center for your registration. For this release, this option doesn't send any additional information.
- ♦ **Registration Code** Makes the registration with activation codes mandatory.
- ♦ **Regularly Synchronize with the Customer Center:** Keeps the installation sources for this server valid. It does not remove any installation sources that were manually added.

After you click *Next*, the following message is displayed. Wait until this message disappears and the Manual Interaction Required page displays.

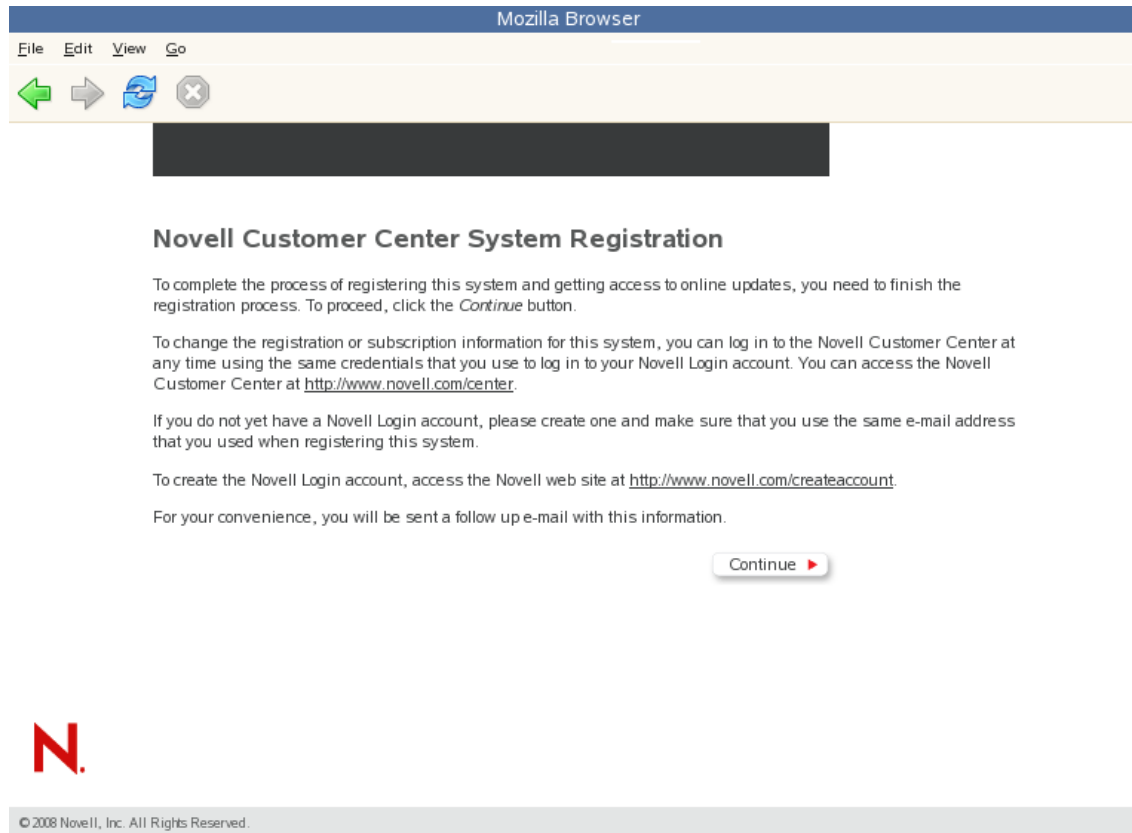


- 3 On the Manual Interaction Required page, note the information that you will be required to specify, then click *Continue*.
- 4 On the Novell Customer Center Registration page, specify the required information in the following fields:
  - ♦ **Email Address:** The e-mail address for your Novell Login account.
  - ♦ **Confirm Email Address:** The same e-mail address for your Novell Login account
  - ♦ **SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 SP2 (optional):** Specify your purchased or 60-day evaluation registration code for the SLES 11 SP2 product.  
If you don't specify a code, the server cannot receive any updates or patches.
  - ♦ **Open Enterprise Server 11 SP1 (optional):** Specify your purchased or 60-day evaluation registration code for the OES product.  
If you don't specify a code, the server cannot receive any updates or patches.

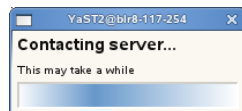
- ♦ **System Name or Description (optional):** The hostname for the system is specified by default. If you want to change this to a description for the Novell Customer Center, specify a description to identify this server.

5 Click *Submit*.

6 When the message to complete the registration displays, click *Continue*.



After you click *Continue*, the following message is displayed with the Manual Interaction Required page. Wait until this message disappears and the Novell Customer Center Configuration Was Successful page displays.



7 When you see the message that the Novell Customer Center was successful, click *OK*.

When the registration is successful, the server is registered in the Novell Customer Center and the installation sources for patches are configured on the server.



## 7.4 Updating the Server

After the server has been registered in the Novell Customer Center, you can apply updates via packages and patches. The default GNOME desktop indicates when there are updates available to the server. You can update the server from any of the following interfaces.

- ♦ [Section 7.4.1, “Updating the Server Using the Command Line,” on page 169](#)

### 7.4.1 Updating the Server Using the Command Line

After you have registered the server in the Novell Customer Center, you can update the server by using commands at the command line. The following procedure specifies steps for updating the server with all available patches for SLES 11 SP2 and OES 11 SP1.

- 1 Log in to the server as root or su to root.
- 2 At the command line, enter the following commands. The screen shots show example output.

**2a** Refresh all services:

```
zypper ref -s
```

```
blr8-119-74:/media # zypper ref -s
Refreshing service 'nu_novell_com'.
All services have been refreshed.
Repository 'Novell Open Enterprise Server 11 SP1' is up to date.
Repository 'SUSE-Linux-Enterprise-Server-11-SP2 11.2.2-1.234' is up to date.
Repository 'OES11-SP1-Pool' is up to date.
Repository 'OES11-SP1-Updates' is up to date.
Repository 'SLES11-SP1-Pool' is up to date.
Repository 'SLES11-SP1-Updates' is up to date.
Repository 'SLES11-SP2-Core' is up to date.
Repository 'SLES11-SP2-Extension-Store' is up to date.
Repository 'SLES11-SP2-Updates' is up to date.
All repositories have been refreshed.
```

**2b** See whether updates are available for SLES 11 SP2 and OES 11 SP1:

```
zypper patch-check --repo catalog1 --repo catalog2
```

For example,

```
zypper patch-check --repo SLES11-SP2-Updates --repo OES11-SP1-Updates
```

Updates available

```
blr8-119-74:/media # zypper patch-check --repo SLES11-SP2-Updates --repo OES11-SP1-Updates
Loading repository data...
Reading installed packages...
75 patches needed (14 security patches)
```

**2c** Update the server with all available SLES11 and OES 11 patches:

```
zypper up -t patch -r SLES11-SP2-Updates -r OES11-SP1-Updates
```

---

**NOTE:** When you install CIFS package using the command line (patch install, rpm upgrade, zypper updates and so on), you will get the 16024 Add method error. You can ignore this error as it does not cause disruption to any service.

Cause: While installing a newer CIFS version, the setup might try to pull in few NMAS methods that are existing on your server. This would be seen only when the patches are updated from the command line interface. The NMAS methods present in the server are retained and are not overwritten.

---

- 2d** Repeat [Step 2b](#) and [Step 2c](#) until no more updates are available.

```
b1r8-118-89:~ # zypper list-patches
Refreshing service 'nu_novell_com'.
Loading repository data...
Reading installed packages...
No updates found.
```

- 2e** If the patching requires a server reboot, do so when intimated by the system.  
Rebooting the server activates the new kernel if it has been updated and ensures that OES services that need restarting after patching are restarted.

For more information on zypper, see [SDB:Zypper usage 11.3 \(http://en.opensuse.org/SDB:Zypper\\_usage\\_11.3\)](http://en.opensuse.org/SDB:Zypper_usage_11.3).

## 7.5 Verifying That Your Repository Subscriptions Are Up-to-Date

When an OES 11 SP1 server is updated properly, the update repository list is refreshed to include Updates entries for your OES 11 and SLES 11 versions.

To verify that you have updates from both update repositories:

- 1** At a terminal prompt on the server you have updated, enter the following command:  

```
zypper lr
```

The list of repositories should include update repositories for your SLES 11 and OES 11 versions. For example, after updating an OES 11 server, the repositories listing should include both `SLES11-SP2-Updates` and `OES11-SP1-Updates` as subscribed update repositories.
- 2** After the repository list contains the correct entries, update your server by repeating the pertinent instructions in [Section 7.4, “Updating the Server,”](#) on page 169.

## 7.6 Frequently Asked Questions about Updating

This section contains the following information:

- ♦ [Section 7.6.1, “Do I apply all the patches in the catalogs? How do I know which patches to apply?,” on page 171](#)

### 7.6.1 Do I apply all the patches in the catalogs? How do I know which patches to apply?

Each patch has a category and a status associated with it. The categories state whether the patch is a security patch, a recommended patch, or an optional patch. The `zypper pch` command shows whether the patch is needed or not needed and whether it has been applied. When you are using the Novell Updater, only the patches that are needed and have not been applied display in the list of patches.

Therefore, you can just apply all the security patches and wait to apply other patches that might change how a feature or product works.

## 7.7 Patching From Behind a Proxy Server

See [TID 3132246 \(http://www.novell.com/support/viewContent.do?externalId=3132246&sliceId=2\)](http://www.novell.com/support/viewContent.do?externalId=3132246&sliceId=2).

## 7.8 GUI Based Patching

The method of installing patches using the GUI is same for both OES 11 SP1 and SLES 11 SP2. For more information, see [Installing Patches](#) in the [SLES 11 SP2 Administration Guide](#).

## 7.9 Using SUSE Manager to Patch an OES Server

SUSE Manager is a server solution for providing updates, patches, and security fixes for single SUSE Linux Enterprise, OES, and Red Hat Enterprise Linux clients. It comes with a set of tools and a Web-based user interface for management tasks. For more information on SUSE Manager, see the [SUSE Manager documentation \(https://www.suse.com/documentation/suse\\_manager/\)](https://www.suse.com/documentation/suse_manager/).

---

### IMPORTANT

- ♦ Novell Archive and Version Services installation is not supported on an OES server that has been patched using SUSE manger.
  - ♦ SUSE manager-based patching support is available only from OES 11 onwards.
- 

You can use SUSE Manager to patch an OES 11 or OES 11 SP1 server.

- ♦ [Section 7.9.1, “Setting Up SUSE Manager,” on page 172](#)
- ♦ [Section 7.9.2, “Patching an OES 11 or Later Server by Using SUSE Manager,” on page 176](#)

## 7.9.1 Setting Up SUSE Manager

Use the information contained in the following sections to set up a SUSE Manager server:

- ♦ “Installing SUSE Manager” on page 172
- ♦ “Mirroring the Required OES and SLES Channels” on page 172
- ♦ “Resolving Tomcat Vendor Conflict Issues” on page 173
- ♦ “Creating the Activation Keys and the Bootstrap File” on page 174
- ♦ “Creating the OES Bootstrap Script and Registering the OES Server with SUSE Manager” on page 175

### Installing SUSE Manager

For more information about installing, patching and mirroring, see the [SUSE Manager 1.7 Quick Start \(https://www.suse.com/documentation/suse\\_manager/book\\_susemanager\\_quickstart/data/art\\_susemanager\\_quick.html\)](https://www.suse.com/documentation/suse_manager/book_susemanager_quickstart/data/art_susemanager_quick.html).

- 1 Install SUSE Manager.
- 2 Patch SUSE Manager before configuring it.
- 3 When you configure SUSE Manager, provide the appropriate mirror credentials for access to the OES and SLES channels.

### Mirroring the Required OES and SLES Channels

- 1 Use PuTTY to log in to SUSE Manager with administrative credentials.
- 2 Execute the `mgr-ncc-sync -l` command to view all channels that you are allowed to synchronize with SUSE Manager.

The output lists both parent and child channels. The following notations are used to mark each channel:

- ♦ [.] Denotes a channel that is not mirrored or synchronized.
- ♦ [p] Denotes a channel that was previously mirrored or synchronized.

- 3 Select the channels you want to import.

You can import child channels only if their respective parent channels are already imported.

---

**IMPORTANT:** After they are mirrored, SUSE channels cannot be deleted. Only custom software channels can be deleted.

---

- 4 For each channel that you want to mirror, run the `mgr-ncc-sync -c <the channel name>` command.

For example, to mirror oes11-pool-x86\_64, the command is:

```
mgr-ncc-sync -c oes11-pool-x86_64
```

The channel data is imported into the SUSE Manager database and a full synchronization is triggered for that channel.

- 5 (Conditional) If this is the first time the OES channel has been mirrored, you see the following error message:

```
ChannelException: The GPG keys listed for the oes11-pool-x86_64 repository are
already installed but they are not correct. Check that the correct key URLs are
configured for this repository.
```

Use the following steps to resolve the issue:

- 5a** Run the `spacewalk-repo-sync -c <any-oes-channel-name>` command.  
For example, `spacewalk-repo-sync -c oes11-pool-x86_64`.
- 5b** When you are prompted to import the keys, import the keys and continue with [Step 6](#).  
After the keys are imported, other OES channels are mirrored without any issues.
- 6** Repeat [Step 4](#) and mirror the following OES 11, OES 11 SP1, SLES 11 SP1, and SLES 11 SP2 channels:
  - ♦ **For OES11:** `sles11-sp1-pool`, `sles11-sp1-updates`, `sles11-sp1-suse-manager-tools`, `oes11-pool`, `oes11-updates`, and `sles11-extras`.
  - ♦ **For OES11SP1:** `sles11-sp2-core`, `sles11-sp2-updates`, `sles11-sp2-suse-manager-tools`, `sles11-sp2-extension-store`, `oes11-sp1-pool`, and `oes11-sp1-updates`.

## Resolving Tomcat Vendor Conflict Issues

When you patch the OES server, you encounter a Tomcat vendor conflict issue that requires user intervention to resolve. For more information on the Tomcat vendor conflict issue, see [Novell Open Enterprise Server 11 - Updated Installation and Patching information \(http://www.novell.com/support/kb/doc.php?id=7002931\)](http://www.novell.com/support/kb/doc.php?id=7002931).

To resolve this conflict issue, you must create configuration channels and add files:

- 1** Log in to the SUSE Manager Web console with administrative credentials.
- 2** To create the configuration channel, click *Configuration > Configuration Channels > + create new config channel*, enter the details in *Name*, *Label*, and *Description*, then click *Create Config Channel*.  
For example, you can specify the details as `Novell-Tomcat-VendorConflict`.
- 3** To add files, click *Add Files > Create File*, specify the following details, then click *Create Configuration File*.
  - ♦ **File Type:** Select *Directory*.
  - ♦ **Filename/Path:** Type `/etc/zypp/vendors.d`.
- 4** Click *Novell-Tomcat-VendorConflict > Add Files > Create Files*.

SUSE manager

Documentation | User: admin | Organization: novell | Preferences | Sign Out

Systems

Overview Systems Patches Channels Audit **Configuration** Schedule Users Admin Help

No systems selected

Overview  
Configuration Channels  
Configuration Files  
Centrally Managed Files  
Locally Managed Files  
Systems

**Revision 1 of /etc/zypp/vendors.d from channel Novell- Tomcat-VendowConflict**

**File Details**

**Configuration Channel:** Novell-Tomcat-VendowConflict

**Revision:** 1 ([view other revisions](#))

**Creation Date:** 0 seconds ago

**Last Modified:** 0 seconds ago by admin

**File Type:** Directory

**Next revision number:**

**File Properties**

**Filename/Path:** /etc/zypp/vendors.d

**Ownership:** User name \*: root  
Group name \*: root  
**Tip:** If the user and/or group indicated here does not exist on system(s) to which this file is deployed, the deploy will fail.

**File Permissions Mode:**   
**Tip:** '644' for text files and '755' for directories and executables will allow global access or execution (but not modification).

**SELinux context:**   
**Tip:** Enter SELinux context like: user\_u:role\_r:type\_ts0-s15:c0.c1024 (Note: you don't have to enter all parts)

5 In the Create New Configuration File screen, specify the following details, then click *Create Configuration File*.

- ♦ **File Type:** Select *Text File*.
- ♦ **Filename/Path:** Specify `/etc/zypp/vendors.d/novell`.
- ♦ **File Contents:** Specify the following snippet:

```
[main]
vendors = novell,suse,opensuse
```

## Creating the Activation Keys and the Bootstrap File

To create and subscribe channels with the activation keys that can be used to register the OES servers with SUSE Manager:

- 1 Log in to the SUSE Manager Web console with administrative credentials.
- 2 Click *Systems > Activation Keys > + create new key*, specify the following details, then click *Create Activation Key*.



- ♦ **Description:** Specify a short description that identifies the settings this key creates on the systems that use it.
  - ♦ **Key:** Specify a key of your choice. For example, novell-production could be a key.
  - ♦ **Usage:** Specify the number of servers that can use this key. Leave it blank for unlimited usage.
  - ♦ **Base Channels:** Select *SUSE Manager Default*.
  - ♦ **Add-On Entitlements:** Select *Monitoring* and *Provisioning*.
- 3 To subscribe a channel, click *Configuration > Subscribe to Channels*, select the channel name (This is the name of the channel that you provided in [Step 2 of “Resolving Tomcat Vendor Conflict Issues” on page 173](#)), then click *Continue*.
  - 4 Click *Details*, select *Configuration File Deployment*, then click *Update Activation Key*.
  - 5 Click *Child Channels*, deselect all the selected channels by holding the Ctrl key, then click *Update Key*.

## Creating the OES Bootstrap Script and Registering the OES Server with SUSE Manager

A bootstrap file is used to register the OES server to SUSE Manager. For more information on bootstrap scripts, refer to the [SUSE Manager 1.7 Quick Start \(https://www.suse.com/documentation/suse\\_manager/book\\_susemanager\\_quickstart/data/art\\_susemanager\\_quick.html\)](https://www.suse.com/documentation/suse_manager/book_susemanager_quickstart/data/art_susemanager_quick.html).

- 1 Create an OES bootstrap file and add an activation key:
  - 1a Use PuTTY to log in to SUSE Manager with administrative credentials.
  - 1b Navigate to `/srv/www/htdocs/pub/bootstrap`.
  - 1c Create a copy of the bootstrap file using the `cp bootstrap.sh oes11strap.sh` command.
  - 1d Use an editor to open `oes11strap.sh`, locate the following elements, and add the following:
    - ♦ **ACTIVATION\_KEYS=1-:** Add the key that you specified in [Step 2 of “Creating the Activation Keys and the Bootstrap File” on page 174](#).  
For example, 1-novell. Where “novell” is the activation key that you provided in [Step 2 of “Creating the Activation Keys and the Bootstrap File” on page 174](#).
    - ♦ **FULLY\_UPDATE\_THIS\_BOX=:** Change 1 to 0. This prevents the auto-update followed by the bootstrap.



- 1e Identify the following block and remove exit 1.

```
echo "the exit below)"  
echo  
exit 1
```

- 1f Save and exit the oes11strap.sh file.

- 2 Register the OES servers to the SUSE manager for patching and upgrading:

- 2a Use PuTTY to log in to the OES server with administrative credentials.

- 2b Execute the `curl -sks https://<SUSE Manager Server_Hostname OR IP_Address>/pub/bootstrap/oes11strap.sh | /bin/bash` command.

## 7.9.2 Patching an OES 11 or Later Server by Using SUSE Manager

- 1 Ensure that you have completed [“Setting Up SUSE Manager” on page 172](#).
- 2 Log in to the SUSE Manager Web console ([https://<SUSE Manager Server\\_hostname or IP\\_address>](https://<SUSE Manager Server_hostname or IP_address>)) with administrative credentials.
- 3 Click *Systems*.  
SUSE Manager lists all the registered OES servers along with the number of patches available for each OES server.
- 4 Select the OES server, click *Software > Software Channels*, then verify that the required channels are selected.
- 5 To apply a patch, select the OES server, click *Software > Patches*, select all the patches, then click *Apply patches > Schedule the patch > Confirm*.
- 6 After all the patches are applied, click *Systems*, select the OES System to be patched and then click *Software > Packages > Upgrade*.
- 7 Select all the packages, then click *Upgrade Packages > Confirm*.  
The OES server is updated with all the patches, according to the schedule.

## 7.10 Quick Path Updating

This section contains the following Quick Path steps for patching an OES 11 server:

- ♦ [Section 7.10.1, “Do Not Use zypper up without the -t Option,” on page 176](#)
- ♦ [Section 7.10.2, “Command Line Quick Path for Updating OES 11 SP1,” on page 177](#)

### 7.10.1 Do Not Use zypper up without the -t Option

Do not use the `zypper up` command by itself to update an OES server. Always use the `-t patch` option as described in [Section 7.10.2, “Command Line Quick Path for Updating OES 11 SP1,” on page 177](#).

If the `-t patch` option is omitted, zypper includes SLES packages in the download that can cripple or completely break OES services.

The `-t patch` option also ensures that patch metadata (including script files, etc.) is downloaded so that SLES can correctly update the system.



## 7.10.2 Command Line Quick Path for Updating OES 11 SP1

### 1 Make sure you have the following:

- ♦ A Novell Customer Center account  
If you don't have one, create it at <http://www.novell.com/register>. This is the same account that you use for Bugzilla.
- ♦ Activation Codes for both SLES 11 SP2 and OES 11 SP1
- ♦ A valid installation source
- ♦ An established connection to the Internet
- ♦ All of the services installed that you need on the server.
- ♦ Enough disk space in `/var/cache/zypp/` where the update process downloads all the updates to.  
Depending on the number of patches that you are going to apply, you might need about 3 GB.
- ♦ A backup of the current data on the server.

### 2 Register the server in the Novell Customer Center (one time only).

#### 2a Log in to the server as root or su to root.

#### 2b At the command line, enter

```
suse_register -a email=email_address -a regcode-  
sles=SLES11_registration_code -a regcode-oes=oes11_registration_code
```

For example,

```
suse_register -a email=joe@example.com -a regcode-sles=4adab769abc68 -a  
regcode-oes=30a74ebb94fa
```

#### 2c Verify that the server is registered by checking to see whether you have the service types and catalogs needed for updates.

To verify the service types, enter:

```
zypper sl
```

To verify that you have the catalogs you need, enter:

```
zypper lr
```

### 3 Update the server with all available updates:

#### 3a Refresh all services by entering:

```
zypper ref -s
```

#### 3b See whether updates are available by entering:

```
zypper lu -r SLES11-SP2-Updates -r OES11-SP1-Updates
```

#### 3c Update the server with all available SLES 11 SP2 and OES 11 SP1 patches by entering:

```
zypper up -t patch -r SLES11-SP2-Updates -r OES11-SP1-Updates
```

#### 3d Repeat [Step 3b](#) and [Step 3c](#) until there are no more SLES 11 SP2 or OES 11 SP1 patches.

When there are no more patches, continue with [Step 3e](#).

#### 3e If the update requires a server reboot, do so when intimated by the system.

Rebooting the server activates the new kernel and ensures that OES services that need restarting after patching are restarted.

You can also update your server with specific maintenance patches.

- 1** Log in to the server as root or su to root.
- 2** At the command line, enter the following commands:
  - 2a** To refresh all services, enter:  

```
zypper ref -s
```
  - 2b** To check for available updates, enter:  

```
zypper lu -r SLES11-SP2-Updates -r OES11-SP1-Updates
```
  - 2c** To list the patches and their status, enter:  

```
zypper pch SLES11-SP2-Updates OES11-SP1-Updates
```
  - 2d** To view specific patch information, enter:  

```
zypper patch-info patch_name
```

For example:

```
zypper patch-info slessp2-sax2
```
  - 2e** To list all installed patches, enter:  

```
zypper search -t pch -i
```
  - 2f** To update the server with specific patches, choose from the following:
    - ♦ To install all patches from one or more catalogs of a particular category:  

```
zypper patch -r catalog1 -r catalog2 -g category_name
```

Replace *category\_name* with security, recommended, or optional.

For example:

```
zypper patch -r SLES11-SP2-Updates -r OES11-SP1-Updates -g security
```
    - ♦ To install one version of a patch without confirmation, enter:  

```
zypper --non-interactive in -t patch patch_name-version
```

For example:

```
zypper --non-interactive in -t patch oes11-CASA-3904-0
```
    - ♦ To install all versions of a patch, enter:  

```
zypper in -t patch patch_name*
```
- 2g** If the update requires a server reboot, do so when intimated by the system. This ensures that any changes to the kernel are activated, and applicable OES 11 services are restarted.

## 7.11 Installing the Latest iManager NPMs After Applying OES Patches

In an OES environment, applying the latest OES patches does not install the latest iManager NPMs automatically. They will have to be manually installed.

To install the latest iManger NPMs:

- 1** Ensure that you have applied all the available OES patches.
- 2** Log on to iManager with admin privileges.
- 3** Click *Configure > Plug-Installation > Available Novell Plug-in Modules*.

- 4 Under the *Version* column, select all the modules that have version 2.7.6 associated with it and the following iManager framework modules: iManager Base Content, iManager Framework and iManager Framework Content, then click *Install*.
- 5 After successfully installing all the NPMs, restart tomcat using the `/etc/init.d/novell-tomcat6 restart` command.



---

# 8 Using AutoYaST to Install and Configure Multiple OES Servers

If you need to install OES to multiple systems that perform similar tasks and that share the same environment and similar but not necessarily identical hardware, you might want to use AutoYaST to perform the installation.

To use AutoYaST, first you use the Configuration Management tool (*YaST > Miscellaneous > Autoinstallation*) to generate an XML profile file (referred to as a control file) and use it to perform OES installations to multiple servers that share the same hardware and environments. You can also tailor this control file for any specific environment. You then provide this control file to the YaST2 installation program.

This section does not provide complete AutoYaST instructions. It provides only the additional information you need when setting up AutoYaST to install multiple OES 11 SP1 servers.

For complete instructions on using AutoYaST2, see [Automatic Linux Installation and Configuration with Yast2](http://doc.opensuse.org/projects/YaST/openSUSE11.3/autoinstall/) (<http://doc.opensuse.org/projects/YaST/openSUSE11.3/autoinstall/>). You can also access the documentation locally on an OES server in `/usr/share/doc/packages/autoyast2/html/index.html`.

You can also use the cloning option to create clones of a particular installation. To clone a system, select *Clone This System for Autoyast* at the end of the installation. This creates `/root/autoinst.xml` that can be used for cloning. For more information, see [Automated Installation](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_sle_deployment/data/cha_deployment_autoinst.html) ([http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book\\_sle\\_deployment/data/cha\\_deployment\\_autoinst.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_sle_deployment/data/cha_deployment_autoinst.html)) in the SUSE Deployment Guide ([http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book\\_sle\\_deployment/data/cha\\_deployment\\_autoinst.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_sle_deployment/data/cha_deployment_autoinst.html)).

This section contains the following information:

- ♦ [Section 8.1, “Prerequisites,” on page 181](#)
- ♦ [Section 8.2, “Setting Up a Control File with OES Components,” on page 182](#)
- ♦ [Section 8.3, “Setting Up an Installation Source,” on page 188](#)

## 8.1 Prerequisites

You need at least the following components to install an OES 11 server by using AutoYaST:

- ☐ A server with OES 11 already installed.
- ☐ One or more target computers to install the server software to and the following information about each:
  - ♦ Number of hard disks
  - ♦ MAC address
  - ♦ Monitor types and graphics hardware

- ❑ A control file.

For information on setting up a control file with OES components, see [“Setting Up a Control File with OES Components” on page 182](#).

- ❑ A boot scenario set up.

You can boot from media or from an installation source. For more information, see [“Setting Up an Installation Source” on page 188](#).

- ❑ A source or server that contains the AutoYaST profile (control file).

For more information, see [“Setting Up an Installation Source” on page 188](#).

## 8.2 Setting Up a Control File with OES Components

The control file is an XML file that contains an installation profile for the target computer. This installation profile contains all the information to complete software installation and configuration on the target computer.

To create a control file:

- You can create the control file manually in a text editor (not recommended).
- When you complete an installation, you can click *Clone for AutoYaST*. If you use this option, the resulting file is `/root/autoinst.xml`. This file must be edited manually before using it. See [Section 8.2.1, “Fixing an Automatically Created Control File,” on page 182](#).
- You can create or modify a control file by using the AutoInstallation module in YaST. For procedures, see [Section 8.2.2, “Using the AutoInstallation Module to Create the Control File,” on page 183](#).

This system depends on existing modules that are usually used to configure a computer after OES 11 is installed on a server.

### 8.2.1 Fixing an Automatically Created Control File

Review the following issues and solutions to fix the automatically created control file.

- **Issue 1:** If you install all OES Services through AutoYaST, Apache does not run.

**Solution:** Reboot the server when the installation is complete; or, when you create the profile or control file, deselect the Print Server pattern in the Primary Functions category. If you have already created the control file, remove the following section:

```
- <printer>
  <cups_installation config:type="symbol">server< cups_installation>
  <default />
  <printcap config:type="list" />
  <server_hostname />
  <spooler>cups</spooler>
</printer>
```

- **Issue 2:** The Certificate Authorities section of the control file is not created.

**Solution:** You must insert the CA section manually.

To add this information to the control file:

1. Open YaST as root.
2. Click *Miscellaneous > Autoinstallation*.
3. Select *Security and Users > CA Management*, then click *Configure*.

4. In the *Common Name File* field, specify a name for the certificate. For example `YaST_Default_CA(hostname)`.
5. Specify an e-mail name in the *Email* field.
6. Specify a password in the *Password* field.
7. Click *File > Save* to save the file. Ignore any error messages that you receive.
8. Click *View Source* to ensure that the CA entry was entered.

It should look similar to the following:

```
<ca_mgm>
  <CAName>YaST_Default_CA</CAName>
  <ca_commonName>YaST_Default_CA(hostname)</ca_commonName>
  <country>US</country>
  <importCertificate config:type="boolean">false</importCertificate>
  <locality></locality>
  <organization></organization>
  <organizationUnit></organizationUnit>
  <password>actual_password</password>
  <server_email>name@example.com</server_email>
  <state></state>
  <takeLocalServerName config:type="boolean">true</takeLocalServerName>
</ca_mgm>
```

- ♦ **Issue 3:** If you install Novell Cluster Services, one package does not install correctly.

**Solution:** Comment out the following line in the control file.

```
<package>novell-cluster-services-kmp-smp</package>
```

For example:

```
<!--<package>novell-cluster-services-kmp-smp</package>-->
```

- ♦ **Issue 4:** If you did not patch the server during the installation, the OES product is not identified correctly in the control file.

**Solution:** When creating the profile or control file, change the product line from:

```
<product>Novell Open Enterprise Server 11</product>
```

to

```
<product>OPEN_ENTERPRISE_SERVER</product>
```

## 8.2.2 Using the AutoInstallation Module to Create the Control File

The following procedure contains a quick list of steps to create the control file by using the AutoInstallation module in YaST on a server running OES 11.

- 1 On a server that has OES 11 installed, Click *Computer > YaST Administrator Settings*.
- 2 Click *Miscellaneous > Autoinstallation*.  
The AutoYaST Configuration Management System application window opens, referred to hereafter as the *main window*.
- 3 Click *Tools > Create Reference Profile*.
- 4 In the Create a Reference Control File dialog box under *Select Additional Resources*, select the *Network card* check box, then click *Create*.

AutoYaST probes the server it is running on for software, partitioning, boot loader, network card information, language settings, mouse, and other system settings. After the information has been collected, the status messages cease and only the main window is displayed.

- 5 Verify the package selections:
  - 5a In the left frame of the main window, click *Software*, then under *Available Modules*, click *Package Selection*.
  - 5b On the Package Selection page, make sure the items are the same as you previously installed on the server. For more information on the add-ons (software selections) that are selected in the base selections or patterns, see [“Deciding What Patterns to Install” on page 28](#). If the configuration contains the packages and selections you need, skip to [Step 7](#). If not, continue with [Step 6](#).
- 6 If necessary, change the package selections for the target servers:
  - 6a In the Package Selection dialog box, click *Configure*.
  - 6b On the Software Selection page, click *Patterns* in the *Filter* field.
  - 6c Select the specific software items that you want to be added, then click *Accept*.
  - 6d If you are prompted to accept the AGFA Monotype Corporation End User License Agreement, click *Accept*.
  - 6e Accept the automatic changes by clicking *Continue* in the Changed Packages dialog box.
- 7 Specify the Partitioning parameters for the target server:
  - 7a In the left frame of the main window, click *Hardware*, under *Available Modules*, click *Partitioning*, then click the *Configure* button.
  - 7b Set up partitioning on the first drive as desired, then click *Finish*.  
See the online help for details about limitations.  
For more information on partitioning options, see [“Partitioning” in Automatic Linux Installation and Configuration with Yast2](#) (<http://doc.opensuse.org/projects/YaST/openSUSE11.3/autoinstall/CreateProfile.Partitioning.html>).
- 8 Specify the settings for the graphics card and monitor:
  - 8a In the left frame of the main window, click *Hardware*, under *Available Modules*, click *Graphics Card and Monitor*, then click the *Configure* button.
  - 8b In the *General Options* field of the X11 Configuration page, specify the settings that you want.
  - 8c In the *Desktop* field of the X11 Configuration page, select the settings that you want for the Display Manager and Window Manager, then click *Next*.
  - 8d On the Configure Monitor page, select the applicable monitor vendor and model, then click *Next*.
  - 8e Verify the X11 settings. If they are not correct, repeat [Step 8a](#) and [Step 8d](#).  
If you skip this step, the server keyboard mappings might be German.
- 9 (Optional) Insert a script to perform a task that you want, such as a script for removing partitions:  
For more information on custom user scripts, see [“Custom User Scripts”](#) ([http://www.suse.de/~ug/autoyast\\_doc/configuration.html#createprofile.scripts](http://www.suse.de/~ug/autoyast_doc/configuration.html#createprofile.scripts)) in *Automatic Linux Installation and Configuration with Yast2*.
  - 9a In the main window, click *Miscellaneous > Custom Scripts > Configure*.
  - 9b On the User Script Management page, click *New*.
  - 9c In the *File Name* field, specify a descriptive name for the script, such as `hello_world_script`.
  - 9d In the *Script Source* field, specify commands such as the following example script:



```
#!/bin/sh
`echo "hello world" > /tmp/post-script-output`
```

- 9e** Click the *Type* drop-down box, then select *Post*.  
This script runs after the installation is complete. For additional options, see the online help for this dialog box.
- 9f** Click *Save*.
- 9g** Make sure your script appears in the *Available Scripts* section of the User Script Management page, then click *Finish*.
- 9h** Make sure your script appears in the *Post Scripts* section of the Custom Scripts page.
- 10** Set the password for the `root` user:
  - 10a** From the main window, click *Security and Users > User Management > Configure*.
  - 10b** Click *Set Filter*, then select *Select System Users* from the drop-down menu.
  - 10c** Select user `root`, then click *Edit*.
  - 10d** Type a password for the `root` user in the *Password and Verify Password* fields, click *Accept*, then click *Finish*.
  - 10e** Verify that the `root` user appears in the *Users* section of the *User Management* dialog box.
- 11** Set a password for Certificate Authority management:
  - 11a** From the main window, click *Security and Users > CA Management > Configure*.
  - 11b** Type a password for the certificate in the *Password and Confirm Password* fields, then click *Finish*.
  - 11c** Verify that the Password status appears as *Set* on the *CA Management* page.
- 12** Configure OES Services:
  - 12a** From the main window, click *Open Enterprise Server > module\_name > Configure*.

All OES services are in the Open Enterprise Server category.

We recommend configuring eDirectory first. Although there are dependencies for some of the components, in this release AutoYaST does not verify whether one module is configured or not.

See the following table for category names and dependencies. You should configure all the modules that were selected for the software selections in [Step 5 on page 184](#). For more information about which modules are in each pattern, see [“Deciding What Patterns to Install” on page 28](#).

Pattern	Other Module Dependencies
Novell AFP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Backup / Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>♦ Novell eDirectory</li> <li>♦ Novell Storage Services (NSS)</li> <li>♦ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>♦ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> </ul>

Pattern	Other Module Dependencies
Novell Archive and Version Services	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Backup/Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>♦ Novell eDirectory</li> <li>♦ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>♦ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> <li>♦ Novell Storage Services (NSS)</li> </ul>
Novell Backup/Storage Management Services (SMS)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>♦ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> </ul>
Novell CIFS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Backup / Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>♦ Novell eDirectory</li> <li>♦ Novell Storage Services (NSS)</li> <li>♦ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>♦ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> </ul>
Novell Cluster Services (NCS)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Backup/Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>♦ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>♦ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> </ul>
Novell DHCP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Backup/Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>♦ Novell eDirectory</li> <li>♦ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>♦ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> </ul>
Novell DNS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Backup/Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>♦ Novell eDirectory</li> <li>♦ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>♦ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> </ul>
Novell Domain Services for Windows	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Backup / Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>♦ Novell eDirectory</li> <li>♦ Novell DNS</li> <li>♦ Novell iManager</li> <li>♦ Novell iPrint</li> <li>♦ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>♦ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> <li>♦ Novell Storage Services (NSS)</li> <li>♦ Novell NCP Server</li> </ul>
Novell eDirectory	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Backup/Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>♦ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>♦ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> </ul>

Pattern	Other Module Dependencies
Novell FTP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Backup/Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>♦ Novell eDirectory</li> <li>♦ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>♦ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> </ul>
Novell iFolder	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Backup/Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>♦ Novell eDirectory</li> <li>♦ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>♦ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> </ul>
Novell iManager	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Backup/Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>♦ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>♦ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> </ul>
Novell iPrint	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Backup/Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>♦ Novell eDirectory</li> <li>♦ Novell iManager</li> <li>♦ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>♦ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> </ul>
Novell Linux User Management (LUM)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Backup/Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>♦ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> </ul>
Novell NCP Server / Dynamic Storage Technology	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Backup/Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>♦ Novell eDirectory</li> <li>♦ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>♦ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> </ul>
Novell NetStorage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Backup/Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>♦ Novell iManager</li> <li>♦ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>♦ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> </ul>
Novell Pre-Migration Server	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Backup / Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>♦ Novell eDirectory (without a replica)</li> <li>♦ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>♦ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> </ul>
Novell QuickFinder	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Backup/Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>♦ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>♦ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> </ul>
Novell Remote Manager (NRM)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Backup/Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>♦ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> </ul>

Pattern	Other Module Dependencies
Novell Samba	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Backup/Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>♦ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>♦ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> </ul>
Novell Storage Services (NSS)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Novell Backup/Storage Management Services (SMS)</li> <li>♦ Novell eDirectory</li> <li>♦ Novell NCP Server</li> <li>♦ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)</li> <li>♦ Novell Remote Manager (NRM)</li> </ul>

- 12b** Type or select the information for each field requested on each page, then click *Next* until a summary of settings is displayed for that service.
- 12c** Verify that the settings for each module are what you want.  
If not, click *Reset Configuration* and provide the corrected settings.
- 12d** Repeat [Step 12a](#) through [Step 12c](#) until all the required modules have been configured, then continue with [Step 13](#).
- 13** Save the file.:
- 13a** Click *File > Save*.
- 13b** Browse to a location that you want to save the file to.
- 13c** Type `filename.xml`, then click *Save*.  
Replace *filename* with an appropriate name to identify the control file for the installation you are performing.  
By default, the file is saved in the `/var/lib/autoinstall/repository/` directory.  
For additional filename requirements and recommendations, see [“The Auto-Installation Process” in Automatic Linux Installation and Configuration with Yast2](http://doc.opensuse.org/projects/YaST/openSUSE11.3/autoinstall/) (<http://doc.opensuse.org/projects/YaST/openSUSE11.3/autoinstall/>).
- 14** Exit the configuration management tool by clicking *File > Exit*.
- 15** Proceed with [“Setting Up an Installation Source” on page 188](#).

## 8.3 Setting Up an Installation Source

For OES 11, you must set up a separate directory for the SLES 11 SP2 software and the OES 11 software.

AutoYaST requires an installation source. You have several options. For an explanation of each, see [“Network Based Installation”](http://doc.opensuse.org/projects/YaST/openSUSE11.3/autoinstall/Bootmanagement.html) (<http://doc.opensuse.org/projects/YaST/openSUSE11.3/autoinstall/Bootmanagement.html>) and [“The Auto-Installation Process” in Automatic Linux Installation and Configuration with Yast2](http://doc.opensuse.org/projects/YaST/openSUSE11.3/autoinstall/) (<http://doc.opensuse.org/projects/YaST/openSUSE11.3/autoinstall/>).

---

# 9 Installing OES as a VM Host Server

You can install Novell Open Enterprise Server (OES) 11 as a VM host server for either the Xen or KVM virtualization services included with SLES 11. To understand why you might want your VM host server to have OES 11 installed, see “[Why Install OES Services on Your VM Host?](#)” in the *OES 11 SP1: Planning and Implementation Guide*.

---

**IMPORTANT:** Only Xen supports NetWare 6.5 SP8 running as a VM guest server. KVM does not.

Both Xen and KVM support OES 11 running as a VM guest server.

---

- [Section 9.1, “Installing the KVM Hypervisor and Tools,”](#) on page 189
- [Section 9.2, “Installing the Xen Hypervisor and Tools,”](#) on page 190
- [Section 9.3, “Upgrading an OES 2 Xen VM Host Server to OES 11,”](#) on page 192
- [Section 9.4, “Setting Up Bridging After the Upgrade,”](#) on page 192

## 9.1 Installing the KVM Hypervisor and Tools

---

**IMPORTANT:** KVM requires a server that supports Intel Virtualization Technology (VT) with VT enabled.

---

The following instructions assume that you are installing OES 11 SP1 and the KVM hypervisor and tools on a SLES 11 SP2 server that you have previously installed. You can also install KVM at the same time as SLES.

For more information about KVM, see the *Virtualization with KVM* ([http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book\\_kvm/data/book\\_kvm.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_kvm/data/book_kvm.html)) guide.

- 1 To install KVM, on the SLES 11 SP2 server desktop click *Computer > YaST > Virtualization > Install Hypervisor and Tools*.
- 2 Select KVM, click *Accept > Install*.
- 3 Click *Yes* to install a network bridge.  
After the software installs and configures, you are prompted to restart the machine. To avoid an interruption, you can do this in [Step 15](#).
- 4 To install OES 11, under *Software*, click *Add-on Products*.
- 5 On the Installed Add-On Products page, click *Add*.
- 6 On the Media Type page, specify the type of your OES 11 installation media you are using and click *Next* and add the installation media.  
For more information, see [Section 3.5, “Specifying the Add-On Product Installation Information,”](#) on page 50.
- 7 On the Software Selections page, scroll down to the *OES Services* category.

Only the following are supported on a VM host server:

- ♦ Novell iPrint
- ♦ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)
- ♦ Novell Storage Management Services (SMS)
- ♦ Novell Cluster Services (NCS)

You can select any of these services that you want to be available on the host server, or you can leave all of the services deselected. In either case, the server will be configured as an OES server.

- 8 If you selected any of the supported OES services, Novell Remote Manager (NRM) is also selected. Click the green check mark by NRM to deselect NRM and prevent it from being installed. NRM is not a supported OES service on a VM host server.

- 9 Click *Accept*.

OES 11 is installed.

- 10 On the Configured LDAP Servers page, specify the tree name, admin name, and password for the eDirectory tree into which you are installing the host server.

---

**IMPORTANT:** If you didn't select any OES services, the Novell Open Enterprise Server Configuration page appears instead. In that case, the Configured LDAP Servers page is accessible via the *LDAP Configuration for Open Enterprise Services* link.

---

- 11 Click *Add* and specify the IP address of a server in the tree that has eDirectory installed on it, then click *Next*.

- 12 On the Novell Open Enterprise Server Configuration page, click *Next*.

- 13 On the Installation Completed page, click *Finish*.

- 14 On the Novell Customer Center page, select *Registration Code* and click *Next*. Register your OES 11 server.

For more information, see [Chapter 7, "Updating \(Patching\) an OES 11 SP1 Server,"](#) on page 163.

- 15 Shut down, and then restart the server.

The server is now prepared to function as a KVM VM host server. For instructions on starting and running the server, see the [Virtualization with KVM](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_kvm/data/book_kvm.html) ([http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book\\_kvm/data/book\\_kvm.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_kvm/data/book_kvm.html)) guide.

## 9.2 Installing the Xen Hypervisor and Tools

The following instructions assume that you are installing OES 11 SP1 and the Xen hypervisor and tools on a SLES 11 SP2 server that you have previously installed.

---

**NOTE:** You can also install Xen and OES 11 SP1 at the same time as SLES either using the integrated SLES 11 SP2 with OES media or using OES 11 SP1 add-on media. For either of these later options, the instructions that follow require slight but straight-forward adjustments.

---

For more information about Xen, see the [Virtualization with Xen](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_xen/data/book_xen.html) ([http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book\\_xen/data/book\\_xen.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_xen/data/book_xen.html)) guide.

- 1 To install Xen, on the SLES 11 SP2 server desktop click *Computer > YaST > Virtualization > Install Hypervisor and Tools*.
- 2 Select *Xen*, click *Accept > Install*.
- 3 Click *Yes* to install a network bridge.

After the software installs and configures, you are prompted to restart the machine. To avoid an interruption, you can do this in [Step 15](#).

- 4 To install OES 11, under *Software*, click *Add-on Products*.
- 5 On the Installed Add-On Products page, click *Add*.
- 6 On the Media Type page, specify the type of your OES 11 installation media you are using and click *Next* and add the installation media.

For more information, see [Section 3.5, “Specifying the Add-On Product Installation Information,” on page 50](#).

- 7 On the Software Selections page, scroll down to the *OES Services* category.

Only the following are supported on a VM host server:

- ♦ Novell iPrint
- ♦ Novell Linux User Management (LUM)
- ♦ Novell Storage Management Services (SMS)
- ♦ Novell Cluster Services (NCS)

You can select any of these services that you want to be available on the host server, or you can leave all of the services deselected. In either case, the server will be configured as an OES server.

- 8 If you selected any of the supported OES services, Novell Remote Manager (NRM) is also selected. Click the green check mark by NRM to deselect NRM and prevent it from being installed. NRM is not a supported OES service on a VM host server.

- 9 Click *Accept*.

OES 11 is installed.

- 10 On the Configured LDAP Servers page, specify the tree name, admin name, and password for the eDirectory tree into which you are installing the host server.

---

**IMPORTANT:** If you didn't select any OES services, the Novell Open Enterprise Server Configuration page appears instead. In that case, the Configured LDAP Servers page is accessible via the *LDAP Configuration for Open Enterprise Services* link.

---

- 11 Click *Add* and specify the IP address of a server in the tree that has eDirectory installed on it, then click *Next*.
- 12 On the Novell Open Enterprise Server Configuration page, click *Next*.
- 13 On the Installation Completed page, click *Finish*.
- 14 On the Novell Customer Center page, select *Registration Code* and click *Next*. Register your OES 11 server.  
For more information, see [Chapter 7, “Updating \(Patching\) an OES 11 SP1 Server,” on page 163](#).
- 15 Shut down, and then restart the server.
- 16 To run the server as a Xen host, you must select the boot option that includes the Xen kernel . Alternatively, you can modify the boot loaded in YaST to load the Xen kernel by default.

## 9.3 Upgrading an OES 2 Xen VM Host Server to OES 11

The upgrade process of a Xen VM host server is exactly the same as upgrading a regular OES 2 server to OES 11, with one important difference. After the server is updated, the Xen Hypervisor might have an incorrect network configuration that prevents Xen from running.

SUSE has improved the network configuration in SLES 11. If you install SLES 11 SP2 and configure Xen, you get a bridged setup through YaST. However, if you upgrade from SLES 10 to SLES 11, the upgrade does not configure the bridged setup automatically. Until the bridged setup is configured for SLES 11, your Xen VM guest servers will not run. Be sure to set up the bridge using YaST as outlined in [Section 9.4, “Setting Up Bridging After the Upgrade,” on page 192](#).

---

**NOTE:** If you have an advanced network configuration, refer to the SLES documentation for instructions on configuring your network settings during the upgrade. The instructions in this section assume a single network interface.

---

## 9.4 Setting Up Bridging After the Upgrade

After the upgrade completes and the server has all patches applied, do the following:

- 1 On the desktop, click *Computer > YaST*.
- 2 Click *Virtualization > Install Hypervisor and Tools*.
- 3 Select *Xen* and click *Accept*.
- 4 If prompted to install packages, click *Install*.
- 5 When prompted to configure a network bridge, click *Yes*.
- 6 When the hypervisor and tools installation is completed, click *OK*.
- 7 Click *YaST > Virtualization > VirtualMachineManager*.
- 8 Click *File > Add Connection > Connect*.

Your VM guests are now able to be run.



---

# 10 Installing, Upgrading, or Updating OES on a VM

In Novell Open Enterprise Server (OES), you can install OES 11 SP1 as a guest operating system on the following servers:

- ♦ An OES 11 SP1 server that has been set up as a Xen-based host server  
See [Chapter 9, “Installing OES as a VM Host Server,”](#) on page 189.
- ♦ A SUSE Linux Enterprise Server (SLES) 11 SP2 Linux server running KVM.  
See the *Virtualization with KVM* ([http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book\\_kvm/data/book\\_kvm.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_kvm/data/book_kvm.html)) guide.
- ♦ A SUSE Linux Enterprise Server (SLES) 11 SP2 Linux server running Xen.  
See the *Virtualization with Xen* ([http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book\\_xen/data/book\\_xen.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_xen/data/book_xen.html)) guide.

For general information on the virtualization technology in SLES 11 SP2, see the [SLES 11 documentation](#) (<http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/>).

This section documents the system requirements, installation instructions, upgrade and migration instructions, and issues associated with setting up OES 11 SP1 on a Xen-based virtual machine.

- ♦ [Section 10.1, “System Requirements,”](#) on page 193
- ♦ [Section 10.2, “Prerequisites,”](#) on page 195
- ♦ [Section 10.3, “Preparing the Installation Software,”](#) on page 195
- ♦ [Section 10.4, “Installing an OES 11 SP1 VM Guest,”](#) on page 195
- ♦ [Section 10.5, “Upgrading an OES 2 VM Guest to OES 11 SP1,”](#) on page 199
- ♦ [Section 10.6, “Managing a Virtual Machine Running OES 11 SP1,”](#) on page 200
- ♦ [Section 10.7, “Setting Up an OES 11 SP1 VM Guest to Use Novell Storage Services \(NSS\),”](#) on page 200

## 10.1 System Requirements

To create an OES 11 SP1 VM guest, you need a SLES 11 SP2 or OES 11 SP1 server that is set up as a VM host server.

- ♦ [Section 10.1.1, “OES 11 SP1 VM Host Considerations,”](#) on page 194
- ♦ [Section 10.1.2, “Novell Storage Services Considerations,”](#) on page 194
- ♦ [Section 10.1.3, “Setup Instructions,”](#) on page 194

## 10.1.1 OES 11 SP1 VM Host Considerations

When you set up a virtual machine host for OES 11 SP1 VM guests, ensure that the host server has the following:

- ♦ **Time synchronization:** Set the server's time configuration to the same reliable, external time source as the eDirectory tree that the virtual machines on that host will be joining.  
To set the time source, use *Yast > Network Services > NTP Time Configuration*.  
The time source can be running NTP or Timesync with the NTP option selected.
- ♦ **RAM:** Enough memory to support each virtual machine that you want to run concurrently on the host server.  
For example, if you are installing one OES 11 SP1 virtual machine, you need a minimum of 2 GB of memory (1 GB for the host plus 1GB MB for the OES 11 Linux VM).  
If you are installing two virtual machines, and the first VM guest's services need 1 GB and the second guest's need 1.5 GB, you need 2.5 GB for the VM guests and 1 GB for the host—a total of 3.5 GB.
- ♦ **Disk Space:** Enough disk space on the host for creating and running your VM guests.  
The default disk space required for an OES 11 SP1 VM guest is 7 GB and the default allocation for each VM guest in Xen is 10 GB, leaving only approximately 6 GB for data files, etc. The space you need is dependent on what you plan to use the virtual server for and what other virtual storage devices, such as NSS volumes, that you plan to attach to it.

## 10.1.2 Novell Storage Services Considerations

If you want to set up Novell Storage Services (NSS) on the virtual machine, note the following:

NSS can recognize physical, logical, or virtual devices up to 2E64 sectors (8388608 petabytes (PB) based on the 512-byte sector size.

For information, see “[Device Size](#)” in the *OES 11 SP1: NSS File System Administration Guide for Linux*.

## 10.1.3 Setup Instructions

As mentioned in [Section 10.1, “System Requirements,”](#) on page 193, you can use either a SLES 11 SP2 server or an OES 11 SP1 server as your VM host server.

For setup procedures, see the following information:

- ♦ **SLES 11 SP2:** See the *Virtualization with KVM* ([http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book\\_xen/data/book\\_xen.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_xen/data/book_xen.html)) and the *Virtualization with Xen* ([http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book\\_xen/data/book\\_xen.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_xen/data/book_xen.html)) guides.
- ♦ **OES 11 SP1:** “[Chapter 9, “Installing OES as a VM Host Server,”](#) on page 189.”

## 10.2 Prerequisites

Before creating an OES 11 SP1 virtual machine, you need the following:

- ♦ If you want to use AutoYaST to specify the Installation settings, create an AutoYaST profile (control) file and download it to a directory on the host machine server or make it available on the network. For more information, see [Chapter 8, “Using AutoYaST to Install and Configure Multiple OES Servers,”](#) on page 181.
- ♦ A static IP address for each virtual server that you want to create.

## 10.3 Preparing the Installation Software

- ♦ [Section 10.3.1, “Downloading the Installation Software,”](#) on page 195
- ♦ [Section 10.3.2, “Preparing the Installation Source Files,”](#) on page 195

### 10.3.1 Downloading the Installation Software

For information on downloading the following ISO image files, see the [Novell Open Enterprise Server 11 Download Instructions](#) ([http://www.novell.com/documentation/oes11/esd/di\\_oes11.html](http://www.novell.com/documentation/oes11/esd/di_oes11.html)).

**Table 10-1** OES ISO Images and CD Labels for x86\_64 (64-Bit Installations)

ISO Image File	CD Label
OES11-SP1-addon-x86_64-CD1.iso	Novell Open Enterprise Server 11 SP1 CD 1
SLES-11-SP2-DVD-x86_64-GM-DVD1.iso	SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 SP2 DVD

### 10.3.2 Preparing the Installation Source Files

To create an OES 11 SP1 VM guest, you must make the installation software available in one of the following locations:

- ♦ **A Local Installation Source:** The 64-bit ([Table 10-1](#)) ISO files copied to the host server’s local drives.
- ♦ **A Network Installation Source:** The 64-bit ([Table 10-1](#)) ISO files used to create a network installation source. For instructions, see [“Setting Up the Server Holding the Installation Sources” in the SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 Deployment Guide](#) ([http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book\\_sle\\_deployment/data/sec\\_deployment\\_remoteinst\\_instserver.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_sle_deployment/data/sec_deployment_remoteinst_instserver.html)).

## 10.4 Installing an OES 11 SP1 VM Guest

Creating an OES 11 SP1 virtual machine requires you to complete the following major tasks.

- ♦ [Section 10.4.1, “Specifying Options for Creating an OES 11 SP1 VM Guest,”](#) on page 196
- ♦ [Section 10.4.2, “Specifying the Installation Mode,”](#) on page 198
- ♦ [Section 10.4.3, “Specifying the Add-On Product Installation Information,”](#) on page 199
- ♦ [Section 10.4.4, “Completing the OES 11 SP1 VM Guest Installation,”](#) on page 199

## 10.4.1 Specifying Options for Creating an OES 11 SP1 VM Guest

The Create Virtual Machine Wizard helps you through the steps required to create a VM guest and install the desired operating system.

- 1 Launch the Create Virtual Machine Wizard by using one of the following methods:
  - ♦ From the virtualization host server desktop, click *YaST* > *Virtualization* > *Create Virtual Machines*
  - ♦ From within Virtual Machine Manager, click *New*.
  - ♦ At the command line, enter `vm-install`.

If the wizard does not appear or the `vm-install` command does not work, review the process of installing and starting the virtualization host server. The virtualization software might not be installed properly.

- 2 After specifying that you want to create a virtual machine, click *Forward*.
- 3 Click *Forward*.

The option to set up a virtual machine based on an existing disk or disk image is supported only if the existing disk or disk image was originally set up through the Create Virtual Machine Wizard.

- 4 On the Type of Operating System page, select the most recent version of OES shown, then click *Forward*.

The Summary page appears.



---

**NOTE:** Detailed explanations of the Summary page settings are available in “[Virtualization: Configuration Options and Settings \(http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book\\_xen/data/cha\\_xen\\_config.html\)](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_xen/data/cha_xen_config.html)” in the *Virtualization with Xen guide (http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book\_xen/data/book\_xen.html)*.

---

**5** Click *Name of Virtual Machine*.

**6** Specify a name for the virtual machine in the *Name* field, then click *Apply*.

For example, you might specify *hostname\_vm*, where *hostname* is the DNS name of the server you are installing in the VM.

**7** Click *Hardware*.

**7a** Specify the amount of initial and maximum memory for the virtual machine to consume from the available memory. The initial memory should not be less than 1024 MB.

**7b** Specify the number of processors that you want the virtual machine to use.

**7c** Click *Apply*.

**8** If you want to change the graphics adapter settings, click *Graphics* and select the type of graphic support desired, then click *Apply*.

**9** Click *Disks*.

The Virtual Disks dialog box lets you create one or more virtual disks that the OES 11 SP1 VM guest has access to. If you are installing from a DVD on the host server or from an ISO image file copied to the host server's storage devices, these are also listed as virtual disks.

Initially, a 10 GB file is specified for the partitions/volumes on the virtual server. The default location of the file is `/var/lib/xen/images`.

By default, this is a sparse file, meaning that although 10 GB is allocated, the size of the file on the disk is only as large as the actual data it contains. Sparse files conserve disk space, but they have a negative impact on performance.

The OES 11 SP1 installation guidelines recommend 10 GB for a server installation. Keep in mind, however, that you are defining the total local disk size for the server. You should allocate as much local space as you anticipate the server needing for data and other files after it is hosting user services.

**9a** Specify the hard disk space you want to be available to the virtual machine.

**9b** Click *Apply*.

**9c** To create additional virtual disks, click the Harddisk icon in the Disks wizard.

**10** If you are installing SLES 11 SP2 from a downloaded ISO image file, click *CD-ROM*, browse to the SLES 11 SP2 image file, then click *Open* > *OK* > *Apply*.

**11** If you are installing OES 11 SP1 from a downloaded ISO image file, click *CD-ROM*, browse to the OES 11 SP1 image file, then click *Open* > *OK* > *Apply*.

**12** If you want to change the network adapter settings, click *Network Adapters*, view the default setting, then edit the default settings.

or

Click *New* and specify the setting for another network board of your choice, then click *Apply*.

**13** Click *Operating System*:

**13a** If you are installing from a downloaded ISO image, make sure that the SLES 11 SP2 image is specified as the *Virtual Disk* installation source.

**13b** If you are installing from a network installation source, specify the URL for the SLES 11 SP2 network installation source.

You specify a network installation source for OES 11 SP1 during the install.

**13c** If you are using an AutoYaST control file to specify the settings for a virtual machine operating system, specify the path to the file in the *AutoYaST File* field or click the *Find* button to the right of the field to locate the file on the local host server.

- 13d** If necessary, use the *Additional Arguments* field to specify additional install or boot parameters to assist the installation.

For example, if you wanted to specify the parameters for an IP address of 192.35.1.10, a netmask of 255.255.255.0, a gateway of 192.35.1.254 for the virtual server, and use ssh to access the installation from another workstation, you could enter the following parameters in the *Additional Argument* field:

```
hostip=192.35.1.10 netmask=255.255.255.0 gateway=192.35.1.254 usessh=1  
sshpasword=password
```

- 13e** Click *Apply*.

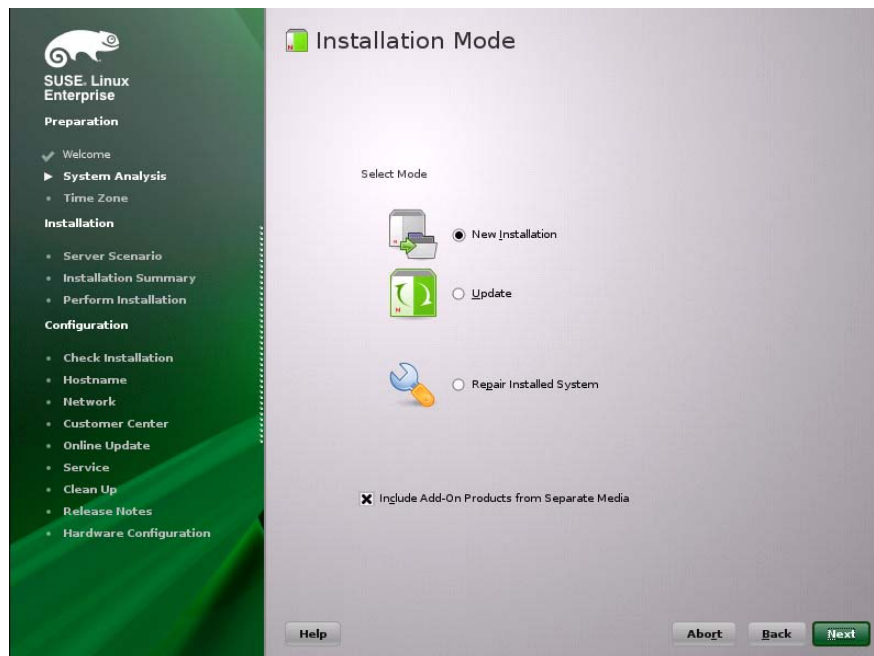
- 14** Click *OK* to start the virtual machine and launch the operating system installation program.

- 15** Continue with [Section 10.4.2, “Specifying the Installation Mode,”](#) on page 198.

## 10.4.2 Specifying the Installation Mode

- 1** When the *Installation Mode* screen displays, select the following menu options:

- ♦ *New Installation*
- ♦ *Include Add-On Products from Separate Media*



- 2** Click *Next*.

- 3** Continue with [Section 10.4.3, “Specifying the Add-On Product Installation Information,”](#) on page 199.

## 10.4.3 Specifying the Add-On Product Installation Information

When the Add-On Product Installation page displays:

- 1 Click *Add*.
- 2 If you are installing OES 11 SP1 from an ISO image file:
  - 2a On the Add-On Product Media page, click *Specify URL*, then click *Next*.
  - 2b In the URL field, type  
`hd:///device=/dev/xvdc/`
  - 2c Click *OK*.
  - 2d Skip to [Step 4](#).
- 3 If you are installing from a network installation source, click the appropriate protocol for your situation, then click *Next* and supply the required information.
- 4 Read and accept the Novell Open Enterprise Server 11 license agreement, then click *Next*.
- 5 Confirm that the Add-On Product Installation page shows the correct path to the OES media, then click *Next*.
- 6 Continue with [“Completing the OES 11 SP1 VM Guest Installation.”](#)

## 10.4.4 Completing the OES 11 SP1 VM Guest Installation

- 1 Follow the on-screen prompts, using the information contained in the following sections:
  - 1a [Section 3.6, “Setting Up the Clock and Time Zone,”](#) on page 50.
  - 1b [Section 3.7, “Specifying the Installation Settings for the SLES Base and OES Installation,”](#) on page 50.
  - 1c [Section 3.8, “Specifying Configuration Information,”](#) on page 57.

During the configuration portion of the installation, you might see additional prompts concerning hardware detection of the network cards, DSL, PPPoE DSL, ISDN cards, and modems.

When you specify the time source during the eDirectory configuration, use the same time source as the eDirectory tree you are installing the server into.

After the installation, enable the virtual machine’s Independent Wall Clock setting and reboot the virtual machine so it can synchronize its time correctly. For more information on this configuration issue, [“Virtual Machine Clock Settings \(http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book\\_xen/data/sec\\_xen\\_guests\\_suse\\_time.html\)”](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_xen/data/sec_xen_guests_suse_time.html) in the *Virtualization with Xen guide (http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book\_xen/data/book\_xen.html)*.
  - 1d [Section 3.9, “Finishing the Installation,”](#) on page 106.

During the hardware configuration, graphics and sound cards are not recognized when installing OES 11 SP1 as a VM guest.
- 2 Complete the server setup by following the procedures in [“Chapter 6, “Completing OES Installation or Upgrade Tasks,”](#) on page 159.”

## 10.5 Upgrading an OES 2 VM Guest to OES 11 SP1

---

**IMPORTANT:** To upgrade an OES 2 VM guest to OES 11 SP1, you must install using files on the network. Physical media upgrades and using ISO image files are not supported methods.

---

Performing a down-server upgrade on a Xen VM guest running on a SLES 11/OES 11 SP1 VM host is very much like upgrading a physical machine

- ♦ [Section 10.5.1, “Before You Start the Upgrade Process,” on page 200](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.5.2, “Starting the Upgrade,” on page 200](#)

## 10.5.1 Before You Start the Upgrade Process

- 1 Make sure you follow all of the applicable instructions and guidelines in [Section 5.2, “Planning for the Upgrade to OES 11 SP1,” on page 116](#) and [Section 5.3, “Meeting the Upgrade Requirements,” on page 117](#).

## 10.5.2 Starting the Upgrade

- 1 In Virtual Machine Manager, shut down the OES 2 VM guest that you are upgrading.
- 2 Click the *Create a New Virtual Machine* icon or right-click localhost (Xen) and choose *New*.
- 3 Click *Forward*.
- 4 Select *I Need to Upgrade an Existing Operating System*, then click *Forward*.
- 5 Select *Novell Open Enterprise Server 2*, then click *Forward*.
- 6 In the Managed Virtual Machines list, select the VM guest you are upgrading.
- 7 In the Network URL field, type the URL to your SLES 11 SP2 network-based installation source, then click *Upgrade*.
- 8 On the Welcome page, agree to the license and click *Next*.
- 9 For instructions on the rest of the upgrade process, go to [Section 5.4.5, “Selecting the Installation Mode Options,” on page 125](#) and continue from there.

## 10.6 Managing a Virtual Machine Running OES 11 SP1

Managing a virtual machine running OES 11 SP1 is the same as managing virtual machines running other operating systems. See the instructions for your virtualization platform:

- ♦ “[Managing a Virtualization Environment \(http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book\\_xen/data/cha\\_xen\\_manage.html\)](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_xen/data/cha_xen_manage.html)” in the *Virtualization with Xen guide* ([http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book\\_xen/data/book\\_xen.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_xen/data/book_xen.html)).
- ♦ The *Virtualization with KVM guide* ([http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book\\_kvm/data/book\\_kvm.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_kvm/data/book_kvm.html)).

## 10.7 Setting Up an OES 11 SP1 VM Guest to Use Novell Storage Services (NSS)

When you install OES 11 SP1 on a virtual machine, we recommend that you configure a virtual machine with multiple devices. Use the primary virtual disk as the system device with LVM2 (the YaST install default) as the volume manager. After the install, you can assign additional storage resources from the host server to the virtual machine.

---

**IMPORTANT:** When you create the virtual machine, make sure to configure the size of the primary virtual disk according to the amount of space you need for the /boot, swap, and root (/) volumes.

---



After the virtual machine is set up, you need to perform additional tasks to set up additional Novell Storage Service (NSS) devices. See [“Using NSS in a Virtualization Environment”](#) in the *OES 11 SP1: NSS File System Administration Guide for Linux*.



---

# 11 Installing and Managing NetWare on a Xen-based VM

---

**IMPORTANT:** NetWare 6.5 SP8 has been modified to run in paravirtual mode on a Xen virtual machine. Running NetWare in fully virtualized mode on a Xen host server or on a KVM host server is not supported.

---

You can install NetWare as a virtual machine guest (VM guest) operating system on the following servers:

- ♦ A SUSE Linux Enterprise Server (SLES) 11 SP2 Linux server

See “Setting Up a Virtual Machine Host” ([http://www.novell.com/documentation/sles10/book\\_virtualization\\_xen/data/cha\\_xen\\_virtualization\\_vhost\\_setup.html](http://www.novell.com/documentation/sles10/book_virtualization_xen/data/cha_xen_virtualization_vhost_setup.html)) in the *Virtualization with Xen* guide ([http://www.novell.com/documentation/sles10/book\\_virtualization\\_xen/data/book\\_virtualization\\_xen.html](http://www.novell.com/documentation/sles10/book_virtualization_xen/data/book_virtualization_xen.html)).

- ♦ An OES 11 server that has been set up as a Xen-based host server

See “Chapter 9, “Installing OES as a VM Host Server,” on page 189.”

For general information on the Xen virtualization technology in SLES 11 SP2, see the *Virtualization with Xen* guide ([http://www.novell.com/documentation/sles10/book\\_virtualization\\_xen/data/book\\_virtualization\\_xen.html](http://www.novell.com/documentation/sles10/book_virtualization_xen/data/book_virtualization_xen.html)).

This section documents the system requirements, installation instructions, upgrade and migration instructions, and issues associated with setting up NetWare on a Xen-based virtual machine.

- ♦ [Section 11.1, “Introduction,” on page 203](#)
- ♦ [Section 11.2, “Support Information,” on page 204](#)
- ♦ [Section 11.3, “Preparing to Install a NetWare VM Guest Server,” on page 205](#)
- ♦ [Section 11.4, “Installing Virtualized NetWare,” on page 208](#)
- ♦ [Section 11.5, “Managing NetWare on a Virtual Machine,” on page 213](#)
- ♦ [Section 11.6, “If VM Manager Doesn’t Launch on a Xen VM Host Server,” on page 215](#)

## 11.1 Introduction

To simplify the process of installing virtualization software, the SLES 11 SP2 software includes *Xen Virtual Machine Host Server* as a primary server function that you can select when installing SLES 11 SP2 as a virtualization host server.

Selecting this pattern installs the Xen host server software, which enables the server to boot the Xen version of the SLES 11 SP2 operating system kernel. It also installs utilities for preparing and creating virtual machines.

After the host server is up and running, you can then create a virtual machine and install NetWare 6.5 SP8 as a guest operating system.

## 11.2 Support Information

- ♦ [Section 11.2.1, “OES Registration Is Required for Support,” on page 204](#)
- ♦ [Section 11.2.2, “Supported Configurations and Features,” on page 204](#)
- ♦ [Section 11.2.3, “Unsupported Configurations and Features,” on page 204](#)

### 11.2.1 OES Registration Is Required for Support

Virtualized NetWare in Xen is an OES product feature. Support for NetWare on a Xen virtual machine is available only to registered OES customers.

### 11.2.2 Supported Configurations and Features

The following configurations and features are supported for NetWare VM guest servers.

- ♦ NetWare 6.5 SP7 and later running in paravirtual mode.
- ♦ The graphical paravirtualized frame buffer and the text-based console interface.
- ♦ Running on 32-bit, 32-bit PAE, and 64-bit hypervisors.
- ♦ Running in 32-bit PAE compatibility mode on 64-bit platforms.
- ♦ Up to 16 block devices.
- ♦ Up to 32 virtual CPUs.
- ♦ The pause and resume functionality.
- ♦ The `xm shutdown` command.
- ♦ The `shutdown` command in Virtual Machine Manager.
- ♦ Allocated memory from 1 GB to 8 GB.
- ♦ VCPU cover commitment, pinning, and capping.

### 11.2.3 Unsupported Configurations and Features

The following configurations and features are not supported for NetWare VM guest servers.

- ♦ NetWare in full virtualization mode.
- ♦ NetWare 6.5 SP6 and earlier running on a virtual machine.
- ♦ VCPU hotplug.
- ♦ Network or block device hotplug.
- ♦ Virtual memory resizing.
- ♦ Direct access to physical devices.
- ♦ The `save`, `restore`, and `migrate` commands.
- ♦ Some Novell Remote Manager debugging features.

## 11.3 Preparing to Install a NetWare VM Guest Server

- ♦ [Section 11.3.1, “Planning for VM Host Servers,” on page 205](#)
- ♦ [Section 11.3.2, “Planning for NetWare VM Guest Servers,” on page 206](#)
- ♦ [Section 11.3.3, “You Must Use Timesync for Time Synchronization,” on page 207](#)
- ♦ [Section 11.3.4, “Disabling the Alt+Esc Shortcut on the Host,” on page 207](#)

### 11.3.1 Planning for VM Host Servers

- ♦ [“Meeting Server Hardware and Software Requirements” on page 205](#)
- ♦ [“Deciding Whether to Run OES Services on VM Host Servers” on page 205](#)

#### Meeting Server Hardware and Software Requirements

To accommodate NetWare VM guest servers, your VM host servers must:

- ☐ Meet the criteria specified in [“Setting Up a Virtual Machine Host” \(http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book\\_xen/data/cha\\_xen\\_vhost.html\)](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_xen/data/cha_xen_vhost.html) in the *Virtualization with Xen* ([http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book\\_xen/data/book\\_xen.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_xen/data/book_xen.html)) guide.
- ☐ Have enough memory (RAM) on the physical machine for:
  - ♦ The SLES 11 operating system (512 MB)
  - ♦ Any of the supported OES services that you install on the VM host (512 MB)
  - ♦ Each NetWare virtual machine that you plan to run concurrently (1 GB to 8 GB)

For example, if you are installing one NetWare VM guest server on a SLES 10 VM host server, you need a minimum of 2 GB of memory: 1 GB for the VM host server and 1 GB for the NetWare VM guest server. For optimal performance, you should allocate as much memory as possible for each NetWare VM guest, up to 8 GB each.

- ☐ Have enough disk space on the host server for creating and running the VM guest servers.

The default disk space for a NetWare VM guest server is 10 GB. You might need more or less space, depending on what you will use the guest server for and what its storage configuration will be. You might want to locate your virtual machines on a separate partition or even on a separate storage device. For example, you might create a `/vm` partition on a separate drive installed in the server. For additional information, see [“Storage Planning” on page 206](#).

#### Deciding Whether to Run OES Services on VM Host Servers

You should also decide whether to install OES 11 and one or more of its supported services on your VM host servers.

To ensure that optimal resources are available to the virtual machines, each VM host server should be dedicated to running the Xen virtualization software as much as possible. However, there are several good reasons why you might want to choose to install the supported OES services on the host server itself. For more information, see [“Why Install OES Services on Your VM Host?”](#) in the *OES 11 SP1: Planning and Implementation Guide*.

## 11.3.2 Planning for NetWare VM Guest Servers

Before creating NetWare virtual machines, you need to plan for the following:

- ♦ [“RAM Planning” on page 206](#)
- ♦ [“Storage Planning” on page 206](#)
- ♦ [“Network Planning” on page 206](#)
- ♦ [“eDirectory Planning” on page 207](#)

### RAM Planning

To ensure the best performance by your NetWare VM guests, you should plan for the optimal RAM configuration of each NetWare VM guest server. As a general rule, the more RAM you assign to a NetWare guest server (up to 8 GB), the better the server performance is. For specific planning information, see [“Optimizing Server Memory” in the NW 6.5 SP8: Server Memory Administration Guide](#).

### Storage Planning

The first disk space that you allocate while creating the Xen virtual machines is used by the NetWare VM guest for the `sys:` volume. The partition where this is created should be formatted as an Ext2 partition (see [“Xen VMs Need Ext2 for the System /Boot Volume” in the OES 11 SP1: Planning and Implementation Guide](#)).

You can add other disk space as virtual devices for NSS pools and volumes. For best performance in a Xen virtual environment, NSS pools and volumes on NetWare should be created on virtual devices that live on SCSI devices, Fibre Channel devices, or iSCSI devices on the host server, or on partitions that are on those types of devices.

SATA or IDE disks have slower performance because special handling is required when working through the Xen driver to ensure that data writes are committed to the disk in the order intended before the driver reports back.

For more information on NSS disk storage, see [“Using NSS in a Virtualization Environment” in the OES 11 SP1: NSS File System Administration Guide for Linux](#).

### Network Planning

Each Xen guest VM is assigned one virtualized network card by default. You can create additional cards if desired.

You must obtain one static IP address for each virtualized network card you plan to create on your NetWare VM guest servers. OES 11 does not support dynamically assigned (DHCP) IP addresses.

## eDirectory Planning

You can place a NetWare virtual machine in an existing tree or as the first server in a new tree. However, the performance of virtualized NetWare doesn't match a physical NetWare installation. In most cases, it is probably preferable to add your NetWare virtual machine to an existing tree located on a physical NetWare server, particularly if the tree is large.

Also, because virtualized servers might be started and stopped more often than they would normally be on physical servers, we recommend that the master replica (usually the first server in a tree) be placed on a system that is running at all times. For more information about master replicas, see ["Managing Partitions and Replicas"](#) in the *Novell eDirectory 8.8 Administration Guide*.

### 11.3.3 You Must Use Timesync for Time Synchronization

Because of known issues with Xen and the NTP NLM, you must use Timesync as the time synchronization method for NetWare VM guests running on Xen VM hosts. Otherwise, time drift causes problems for your NetWare VM guests.

Keeping accurate time is a critical function for servers in an eDirectory tree. The reported time must be synchronized across the network to provide the expiration dates and time stamps necessary for ordering eDirectory events.

NetWare VM guest servers synchronize time in the same ways that NetWare physical servers do. In other words, the clock on the VM host server has no influence on the NetWare VM guest server's time.

---

**IMPORTANT:** To ensure that your NetWare VM guest is configured correctly, be sure to follow the instructions in ["Configuring Time Synchronization"](#) (specifically Step 4) in the *NW65 SP8: Installation Guide*, and configure the NetWare VM guest to get time from the same time source as the eDirectory tree it is joining. If the time source specified is an NTP server, be sure to select the NTP option next to the source's DNS name or IP address. This enables Timesync to communicate with the NTP time source.

---

### 11.3.4 Disabling the Alt+Esc Shortcut on the Host

Alt+Esc is used on a NetWare server to switch between console screens, but on SLES 11 it moves between open windows. To provide the expected behavior for the virtualized NetWare server, you must disable the shortcut for SLES 11.

- 1 On the host server as the root user, click *Computer > Control Center*.
- 2 Click *Personal > Shortcuts*.
- 3 Under the *Window Management* category, click *Move between windows immediately*, then press the Backspace key to disable the shortcut.
- 4 Click *Close*.
- 5 Close the Control Center.

## 11.4 Installing Virtualized NetWare

This section provides the instructions for installing NetWare 6.5 SP8 as a guest OS.

- ♦ [Section 11.4.1, “Preparing the Installation Media,” on page 208](#)
- ♦ [Section 11.4.2, “Creating a Xen Virtual Machine and Installing a NetWare VM Guest Server,” on page 208](#)

### 11.4.1 Preparing the Installation Media

You must use the DVD installation files to install a NetWare VM guest on a Xen VM host server. (Xen on SLES 11 doesn't support CD swapping.)

The installation media must appear as a local disk to the virtual machine, but it can be physically located in either of the following locations:

- ♦ On a DVD in the host's physical DVD reader.
- ♦ As the DVD ISO image file copied to the Xen VM host server desktop.

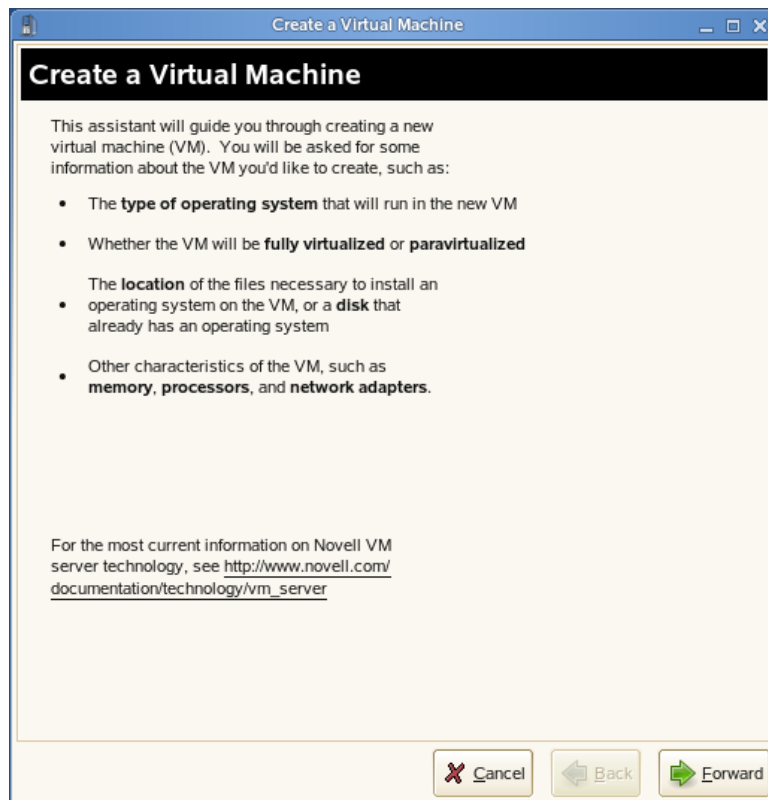
The following steps are for downloading to the VM host server's desktop and can be adapted as necessary for the other locations listed above.

- 1 Use the Firefox browser on the VM host server to access the [Novell NetWare 6.5 SP8 Download page](http://download.novell.com/Download?buildid=dpIR3H1ymhk~) (<http://download.novell.com/Download?buildid=dpIR3H1ymhk~>) and download the NW65SP8\_OVL\_DVD.iso file to the server's desktop (or another location of your choosing).
- 2 After the file downloads, continue with [Section 11.4.2, “Creating a Xen Virtual Machine and Installing a NetWare VM Guest Server,” on page 208](#).

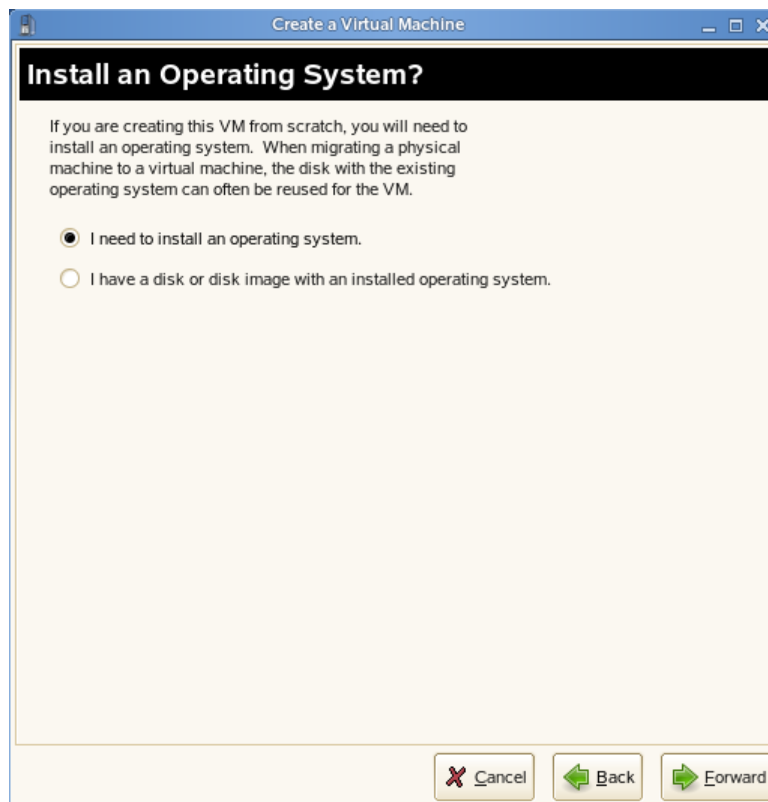
### 11.4.2 Creating a Xen Virtual Machine and Installing a NetWare VM Guest Server

- 1 Open YaST, then click *Virtualization > Create Virtual Machines*.

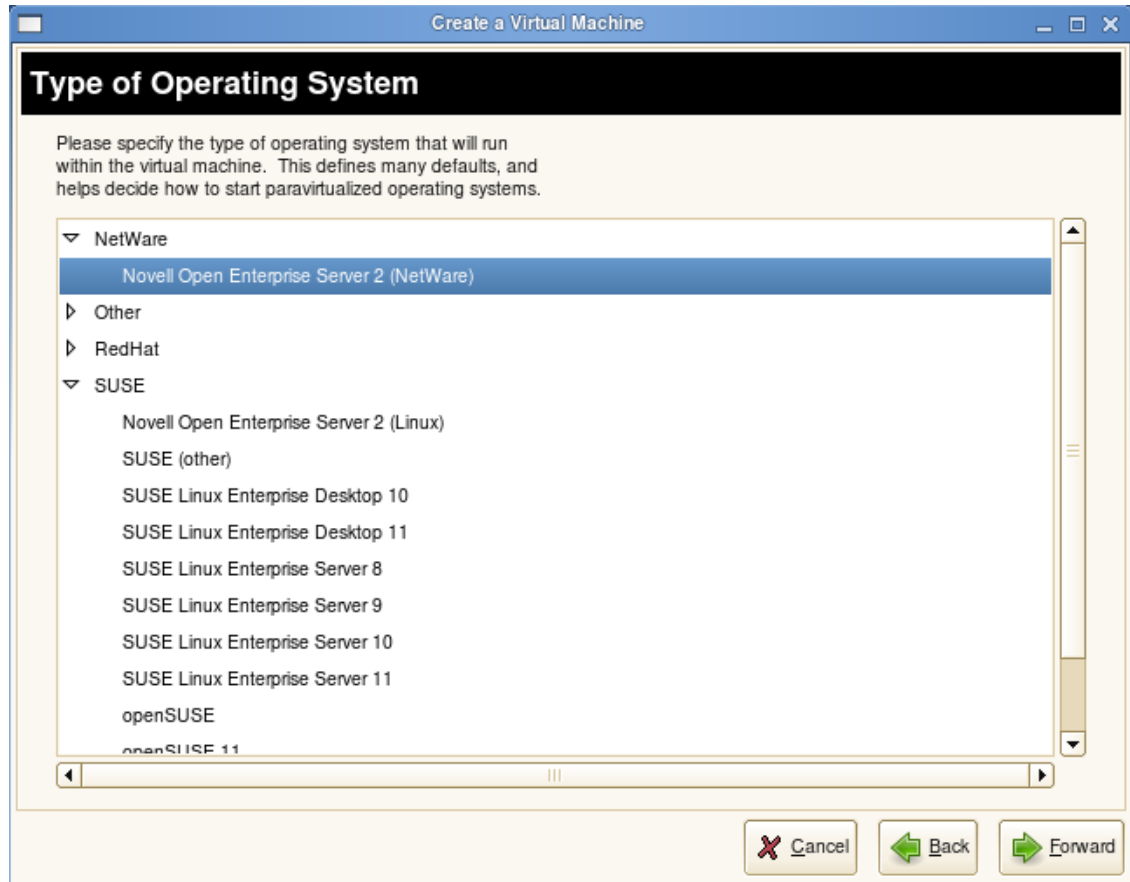




2 Read the Create a Virtual Machine welcome page, then click *Forward*.

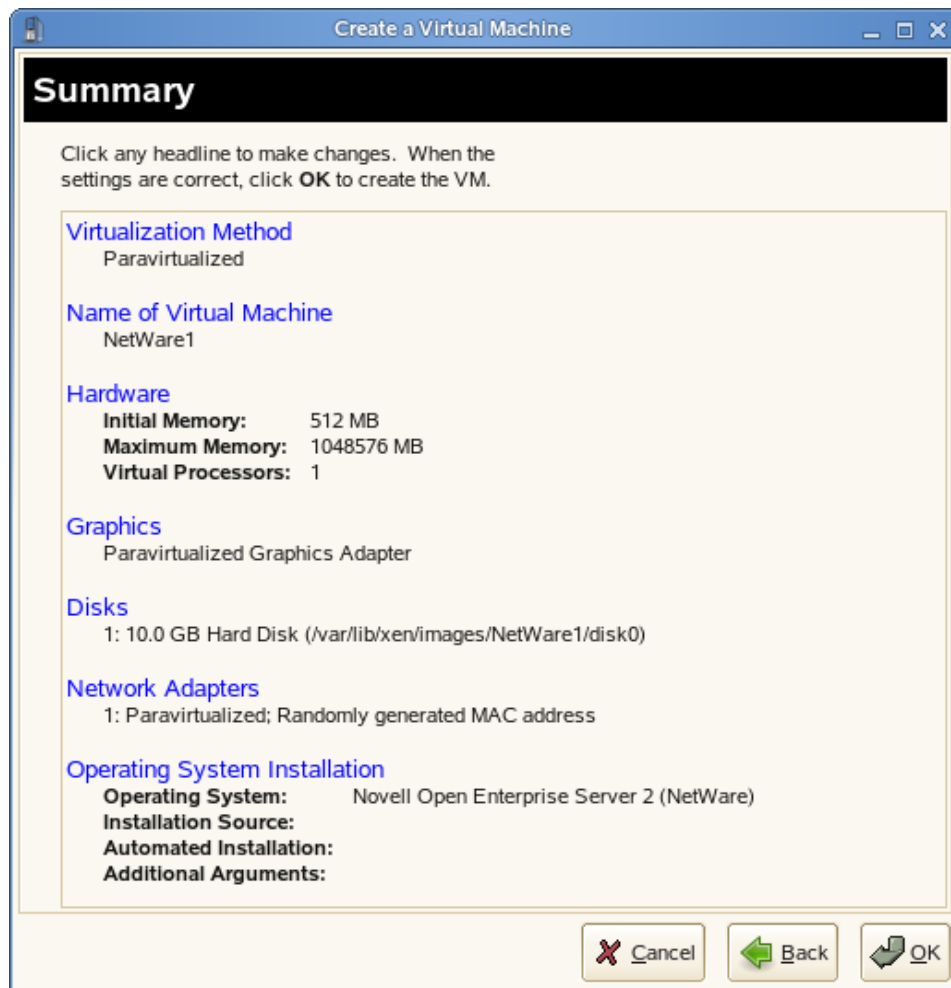


- 3 Select *I need to install an operating system*, then click *Forward*.



- 4 Click the triangle next to *NetWare*, select *Novell Open Enterprise Server 2 (NetWare)*, then click *Forward*.

The Summary page appears, showing the settings to be used for the virtual machine.



**5** Click *Name of Virtual Machine*.

Specify the name that you want displayed for this virtual machine in the Virtual Machine Manager.

For example, you might specify *hostname\_vm*, where *hostname* is the host name of the server you are installing.

**6** Click *Hardware*.

Change the initial memory setting to at least 1024 MB and the maximum setting to as much as 8 GB, depending on the RAM available on your host server.

Add additional virtual processors if desired.

**7** Click *Disks*.

The Virtual Disks dialog box lets you create one or more virtual disks that the NetWare VM guest has access to. If you are installing from a DVD on the host server or from an ISO image file copied to the host server's storage devices, these are also listed as virtual disks.

Initially, a 10 GB file is specified for the partitions/volumes on the virtual server. The default location of the file is `/var/lib/xen/images`.

By default, this is a sparse file, meaning that although 10 GB is allocated, the size of the file on the disk is only as large as the actual data it contains. Sparse files conserve disk space, but they have a negative impact on performance.

The NetWare install allocates 500 MB for a DOS partition and 4 GB for the sys: volume. The default disk size of 10 GB leaves about 5.5 GB for other partitions.

**7a** Specify the hard disk space you want to be available to the virtual machine.

**7b** Click *Apply*.

**7c** To create additional virtual disks, click the Harddisk icon in the Disks wizard.

- 8** If you want to change the location of the NetWare VM's first virtual hard drive, select the default *Hard Disk* and click *Edit*. Then modify the path in the *Server* field to where you want the virtual disk located.

Make sure that you specify enough physical disk space on the host server's hard drive and partition to accommodate the maximum size of the virtual disk.

- 9** If you want optimal performance, deselect the sparse file option. This creates a blank file of the selected size when you start the virtual machine installation.

- 10** Click *OK*.

- 11** If you are installing from a mounted DVD, click *CD-ROM*, browse to `/dev/cdrom` or `/dev/dvd`, then click *Open > OK > Apply*.

or

If you are installing from a downloaded ISO image file, browse to the image file, then click *Open > OK > Apply*.

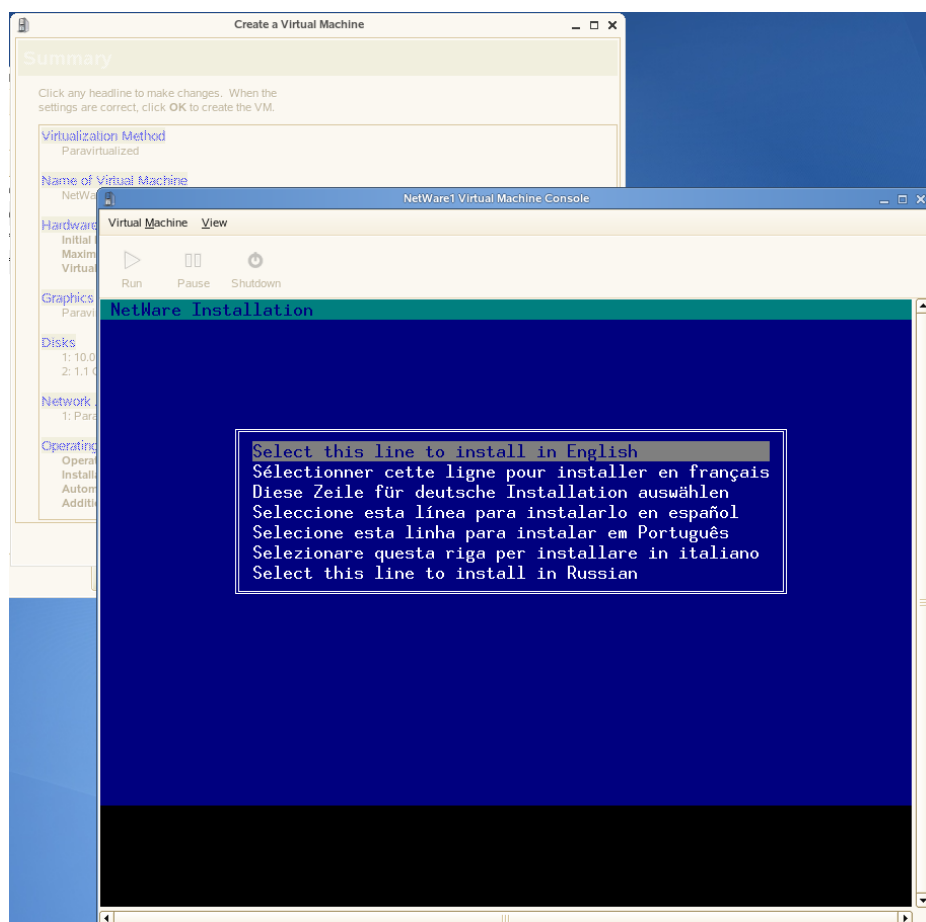
- 12** If you want multiple virtual network adapters, click *Network Adapters*.

Create virtual network adapters for the server.

The default setting is a single paravirtualized network adapter.

- 13** When you have the virtual machine settings the way you want them, click *OK* to proceed with the creation of the virtual machine and the installation of the virtual NetWare server.

A VNC viewer window appears, displaying the progress of the NetWare install program.



**14** Do the following:

**14a** Click inside the installation window to set the mouse pointer.

The mouse is not used on the first few screens, but you must set it now. Otherwise, the mouse and the keyboard might not work as expected when the GUI pages appear.

**14b** Enter all of the installation information as you would for a physical NetWare installation.

---

**IMPORTANT:** Do not close the VNC viewer window while the NetWare install program is running. Doing so prevents the installation from finishing properly.

---

## 11.5 Managing NetWare on a Virtual Machine

Virtualized NetWare is managed in the same way as if it were running on a physical machine. For information about managing your NetWare server, see the [NW 6.5 SP8: Server Operating System Administration Guide](#). For additional information about managing NetWare servers in a virtualized environment, see “[Running NetWare in a Virtualized Environment](#)” in the same guide.

- ♦ [Section 11.5.1, “Using the Virtual Machine Manager,” on page 214](#)
- ♦ [Section 11.5.2, “Using the Command Line,” on page 214](#)

## 11.5.1 Using the Virtual Machine Manager

Managing a NetWare virtual machine is simplified by using the Virtual Machine Manager utility, which is installed by default when you install the Xen virtualization software.

To start the Virtual Machine Manager, open a terminal prompt and enter `virt-manager`.

For more information, see “*Managing a Virtualization Environment* ([http://www.novell.com/documentation/sles10/book\\_virtualization\\_xen/data/cha\\_xen\\_virtualization\\_manage.html](http://www.novell.com/documentation/sles10/book_virtualization_xen/data/cha_xen_virtualization_manage.html))” in the *Virtualization with Xen* guide ([http://www.novell.com/documentation/sles10/book\\_virtualization\\_xen/data/book\\_virtualization\\_xen.html](http://www.novell.com/documentation/sles10/book_virtualization_xen/data/book_virtualization_xen.html)).

## 11.5.2 Using the Command Line

Many NetWare administrators prefer to manage the server through the command line. If you want to use the command line, you should be aware of the following issues:

- ♦ “Terminal Size” on page 214
- ♦ “NetWare Debugger” on page 214
- ♦ “VNC Viewer” on page 214
- ♦ “The `xm` Commands” on page 214

### Terminal Size

The terminal window might display only 80x24 characters. If you don’t want to scroll to the command line, you need to resize the terminal.

### NetWare Debugger

If pressing `Alt+Shift+Shift+Esc` doesn’t launch the debugger, you can enter `386debug` at the command line.

### VNC Viewer

In the VNC Viewer, pressing `F8` displays a pop-up utility menu. Press `F8` twice to pass single `F8` to the remote side.

### The `xm` Commands

- ♦ You can also manage the NetWare virtual machine, and all other virtual machines running on the Xen hypervisor, by using the `xm` command line tools. For more information, see “The `xm` Command ([http://www.novell.com/documentation/sles10/book\\_virtualization\\_xen/data/sec\\_xen\\_virtualization\\_xm.html](http://www.novell.com/documentation/sles10/book_virtualization_xen/data/sec_xen_virtualization_xm.html))” in the *Virtualization with Xen* guide ([http://www.novell.com/documentation/sles10/book\\_virtualization\\_xen/data/book\\_virtualization\\_xen.html](http://www.novell.com/documentation/sles10/book_virtualization_xen/data/book_virtualization_xen.html)).
- ♦ To make a break in NetWare from a terminal, enter `xm sysrq x c`, where `x` is the domain ID and `c` is any keyboard character.

## 11.6 If VM Manager Doesn't Launch on a Xen VM Host Server

If the option to launch the VM Manager for installing a NetWare guest is not available, the most likely cause is that the Xen kernel is not running on the Xen VM host server. See *The Boot Loader Program* ([http://www.novell.com/documentation/sles10/book\\_virtualization\\_xen/data/sec\\_xen\\_config\\_bootloader.html](http://www.novell.com/documentation/sles10/book_virtualization_xen/data/sec_xen_config_bootloader.html)) in the *Virtualization with Xen* guide ([http://www.novell.com/documentation/sles10/book\\_virtualization\\_xen/data/book\\_virtualization\\_xen.html](http://www.novell.com/documentation/sles10/book_virtualization_xen/data/book_virtualization_xen.html)).





---

# 12 Disabling OES 11 Services

Although you can uninstall Novell Open Enterprise Server 11 (OES) service RPMs through YaST, we do not recommend it because so many modules have interdependencies. Uninstalling services can leave the server in an undesirable state. Instead, we recommend disabling the service.

- 1 Log in as `root` and start YaST.
- 2 Click *System > System Services (Runlevel)*.
- 3 Select *Expert Mode*.
- 4 Select the *applicable\_service\_name*, then click *Set/Reset > Disable the service*.
- 5 Repeat [Step 4](#) for each service you want to disable.
- 6 Click *Finish* to exit the YaST Runlevel tool.

---

**NOTE:** YaST does not support removing products that create objects or attributes in eDirectory. You need to use iManager to remove these objects and attributes. For procedures, see “[Deleting an Object](#)” in the *Novell iManager 2.7.6 Administration Guide*.

---



---

# 13 Reconfiguring eDirectory and OES Services

If the eDirectory database becomes corrupt, you need to reconfigure eDirectory and the OES services. This section outlines the steps to be performed, depending on the role of the server with regard to your eDirectory tree.

If a backup of the eDirectory database is not available, you can contact Novell Support or perform the following procedures:

- ♦ [Section 13.1, “Cleaning Up the eDirectory Server,” on page 219](#)
- ♦ [Section 13.2, “Reconfiguring the eDirectory Server through YaST,” on page 221](#)
- ♦ [Section 13.3, “Reconfiguring OES Services,” on page 221](#)
- ♦ [Section 13.4, “Re-configuring iManager,” on page 225](#)

---

**NOTE:** Removing an OES server from an existing tree, renaming it and trying to attach it to the same tree or some other tree is an unsupported eDirectory scenario. Doing so will destabilize the OES server and make it unusable.

---

## 13.1 Cleaning Up the eDirectory Server

---

**IMPORTANT:** The instructions in this section have been tested and approved, but it is impossible to anticipate all customer scenarios and the complications that might arise in them. Therefore, we urge that you only proceed when you have problems with eDirectory that aren't resolved by performing regular eDirectory maintenance tasks, or when Novell Technical Support recommends that you do.

---

- ♦ [Section 13.1.1, “Before You Clean Up,” on page 219](#)
- ♦ [Section 13.1.2, “Reconfiguring the Replica Server,” on page 220](#)
- ♦ [Section 13.1.3, “Reconfiguring the CA Server,” on page 220](#)
- ♦ [Section 13.1.4, “Cleaning Up eDirectory,” on page 220](#)

### 13.1.1 Before You Clean Up

- ♦ Before the cleanup, make a note of the following eDirectory configuration parameters:
  - ♦ eDirectory tree name
  - ♦ Replica server IP
  - ♦ eDirectory admin context
  - ♦ eDirectory server context
  - ♦ IP address of servers running NTP and SLP services

- If you are cleaning the master replica server, ensure that you make a read-write replica as a master. For more information, see [Section 13.1.2, “Reconfiguring the Replica Server,” on page 220.](#)
- If the reconfiguration is performed on a CA server, transfer the role of CA server to another server or create a new CA server. If you don’t do this, the CA does not work. For more information, see [Section 13.1.3, “Reconfiguring the CA Server,” on page 220.](#)

## 13.1.2 Reconfiguring the Replica Server

- 1 If the corrupted server is a master replica, make any other replica into the master replica.  
For more information, refer to [Managing Partitions and Replicas \(http://www.novell.com/documentation/edir88/edir88/?page=/documentation/edir88/edir88/data/a2iiik.html\)](http://www.novell.com/documentation/edir88/edir88/?page=/documentation/edir88/edir88/data/a2iiik.html) in the *Novell eDirectory 8.8 Administration Guide*.
- 2 Clean up the replica server.  
For more information, see [Section 13.1.4, “Cleaning Up eDirectory,” on page 220.](#)
- 3 Reconfigure the replica server.  
For more information, see [Section 13.2, “Reconfiguring the eDirectory Server through YaST,” on page 221.](#)
- 4 On successful reconfiguration of the replica server, continue with [Section 13.3, “Reconfiguring OES Services,” on page 221.](#)

## 13.1.3 Reconfiguring the CA Server

- 1 If the corrupted server is a CA server, transfer the CA server role to another server or create a new CA server.  
For more information, refer to [Moving the Organizational CA to a Different Server \(http://www.novell.com/documentation/crt33/crtadmin/data/a2ebop8.html#acea8nu\)](http://www.novell.com/documentation/crt33/crtadmin/data/a2ebop8.html#acea8nu) and [Creating a Server Certificate Object \(http://www.novell.com/documentation/crt33/crtadmin/data/fbgcdhec.html\)](http://www.novell.com/documentation/crt33/crtadmin/data/fbgcdhec.html) in the *Novell Certificate Server 3.3.2 Administration Guide*.
- 2 Clean up the server.  
For more information, see [Section 13.1.4, “Cleaning Up eDirectory,” on page 220.](#)
- 3 Reconfigure the server.  
For more information, see [Section 13.2, “Reconfiguring the eDirectory Server through YaST,” on page 221.](#)
- 4 After successfully reconfiguring the server, continue with [Section 13.3, “Reconfiguring OES Services,” on page 221.](#)

## 13.1.4 Cleaning Up eDirectory

- 1 Stop the ndsd daemon:  
`rcnsd stop`
- 2 Delete the eDirectory configuration file and eDirectory instance file.:  
`rm -f /etc/opt/novell/eDirectory/conf/nds.conf`  
`rm -f /etc/opt/novell/eDirectory/conf/.edir/instances.0`
- 3 Delete the eDirectory database:  
`rm -rf /var/opt/novell/eDirectory/data/dib`

- 4 Use iManager to delete all the objects from the eDirectory tree.
- 5 Remove the server from the replica ring.

For more information, see [Section 17.7.1, Cleaning Up the Replica Ring \(http://www.novell.com/documentation/edir88/edir88/?page=/documentation//edir88/edir88/data/agm7hq7.html\)](http://www.novell.com/documentation/edir88/edir88/?page=/documentation//edir88/edir88/data/agm7hq7.html) in the *Novell eDirectory 8.8 Administration Guide*.

## 13.2 Reconfiguring the eDirectory Server through YaST

The eDirectory reconfiguration can be done on the Root partition Master replica server, a Read-Write replica server, a server without a replica, or the CA server.

- 1 Open YaST.
- 2 Click *Open Enterprise Server > OES Install and Configuration*.
- 3 On the Software Selection Page, click *Accept*.

The status of eDirectory service is displayed as *Reconfigure is disabled*.
- 4 To reconfigure, click *disabled* to change the status to *enabled*.
- 5 Click *eDirectory* to access the configuration dialog box.
- 6 Provide all the eDirectory configuration information that was noted in [Section 13.1.1, “Before You Clean Up,” on page 219](#):
  - 6a Verify the eDirectory tree name and click *Next*.
  - 6b Specify the admin password and click *Next*.
  - 6c Specify the server context and click *Next*.
  - 6d Specify the IP address of the Network Time Protocol Server.
  - 6e (Conditional) If SLP was configured earlier, select *Configure SLP to use an existing Directory Agent*, then click *Add*.
  - 6f Specify the SLP DA server IP address and click *Add*.
  - 6g Click *Next*.
- 7 In the Novell Modular Authentication Service (NMAS) window, click *Next*.
- 8 Verify the listed configuration information and click *Next*.

eDirectory is configured and installation is successfully completed.
- 9 Click *Finish*.

## 13.3 Reconfiguring OES Services

After you have successfully configured eDirectory, some of the OES services are started by default, some services require a manual start, some services require the eDirectory objects to be re-created, and some services must be reconfigured.

**Table 13-1** *Services*

Starts by Default	Start Manually	Re-create Objects	Reconfigure
SMS	Novell AFP	NSS	Novell DNS
LUM	NCS	NCP	Novell CIFS
NRM	Archive and Version Services		SLP
Novell FTP	Novell DHCP		NMAS
Novell iFolder	iPrint		
Groupwise	Novell Samba		
DST	NetStorage		
DFS	iManager		
WBFM	NTP		
Welcome Page			
CASA	QuickFinder		
VLOG Utility			

- ♦ [Section 13.3.1, “Re-creating eDirectory Objects,” on page 222](#)
- ♦ [Section 13.3.2, “Services Requiring Reconfiguration,” on page 223](#)
- ♦ [Section 13.3.3, “Manually Starting Services,” on page 224](#)

## 13.3.1 Re-creating eDirectory Objects

- ♦ [“Novell Storage Service” on page 222](#)
- ♦ [“NCP Server” on page 223](#)

### Novell Storage Service

Use the NSS Management utility to re-create the eDirectory objects for NSS pools and volumes. For additional information, see [NSS Management Utility Quick Reference \(http://www.novell.com/documentation/oes11/stor\\_nss\\_lx/?page=/documentation/oes11/stor\\_nss\\_lx/data/boswzl1.html\)](http://www.novell.com/documentation/oes11/stor_nss_lx/?page=/documentation/oes11/stor_nss_lx/data/boswzl1.html) in the *NSS Administration Guide*.

- 1 Re-create the eDirectory object for each NSS pool:
  - 1a Start NSSMU by entering the following command at the command prompt:
 

```
nssmu
```
  - 1b Select *Pools* and press Enter to list all the NSS pools.
  - 1c Select a pool that needs to be re-created and press F4.
  - 1d Select *Yes* when you are prompted to delete and re-create an NDS pool object.  
The selected NDS pool object is re-created.
  - 1e Repeat from [Step 1c](#) for each NDS pool object that needs to be re-created.

- 2 Re-create the eDirectory object for each NSS volume:
  - 2a In NSSMU, select *Volumes* and press Enter to list all the NSS volumes.
  - 2b Select a volume and press F4.
  - 2c Select *Yes* when you are prompted to delete and re-create the NDS volume object.  
The selected volume object is re-created.
  - 2d Repeat from [Step 2b](#) for each NDS volume object that needs to be re-created.
- 3 (Conditional) If the eDirectory object for `_ADMIN` volume exists, execute the following command:  

```
rcadminfs restart
```

## NCP Server

Use the NCP server console (NCPCON) utility to delete and re-create the eDirectory objects for the NCP volumes. For more information on the NCPCON utility, see [NCP Server Console Utility \(http://www.novell.com/documentation/oes11/file\\_ncp\\_lx/?page=/documentation/oes11/file\\_ncp\\_lx/data/ba2un44.html\)](http://www.novell.com/documentation/oes11/file_ncp_lx/?page=/documentation/oes11/file_ncp_lx/data/ba2un44.html) in the *NCP Server for Linux Administration Guide*.

---

**IMPORTANT:** If restoration of the eDirectory database is not possible, simply delete the NCP server object.

---

- 1 Delete the eDirectory object of the NCP volume by entering the following command:  

```
ncpcon remove volume SYS
```
- 2 Re-create the eDirectory object of the NCP volume by entering the following command:  

```
ncpcon create volume SYS /usr/novell/sys
```

## 13.3.2 Services Requiring Reconfiguration

- ♦ [“Novell DNS” on page 223](#)
- ♦ [“Novell CIFS” on page 224](#)
- ♦ [“Novell SLP” on page 224](#)
- ♦ [“NMAS” on page 224](#)

### Novell DNS

- 1 Open YaST.
- 2 Click *Open Enterprise Server > OES Install and Configuration*.
- 3 On the Software selection page, click *Accept*.  
The status of the Novell DNS service is displayed as *Reconfigure is Disabled*.
- 4 To reconfigure the DNS service, click *disabled* to change the status to *enabled*.
- 5 Click the *DNS Services* heading link and enter the admin password to access the configuration dialog box.
- 6 Validate the displayed information and click *Next*.
- 7 Ensure that the *Create DNS Server Object* check box is not selected, then click *Next*.
- 8 Verify the configuration information and click *Next*.
- 9 Click *Finish* to complete the Novell DNS reconfiguration.

## Novell CIFS

- 1 Open YaST.
- 2 Click *Open Enterprise Server > OES Install and Configuration*.
- 3 Click *Accept* to skip the Software Selection page.

The status of Novell CIFS service is displayed as *Reconfigure is Disabled*.
- 4 To reconfigure CIFS, click the *Disabled* link to change the status to *Enabled*.
- 5 Click the *Novell CIFS services* heading link and enter admin password to access the configuration dialog box.
- 6 Validate the displayed information and click *Next*.
- 7 Provide the user context and select the password policy of the previous CIFS configuration, then click *Next*.
- 8 Verify the configuration information and click *Next*.
- 9 Click *Finish* to complete the CIFS reconfiguration.

## Novell SLP

The SLP DA IP address is added during eDirectory reconfiguration. See [Step 6e on page 221](#) for more information.

## NMAS

The NMAS login method is selected during eDirectory reconfiguration. See [Step 7 on page 221](#) for more information.

### 13.3.3 Manually Starting Services

Re-create the eDirectory objects of NCP and NSS volumes as directed in the [Section 13.3.1, “Re-creating eDirectory Objects,” on page 222](#), before starting the following services manually:

**Table 13-2** *Manually Restarting Services*

Service Name	Starting the Service
Novell AFP	<code>rcnovell-afptcpd start</code>
Novell Cluster Service (NCS)	<code>rcnovell-ncs start</code>
Archive and Version Service	<code>rcadminfs start</code>
	<code>rcnovell-ark start</code>
NetStorage	<code>rcnovell-xregd start</code>
	<code>rcnovell-xsrvd start</code>
QuickFinder	Generate the index again from QuickFinder Administration.
Samba	Start the Samba service through iManager
Novell DHCP	<code>rcnovell-dhcpd start</code>



Service Name	Starting the Service
iPrint	rcnovell-ipsmd start  rcnovell-idsd start
iManager	After completing the OES installation, if iManager is installed without using YaST, Tomcat must be started manually.  /etc/init.d/novell-tomcat6 start  rcapache2 restart
NTP	rcntpd restart

## 13.4 Re-configuring iManager

In case iManager is not configured properly or there has been an interruption during iManager installation, use the following procedure to reconfigure iManager.

---

**IMPORTANT:** Before executing this reconfiguration procedure, ensure to backup all the custom tasks in iManager from `\var\opt\novell\imanager\nps\portal\modules\custom`. You can restore them after the reconfiguration. For more information on backing up and restoring the custom tasks, see [Exporting Custom Tasks](#) and [Importing Custom Tasks](#) under section [Plug-In Studio](#) of the [Novell iManager 2.7.6 Administration Guide](#).

---

To reconfigure:

- 1 Ensure that the OES server is registered to NCC, and you have applied all the latest patches available in the patch channel using the zypper up command. For more information on patching using the zypper command, see [Chapter 7, “Updating \(Patching\) an OES 11 SP1 Server,” on page 163](#).
- 2 After patching, ensure that the following path exists along with all the iManager plugins that you want to install: `/var/opt/novell/iManager/nps/packages`.

---

**NOTE:** The reconfiguration script installs only the iManager plug-ins that are available at `/var/opt/novell/iManager/nps/packages`.

---

- 3 Run the following command to reconfigure iManager `/var/opt/novell/iManager/iManagerReconfiguration.sh tomcat6`.



---

# 14 Security Considerations

This section includes issues that you should consider when installing and configuring a Novell Open Enterprise Server (OES) 11 Linux server.

- [Section 14.1, “Access to the Server During an Installation or Upgrade,” on page 227](#)
- [Section 14.2, “Remote Installations Through VNC,” on page 227](#)
- [Section 14.3, “Improperly Configured LDAP Servers,” on page 227](#)

## 14.1 Access to the Server During an Installation or Upgrade

Because eDirectory passwords are not obfuscated in system memory during the installation or upgrade, we recommend not leaving a server unattended during installation, upgrade, or configuration.

You can use SSH (secure shell) to access the system to perform an installation. However, only authorized users can access the installation.

## 14.2 Remote Installations Through VNC

When you install the server, we recommend that you do not use Virtual Network Computing (VNC) for remote installation in an untrusted environment. Consider using one of the more secure options (such as SSH) as outlined in [“Installation Scenarios for Remote Installation” in the SLES 11 SP2 Deployment Guide](#) ([http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book\\_sle\\_deployment/data/cha\\_deployment\\_remoteinst.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_sle_deployment/data/cha_deployment_remoteinst.html)).

## 14.3 Improperly Configured LDAP Servers

**Issue 1:** Improperly configured LDAP servers allow any user to connect to the server and query for information.

An eDirectory LDAP server enables NULL BIND by default, but allows it to be disabled on the server. To enhance the security of the OES server, disable the NULL BIND on LDAP server port 389. See [“Configuring LDAP Services for Novell eDirectory”](#) in the *Novell eDirectory 8.8 Administration Guide*.

**Issue 2:** Improperly configured LDAP servers allow the directory BASE to be set to NULL. This allows information to be culled without any prior knowledge of the directory structure. Coupled with a NULL BIND, an anonymous user can query your LDAP server through a tool such as LdapMiner.

An eDirectory LDAP server allows the directory BASE to be set to NULL, and there is no way to disable it. However, with the NULL BIND disabled, as previously mentioned, the security threat posed by this feature is minimized. For more information on NULL BIND, see “[Nessus Scan Results](#)” in the *Novell eDirectory 8.8 Administration Guide*.

---

# 15 Troubleshooting

This section presents information on troubleshooting the OES installation and configuration.

- ♦ [Section 15.1, “Deleting the Existing eDirectory Objects when Reinstalling the OES Server or Reconfiguring the eDirectory,” on page 229](#)
- ♦ [Section 15.2, “eDirectory User Password Screen Does Not Show Up During an Upgrade,” on page 230](#)
- ♦ [Section 15.3, “eDirectory Restart Results in an Error Message on a Non-DSfW Server,” on page 230](#)
- ♦ [Section 15.4, “Problem In Assigning IP Address For autoinst.xml-based Installations,” on page 230](#)
- ♦ [Section 15.5, “iManager not Configured or Installed Properly,” on page 231](#)
- ♦ [Section 15.6, “eDirectory Upgrade Failure During OES Upgrade,” on page 231](#)
- ♦ [Section 15.7, “eDirectory Restart Results in an Error Message on a Non-DSfW Server,” on page 231](#)
- ♦ [Section 15.8, “The DEFAULT SLP Scope Gets added to the slp.conf File During an Upgrade to OES 11 SP1,” on page 232](#)

## 15.1 Deleting the Existing eDirectory Objects when Reinstalling the OES Server or Reconfiguring the eDirectory

When you reinstall an existing OES server with the same name or reconfigure eDirectory, the system might throw an error prompting to delete the existing eDirectory objects.

Before clicking Retry, ensure to delete the following objects using iManager. Else, the OES re-installation or eDirectory reconfiguration will not proceed.

The list of objects that must be deleted:

- ♦ NCP Server Object
- ♦ HTTP Server Object
- ♦ SAS Objects
- ♦ SNMP Group Objects
- ♦ LDAP Serer and Group objects
- ♦ Certificates (IP AG, SSL Certificate IP, DNS AG, and SSL Certificate DNS)

## 15.2 eDirectory User Password Screen Does Not Show Up During an Upgrade

When you upgrade an OES 2 server to OES 11 SP1, the eDirectory pattern will not be selected as part of the product listing and the eDirectory user password screen will not show up.

To resolve this issue follow any of these methods:

1. Before starting an upgrade, ensure to install the following packages in the OES 2 server:
  - ♦ nci64
  - ♦ novell-dclient-32bit
  - ♦ novell-nmas-libspmcInt-32bit
  - ♦ novell-NDSbase-32bit
  - ♦ novell-edirectory-tsands-32bit
2. During an upgrade, in the Installation Settings Screen, search and select the packages listed above and then proceed with the upgrade.
3. If you are upgrading using AutoYaST, ensure to add the packages listed above as part of the autoup.xml file. Add them to the <software> section and then proceed with the upgrade.

```
<software>
  <packages config:type="list">
    <package>novell-NDSbase-32bit</package>
    <package>novell-edirectory-tsands-32bit</package>
    <package>novell-nmas-libspmcInt-32bit</package>
    <package>nci64</package>
    <package>novell-dclient-32bit</package>
  </packages>
</software>
```

## 15.3 eDirectory Restart Results in an Error Message on a Non-DSfW Server

On a non- DSfW Server, if you restart eDirectory, the following error message is received: "Method load failed: libxadnds.so.2: cannot open shared object file: No such file or directory." This is because 3 NMAS methods (IPCEXternal, Kerberos, and Negotiate) fail to load on the server.

These NMAS methods that are specific to DSfW are part of the novell-xad-nmas-methods rpm and depend on the libraries from the novell-xad-framework rpm. Since the novell-xad-framework rpm is part of the DSfW pattern and is installed only on a DSfW server, you receive this error message on a non-DSfW server.

If you receive this error message, you can ignore this message as these DSfW NMAS methods do not function in a non-DSfW server and do not impact any eDirectory functionality.

## 15.4 Problem In Assigning IP Address For autoinst.xml-based Installations

When you use the autoinst.xml for a new installation, you will not be able to set the IP address on the target server unless the following change is made:

Before starting the installation, remove the <net-udev> tags along with its contents from the autoinst.xml file, and then use modified file for the new installation.

OR

Before starting the installation, edit the `autoinst.xml` file and change the mac address in the following tag `<\value>` enter mac address of the target server `</value>` that is available under the `<net-udev>` tag.

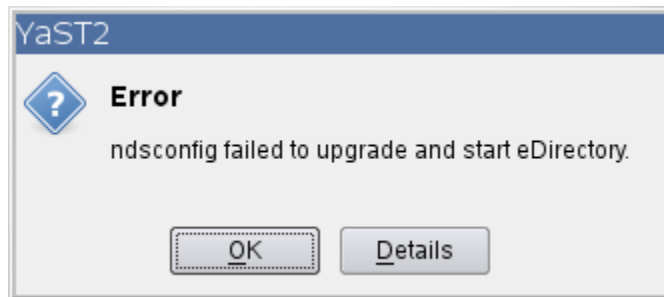
## 15.5 iManager not Configured or Installed Properly

If iManager is not configured properly or there has been an interruption during iManager installation, see [Section 13.4, “Re-configuring iManager,” on page 225](#) to reconfigure iManager.

## 15.6 eDirectory Upgrade Failure During OES Upgrade

During an OES upgrade, if you encounter the following errors, it is because of the eDirectory version conflict in the current and the target OES versions. For more information on resolving this issue, see [Section 5.8, “Upgrading eDirectory After an OES Upgrade,” on page 154](#).

- ♦ **Ndsconfig Error Message:**



- ♦ **/var/opt/novell/e Directory/log/ndslog Error Log Entry:** “eDirectory is stopped. It is downgraded from Novell eDirectory 8.8 SP7 v20704.00 to Novell eDirectory 8.8 SP6 v20608.00 . To complete the upgrade refer to Upgrading eDirectory after an OES Upgrade section of Installation Guide.”

## 15.7 eDirectory Restart Results in an Error Message on a Non-DSfW Server

On a non- DSfW Server, if you restart eDirectory, the following error message is received: “Method load failed: libxadnds.so.2: cannot open shared object file: No such file or directory.”

This is because three NMAS methods (IPCEExternal, Kerberos, and Negotiate) fail to load on the server. These NMAS methods that are specific to DSfW are part of the `novell-xad-nmas-methods` rpm and depend on the libraries from the `novell-xad-framework` rpm. Since the `novell-xad-framework` rpm is part of the DSfW pattern and is installed only on a DSfW server, you receive this error message on a non-DSfW server.

If you receive this error message, you can ignore this message as these DSfW NMAS methods do not function in a non-DSfW server and do not impact any eDirectory functionality.

## 15.8 The DEFAULT SLP Scope Gets added to the slp.conf File During an Upgrade to OES 11 SP1

When you upgrade an OES server that is configured as an SLP DA to OES 11 SP1, the `DEFAULT` SLP scope gets added to the `slp.conf` file along with the SLP scope configured by you. This might result in adding extra load to the OES server.

To prevent the extra load, remove the term `DEFAULT` from the following line in the `/etc/slp.conf` file, and restart the OES server for the changes to take effect.

```
net.slp.useScopes = DEFAULT,<slp scope configured by you>
```

---

**NOTE:** This issue is not applicable to OES servers that point to an SLP DA or whose SLP scope is `DEFAULT`.

---

Novell plans to fix this issue in a future OES release.



---

# A OES 11 File and Data Locations

This section contains information about the general rules and conventions that Novell follows when determining where various data types and program components are stored on the Linux file system.

Where possible, we have tried to ensure that Open Enterprise Server (OES) 11 components follow Linux Standard Base (LSB) requirements regarding file location. Efforts to do this are detailed here.

- ♦ [Section A.1, “General Rules,” on page 233](#)
- ♦ [Section A.2, “Exceptions,” on page 234](#)

## A.1 General Rules

Where possible, product design has followed these rules:

- ♦ **/opt/novell:** Contains all static data in the following standard subdirectories.

---

/opt/novell/bin	Executable files that are used by multiple products or are intended to be executed by an end user.
/opt/novell/product/sbin	Executable files that are used only by a product and are not executed by an end user.
/opt/novell/lib	Shared libraries that are used by multiple products and shared or static libraries that are part of an SDK.
/opt/novell/include	Header files for SDKs, typically in a product subdirectory.
/opt/novell/lib64	Contains 64-bit shared libraries.

---

- ♦ **/etc/opt/novell:** Generally contains host-specific configuration data.  
If a product has a single configuration file, it is named *product* or *service.conf*.  
If a product uses multiple configuration files, they are placed in a subdirectory named for the product or service.
- ♦ **/etc/opt/novell/service\_name:** Contains various OES service configuration files.
- ♦ **/var/opt/novell:** Contains all variable data.  
Variable data (data that changes during normal run time operations) is stored in a product or service subdirectory.
- ♦ **/var/opt/novell/log:** Generally contains log files.  
If a product or service has a single log file, it is stored in a file with the product or service name.  
If a product or service has multiple log files, they are stored in a subdirectory named for the product or service.

- ♦ **/var/log:** Contains the log messages and the YaST logs.
- ♦ All files and directories that could not follow the above rules have the prefix *novell-* where possible.

## A.2 Exceptions

Some files must reside in nonstandard locations for their products to function correctly. Two examples are init scripts, which must be in `/etc/init.d`, and cron scripts, which must be in `/etc/cron.d`. When possible, these files have a `novell-` prefix.

When standard conventions preclude the use of prefixes (such as PAM modules, which use suffixes instead of prefixes), the standard conventions are followed.

---

# B Documentation Updates

This section summarizes the changes made to this guide since the initial release of Novell Open Enterprise Server 11.

## August 2012

Chapter or Section Changed	Summary of Changes
<a href="#">Chapter 15, "Troubleshooting," on page 229</a>	Troubleshooting chapter has been added
<a href="#">Section 5.7, "Channel Upgrade from OES 11 to OES 11 SP1," on page 148</a>	Channel Upgrade has been added.

---

## June 2012

Chapter or Section Changed	Summary of Changes
<a href="#">Chapter 5, "Upgrading to OES 11 SP1," on page 115</a>	Using AutoYaST for an OES 11 SP1 Upgrade
Throughout	Updates for OES 11 SP1 release. Included information about integrated ISO.

## January 12, 2012

Chapter or Section Changed	Summary of Changes
Throughout	Formatting updates to match new corporate standard.

